

Census 2001 - IPUMS Subset

Statistics South Africa, IPUMS

report_generated_on: September 3, 2025

visit_data_catalog_at: <http://catalog.ihsn.org/>

Identification

SURVEY ID NUMBER

ZAF_2001_PHC_v01_M_v7.5_A_IPUMS

TITLE

Census 2001 - IPUMS Subset

ABBREVIATION OR ACRONYM

PHC South Africa 2001 (IPUMS Harmonized Subset)

COUNTRY

Name	Country code
South Africa	ZAF

STUDY TYPE

Population and Housing Census [hh/popcen] IPUMS International

SERIES INFORMATION

DOI:10.18128/D020.V7.5

KIND OF DATA

Population and Housing Census [hh/popcen]

UNIT OF ANALYSIS

Persons, households, and dwellings

UNITS IDENTIFIED:

- Dwellings: yes
- Vacant Units: no
- Households: yes
- Individuals: yes
- Group quarters: yes

UNIT DESCRIPTIONS:

- Dwellings: Any structure intended or used for human habitation.
- Households: A group of persons who live together, and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or a single person who lives alone. (The 'four-night-a-week' criterion for household membership does not apply, as this was a de facto census, that is, people were counted where they were staying on census night.)
- Group quarters: Living quarters where certain facilities are shared by groups of individuals or households. They include hostels, hotels and institutions.

Version

VERSION DESCRIPTION

Version 7.5. The datasets contain selected variables from the original census microdata plus harmonized variables from the IPUMS-International database.

VERSION DATE

2024-10-05

Scope

NOTES

Additional notes on a sample that is part of this study: South Africa 2001

TOPICS

Topic	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Geography: Global Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Appliances, Mechanicals, Other Amenities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Geography: IPUMS-I, IPUMS-DHS Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Geography: O-Z Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Group Quarters Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Constructed Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Income Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Ethnicity and Language Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Migration: O-Z Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Household Economic Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Technical Person Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Dwelling Characteristics Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Dwelling Characteristics Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Appliances, Mechanicals, Other Amenities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Group Quarters Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Geography: Global Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Technical Person Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Geography: O-Z Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Constructed Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Other Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Household Economic Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS
Other Person Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Ethnicity and Language Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Work: Industry Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Work: Occupation Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Other Person Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Income Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Technical Person Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

Coverage

GEOGRAPHIC UNIT

Magisterial districts and municipalities with 20,000+ population in 2001

UNIVERSE

The people who were present in the country on the night of 9-10 October 2001. People living in households across the country, as well as those in hostels, hotels, hospitals and all other types of communal living quarters, and even the homeless, were all visited.

Producers and sponsors

PRIMARY INVESTIGATORS

Name	Affiliation
Statistics South Africa	
IPUMS	University of Minnesota

Sampling

SAMPLING PROCEDURE

MICRODATA SOURCE: Statistics South Africa

SAMPLE SIZE (person records): 3725655.

SAMPLE DESIGN: Systematic stratified sample drawn by Statistics South Africa.

WEIGHTING

Computed by census agency and should be used for most types of analysis.

Data collection

DATES OF DATA COLLECTION

Start	End
2001-10-10	2001-10-10

TIME PERIODS

Start date	End date
2001-10-10	2001-10-10

DATA COLLECTION MODE

Face-to-face [f2f]

DATA COLLECTION NOTES

de facto, CENSUS DAY: October 10, 2001

questionnaires

QUESTIONNAIRES

Three different census questionnaires were developed - one for households (the A questionnaire), one for individuals in institutions (the B questionnaire), and one for the institutions themselves (the C questionnaire). The A questionnaire was also used in workers' hostels, student hostels, residential hotels and homes for the independent aged, whilst the B and C questionnaires were also used in tourist hotels and for the homeless.

Access policy

CONTACTS

Name
Statistics South Africa

CONFIDENTIALITY

IPUMS International distributes integrated microdata of individuals and households only by agreement of collaborating national statistical offices and under the strictest of confidence. Before data may be distributed to an individual researcher, an electronic license agreement must be signed and approved. To gain access to the data, a researcher must agree to the following: (1) Implement security measures to prevent unauthorized access to census microdata. Under IPUMS International agreements with collaborating agencies, redistribution of the data to third parties is prohibited. (2) Use the microdata for the exclusive purposes of scholarly research and education. Researchers must explicitly agree to not use microdata acquired for any commercial or income-generating venture. (3) Maintain the confidentiality of persons, households, and other entities. Any attempt to ascertain the identity of persons or households from the microdata is prohibited. Alleging that a person or household has been identified is also prohibited. (4) Report all publications based on these data to IPUMS International, which will in turn pass the information on to the relevant national statistical agencies. Once a project is approved, a password is issued and data may be acquired through the Internet. Penalties for violating the license include: revocation of the license, recall of all microdata acquired, filing of a motion of censure to the appropriate professional organizations, and civil prosecution under the relevant national or international statutes. These safeguards mirror the principles from the Joint ECE/Eurostat Work Session on Statistical Data Confidentiality. Employees of the Minnesota Population Center who work with the census microdata to produce the harmonized database also sign agreements to respect the confidentiality of the data. IPUMS International works with each country's statistical office to minimize the risk of disclosure of respondent information. The details of the confidentiality protections vary across countries, but in all cases, names and detailed geographic

information are suppressed and top-codes are imposed on variables such as income that might identify specific persons. In addition, IPUMS International uses a variety of technical procedures to enhance confidentiality protection. These include the following: (1) Swapping an undisclosed fraction of records from one administrative district to another to make positive identification of individuals impossible. (2) Randomizing the placement of households within districts to disguise the order in which individuals were enumerated or the data processed. (3) Aggregating codes of sensitive characteristics (e.g., grouping together very small ethnic categories) (4) Top- and bottom-coding continuous variables to prevent identification of extreme cases. The safety record for public-use census microdata is apparently perfect. In almost four decades of use, there has not been a single verified breach of statistical confidentiality. The measures implemented by the IPUMS International are designed to extend this record.

ACCESS CONDITIONS

An adapted version of the dataset, harmonized for international comparability, is available from IPUMS International (<https://international.ipums.org/international/>) under the following conditions:

IPUMS International distributes integrated microdata of individuals and households only by agreement of collaborating national statistical offices and under the strictest of confidence. Before data may be distributed to an individual researcher, an electronic license agreement must be signed and approved. To gain access to the data, a researcher must agree to the following:

- (1) Implement security measures to prevent unauthorized access to census microdata. Under IPUMS International agreements with collaborating agencies, redistribution of the data to third parties is prohibited.
- (2) Use the microdata for the exclusive purposes of scholarly research and education. Researchers must explicitly agree to not use microdata acquired for any commercial or income-generating venture.
- (3) Maintain the confidentiality of persons, households, and other entities. Any attempt to ascertain the identity of persons or households from the microdata is prohibited. Alleging that a person or household has been identified is also prohibited.
- (4) Report all publications based on these data to IPUMS International, which will in turn pass the information on to the relevant national statistical agencies.

Once a project is approved, a password is issued and data may be acquired through the Internet. Penalties for violating the license include: revocation of the license, recall of all microdata acquired, filing of a motion of censure to the appropriate professional organizations, and civil prosecution under the relevant national or international statutes.

These safeguards mirror the principles from the Joint ECE/Eurostat Work Session on Statistical Data Confidentiality. Employees of the Minnesota Population Center who work with the census microdata to produce the harmonized database also sign agreements to respect the confidentiality of the data.

CITATION REQUIREMENTS

. Steven Ruggles, Lara Cleveland, Rodrigo Lovaton, Sula Sarkar, Matthew Sobek, Derek Burk, Dan Ehrlich, Quinn Heimann, Jane Lee. Integrated Public Use Microdata Series, International: Version 7.5 [dataset]. Minneapolis, MN: IPUMS, 2024. <https://doi.org/10.1> [dataset]. Minneapolis, MN: IPUMS, 2024. <https://doi.org/10.18128/D020.V7.5>

Researchers should also acknowledge the statistical agency that originally produced the data: South Africa, Statistics South Africa. Census 2001

The licensing agreement for use of IPUMS International data requires that users supply IPUMS International with the title and full citation for any publications, research reports, or educational materials making use of the data or documentation.

Copies of such materials are also gratefully received at ipums@umn.edu.

Printed matter should be sent to:
 IPUMS International
 Minnesota Population Center
 University of Minnesota
 50 Willey Hall
 225 19th Avenue South
 Minneapolis, MN 55455

ACCESS AUTHORITY

Name
Statistics South Africa

Disclaimer and copyrights

DISCLAIMER

The user of the data acknowledges that the original collector of the data, the authorized distributor of the data, and the relevant funding agency bear no responsibility for use of the data or for interpretations or inferences based upon such uses.

COPYRIGHT

(c) Copyright 2001, Statistics South Africa and Minnesota Population Center

Metadata production

DDI DOCUMENT ID

DDI_ZAF_2001_PHC_v01_M_v7.5_A_IPUMS

PRODUCERS

Name	Abbreviation	Affiliation	Role
IPUMS	IPUMS	University of Minnesota	Integration Harmonization Documentation

DATE OF METADATA PRODUCTION

May 20, 2024

DDI DOCUMENT VERSION

Version 7.5 October 2024. NEW FEATURES.

--Historical data from NAPP project now available from IPUMS-International.

--Historical census data from Canada, Denmark, the United Kingdom, Germany, Iceland, Norway, Sweden, and the United States for the period 1703 to 1911 are now available from IPUMS-International. The complete count and sample datasets were previously disseminated by the North Atlantic Population Project (NAPP). Where possible, the data have been integrated into existing IPUMS-International variable coding schema. Some new variables have been created that are available only for these pre-1960 datasets. NAPP data users should note that many NAPP variables are available from IPUMS-International by different names. For a complete list of NAPP variables that have been renamed in IPUMS-International, refer to the crosswalk.

--Individual country shapefiles for the third-level administrative level of geography are now available for a few IPUMS samples.

--New spatially harmonized previous-residence variables at the second administrative level of geography are available for several samples in this data release. More information is available [here](#). Users should note that many older migration variables are available by different names. Refer to this table for a crosswalk of old and corresponding new migration variables.

--IPUMS now hosts the Census Mosaic data collection. Census Mosaic identifies, gathers, harmonizes, and distributes surviving historical census microdata from regions of Continental Europe where complete centralized records are not available. The Mosaic project was founded by a consortium of historical social scientists in Europe. Data can be downloaded as static files from the Census Mosaic website. Although the data are not yet integrated fully into IPUMS International, variables have been standardized and harmonized to be roughly compatible with IPUMS coding structures.

NEW SAMPLES.

--Full-count datasets for Great Britain 1851, 1861, 1871 (Scotland only), 1891, and 1901.

--Full-count dataset for Sweden 1910. Denmark (1845, 1880, and 1885)

--Labor force surveys from Spain and eight new labor force surveys from Italy added to the series.

Newly added countries:

Benin, Cote d'Ivoire, Finland, Guatemala, Honduras, Laos, Lesotho, Mauritius, Myanmar, Papua New Guinea, Russia, Slovak Republic, Suriname, Togo, and Zimbabwe

New samples for:

Bolivia, Cambodia, Chile, Cuba, Cote d'Ivoire, Egypt (1848 and 1868, historical samples), Fiji, Guinea, Ireland, Israel, Italy, Lao PDR, Mexico, Morocco, Nepal, Netherlands, Palestine, Peru, Philippines, Puerto Rico, Rwanda, Senegal, Sierra Leone, South Africa, Switzerland, Uganda, United States, United Kingdom, United States, Vietnam, and Zimbabwe

SUPPLEMENTAL DATA.

Data from censuses from Benin and Lesotho that record individual fertility and/or mortality events were made available in IPUMS-International. These files can be downloaded and linked to data produced by the extract system.

NEW VARIABLES.

--IPUMS-International now provides harmonized and year-specific geography variables for all countries including 13 new samples from Dominican Republic, Germany, Indonesia, Israel, Malaysia, Mongolia, Nicaragua, Nigeria, Palestine, Paraguay, Thailand, United Kingdom, and Uruguay. First-level and second-level year specific geography variables are also available for all countries. IPUMS provides corresponding, downloadable GIS boundary files for all harmonized and year specific geography variables. More information about IPUMS geography variables is available [here](#).

--IPUMS International now provides spatially harmonized previous-residence variables at the first administrative level of geography. The codes for the spatially harmonized previous-residence variables match the spatially harmonized place of current residence. More information is available [here](#).

--IPUMS International provides spatially harmonized previous-residence variables at the first administrative level of geography for all samples; previously available country-specific migration variables at the first administrative level that were not fully harmonized spatially have been phased out. Spatially harmonized previous-residence variables at the second administrative level of geography are available for selected samples. More information is available [here](#). Users should note that many older migration variables are available by different names. Refer to this table for a crosswalk of old and corresponding new migration variables.

--IPUMS International now provides spatially harmonized previous-residence variables at the first administrative level of geography for all samples. Spatially harmonized previous-residence variables at the second administrative level of geography are available for several samples in this data release. More information is available [here](#). Users should note that many older migration variables are available by different names. Refer to this table for a crosswalk of old and corresponding new migration variables.

--Lower (third) level geography codes and GIS files have been added for Bangladesh, China, Ethiopia, Mali, Rwanda, and Zimbabwe. Some geography codes and labels might have changed for these countries to accommodate the newer lower level geography.

--Added more detailed 3-digit industry and occupation variables for China 2000.

EDITED SAMPLES.

--Revised full-count data for Great Britain 1881

--Revised full-count datasets for Sweden 1890 and 1900. The revision includes the following changes that improve comparability across Sweden datasets:

--Revisions to certain ethnicity and work variables (and the underlying source data): ORIGIN, LABFORCE, OCCHISCO, OCRELATE, OCSTATUS.

--Revisions to unharmonized source variables: SE1890A_HISCOSE, SE1890A_HISCRELSE, SE1890A_HISCSTATSE, SE1890A_OCCMULTISE, SE1900A_HISCOSE, SE1900A_HISCRELSE, SE1900A_HISCSTATSE, SE1900A_OCCMULTISE.

--A new United States 1850 full-count dataset now matches the corresponding dataset distributed by the USA IPUMS data project. The source variable US1850A_0502 (HISTID) provides a linking key to match person records to the USA version of the data. The IPUMS International version of the data contains names, which the USA version cannot distribute.

EDITED VARIABLES.

An error affecting HHWT for South Africa 2007 was corrected. The existing values were adjusted by a factor of 0.01.

AGEMARR was edited to add data for Hungary 1980 and 1990.

Harmonized and year-specific geography variables for Brazil and Colombia have been edited to accommodate for the availability of refined municipal boundaries. Users should be aware that codes and labels have changed in all harmonized and year specific geography variables for these two countries.

Errors affecting BPLSE2 (formerly BPLPARSE) for Sweden 1890 and the underlying source variable were corrected. Several thousand cases were incorrectly coded as 258101000. These cases have been updated with the correct code: 258171000.

Harmonized geography variables for Italy, Philippines, Rwanda, and United States have been edited to accommodate new

samples. Users should be aware that codes and labels have changed in all harmonized and year specific geography variables for these countries. More information about IPUMS geography variables is available [here](#). The codes for the source variable RW2002A_0419 were corrected to include 0 and 8 as possible responses, which were previously identified as 'unknown years' within primary education.

Errors affecting EDUCFJ for Fiji 2006 were corrected.

A problem with PERWT for Tanzania 2012 was corrected. The previous weights were adjusted to properly reflect population totals.

MOMLOC, POPLOC, and PARRULE were updated for the United States 2010 and 2015 samples to include additional information on subfamilies. Prior to this correction, persons above age 17 were not receiving links to their co-resident mothers and fathers.

An error affecting codes for the URBAN variable in Egypt 1986 for Cairo, Alexandria, Port-Said, and Suez was corrected.

An error in INCEARN affecting Venezuela 2001 was corrected. Earned income in the source variable VE2001A_0440 is interpreted as a monthly amount, thus adjustments previously applied to convert data from daily or weekly income were suppressed.

All the six Brazil samples in IPUMS International were replaced with higher density samples.

An edited version of the Chile 2017 sample was introduced to correct an error in household breaks.

Errors affecting codes for GEO1_ZA in South Africa 2011 and ENUTS1 in United Kingdom 1991 were corrected.

Harmonized geography variables for Cambodia, Fiji, and Nepal have been edited to accommodate new samples. Users should be aware that codes and labels have changed in all harmonized and year-specific geography variables for these countries. More information about IPUMS geography variables is available [here](#).

An error in PERWT affecting Nepal 2001 was corrected.

Errors affecting a code in GQ for Brazil 2010 and Indonesia 2010 were corrected. Both census samples now identify 1-person units created by splitting a large household.

An error in MARRNUM affecting Indonesia 1976 was corrected. Some codes for GEO1_EG2006 and GEO2_EG2006 were edited.

Harmonized geography variables for Bolivia, Cuba, Guinea, Ireland, Morocco, Palestine, Senegal, South Africa, and Uganda have been edited to accommodate new samples. Users should be aware that codes and labels have changed in all harmonized and year-specific geography variables for these countries. More information about IPUMS geography variables is available [here](#).

An error in INCEARN affecting Brazil 1980 was corrected.

An error in EDATTAIN affecting Ireland 1971 and 1981 was corrected.

A small proportion of person records in Mexico 1960 were re-classified in MIGRATEP based on information about their current and previous residence. These were previously coded to 'different major administrative unit', even though their place of residence suggests that their last move was within the same major administrative unit.

The second-level technician (higher) degrees for Spain 1991, 2001, and 2011 were re-classified into post-secondary technical education in EDATTAIN.

An error affecting codes for SEX for Egypt 1848 and 1868 was corrected. The values for male and female had been reversed.

A problem with HHWT and PERWT for Canada 2011 was corrected. The previous weights were adjusted to properly reflect population totals.

Harmonized geography variables for Cambodia, Lao PDR, Mexico, Peru, Switzerland, Vietnam, Puerto Rico, United Kingdom, and United States have been edited to accommodate new samples. Users should be aware that codes and labels have changed in all harmonized and year-specific geography variables for these countries. More information about IPUMS geography variables is available [here](#).

Harmonized geography variables for Chile and Sierra Leone have been edited to accommodate new samples. Users should be aware that codes and labels have changed in all harmonized and year-specific geography variables for these countries. More information about IPUMS geography variables is available [here](#).

An error affecting codes for COMPUTER for Senegal 2013 was corrected.

An error affecting labels available in IND for Peru 1993 was corrected.

An error affecting codes for persons previously residing abroad for MIG1_5_BO in Bolivia 2001 and 2012 was corrected.

EDUCAR, EDATTAIN, and YRSCHOOL were adjusted in the Argentina samples to incorporate information on completion of education levels in the data harmonization.

HHWT and PERWT were calibrated in Kenya 1979 to properly reflect the population distribution by province.

In GQ (group quarters status), persons residing in hospitals of all types were reclassified to 'institutional group quarters' from 'other group quarters,' making their treatment consistent with GQTYPE.

Errors affecting codes for BPLBJ2 in Benin 1979, 1992, and 2002 were corrected.

Errors affecting codes for GEO2_BR1970 in Brazil 1970 were corrected.

data_dictionary

Data file	Cases	variables
ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat Household records	991	
ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat Person records	3725655	

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Household records

Cases: 991

variables:

variables

ID	Name	Label	Question
RECTYPE	RECTYPE	Record type	
COUNTRY	COUNTRY	Country	
YEAR	YEAR	Year	
SAMPLE	SAMPLE	IPUMS sample identifier	
SERIAL	SERIAL	Household serial number	
PERSONS	PERSONS	Number of person records in the household	
HHWT	HHWT	Household weight	
SUBSAMP	SUBSAMP	Subsample number	
STRATA	STRATA	Strata identifier	
GQ	GQ	Group quarters (collective dwelling) status	
GQTYPE	GQTYPE	Group quarters type	
UNREL	UNREL	Number of unrelated persons	
URBAN	URBAN	Urban-rural status	
REGIONW	REGIONW	Continent and region of country	
GEOLEV1	GEOLEV1	1st subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time]	
GEOLEV2	GEOLEV2	2nd subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time]	
POPDENSGEO1	POPDENSGEO1	Population density of GEOLEV1 unit, in persons per square kilometer	
POPDENSGEO2	POPDENSGEO2	Population density of GEOLEV2 unit, in persons per square kilometer	
AREAMOLLWGEO1	AREAMOLLWGEO1	Area of GEOLEV1 unit in square kilometers	
AREAMOLLWGEO2	AREAMOLLWGEO2	Area of GEOLEV2 unit in square kilometers	
GEO1_ZA	GEO1_ZA	South Africa, Province 2001 - 2016 [Level 1; consistent boundaries, GIS]	
GEO1_ZA2001	GEO1_ZA2001	South Africa, Province 2001 [Level 1, GIS]	
GEO2_ZA	GEO2_ZA	South Africa, District council 2001 - 2016 [Level 2; consistent boundaries, GIS]	
GEO2_ZA2001	GEO2_ZA2001	South Africa, District council 2001 [Level 2, GIS]	
MUNIZA	MUNIZA	South Africa, Municipality	

ID	Name	Label	Question
MAGISZA	MAGISZA	South Africa, Magisterial District	
DHS_IPUMSI_ZA	DHS_IPUMSI_ZA	DHS-IPUMS-I South Africa regions, 1998-2016 [consistent boundaries, GIS]	
OWNERSHIP	OWNERSHIP	Ownership of dwelling [general version]	
OWNERSHIPD	OWNERSHIPD	Ownership of dwelling [detailed version]	
ELECTRIC	ELECTRIC	Electricity	
WATSUP	WATSUP	Water supply	
SEWAGE	SEWAGE	Sewage	
FUELCOOK	FUELCOOK	Cooking fuel	
FUELHEAT	FUELHEAT	Fuel for heating	
PHONE	PHONE	Telephone availability	
CELL	CELL	Cellular phone availability	
TRASH	TRASH	Trash disposal	
COMPUTER	COMPUTER	Computer	
REFRIG	REFRIG	Refrigerator	
TV	TV	Television set	
RADIO	RADIO	Radio in household	
ROOMS	ROOMS	Number of rooms	
TOILET	TOILET	Toilet	
HHTYPE	HHTYPE	Household classification	
NFAMS	NFAMS	Number of families in household	
NCOUPLES	NCOUPLES	Number of married couples in household	
NMOTHERS	NMOTHERS	Number of mothers in household	
NFATHERS	NFATHERS	Number of fathers in household	
HEADLOC	HEADLOC	Head's location in household	
ZA2001A_DWNUM	ZA2001A_DWNUM	Dwelling number	
ZA2001A_PERN	ZA2001A_PERN	Number of persons in household	
ZA2001A_FBIG	ZA2001A_FBIG	Dwelling created by splitting apart a large dwelling or household	
ZA2001A_EATYPE	ZA2001A_EATYPE	Enumeration area (EA) type	
ZA2001A_URBAN	ZA2001A_URBAN	Urban-rural, 1996 classification	
ZA2001A_DENSITY	ZA2001A_DENSITY	Size and density of locality	
ZA2001A_DWTYPE1	ZA2001A_DWTYPE1	Type of living quarters (comprehensive)	H-23. Type of living quarters _ What is the type of these living quarters? 1 = Housing unit 2 = Residential hotel 3 = Students' residence 4 = Home for the aged 5 = Workers' hostel 6 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _ If 2-5 go to H-25

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_DWTYPE2	ZA2001A_DWTYPE2	Type of housing unit or institution	H-23a. Type of housing unit __ Which type of dwelling or housing unit does this household occupy? If this household lives in more than one dwelling, write the code of the main dwelling that the household occupies in the boxes. 01 = House or brick structure on a separate stand or yard 02 = Traditional dwelling/hut/structure made of traditional materials 03 = Flat in block of flats 04 = Town/cluster/semi-detached house (simplex, duplex, triplex) 05 = House/flat/room in back yard 06 = Informal dwelling/shack in back yard 07 = Informal dwelling/shack NOT in back yard, e.g. in an informal/squatter settlement 08 = Room/flatlet not in back yard but on a shared property 09 = Caravan or tent 10 = Private ship/boat 11 = Other (specify) _____ _____
ZA2001A_DWMULT	ZA2001A_DWMULT	More than one dwelling	H-23b. More than one dwelling Does this household occupy more than one dwelling on this site? Dot the appropriate box. <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No
ZA2001A_ROOMS	ZA2001A_ROOMS	Number of rooms	H-24. Rooms __ How many rooms, including kitchens, are there for this household? Count all rooms in all dwellings. Exclude bathrooms, sheds, garages, stables, etc. unless persons are living in them. For example, if 4 rooms [0] [4].
ZA2001A_SHARERM	ZA2001A_SHARERM	Sharing one room	H-24a. Sharing 1 room If one room only: Are there two or more households sharing a single room? Dot the appropriate box. <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No
ZA2001A_OWNER	ZA2001A_OWNER	Tenure status	H-25. Tenure status _ What is the tenure status of the household? If the household uses several dwellings, write the code for the main dwelling in the box. 1 = Owned and fully paid off 2 = Owned but not yet paid off 3 = Rented 4 = Occupied rent-free 5 = Other (specify) _____ _ _
ZA2001A_WATPIPE	ZA2001A_WATPIPE	Access to piped water	H-26. Piped water _ In which way does this household obtain piped water for domestic use? Write only one code in the box. 1 = No access to piped (tap) water 2 = Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance greater than 200 m from dwelling 3 = Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance less than 200 m from dwelling 4 = Piped (tap) water inside yard 5 = Piped (tap) water inside dwelling

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_WATSRC	ZA2001A_WATSRC	Source of water	H-26a. Source of water _ What is this household's main source of water for domestic use? Write only one code in the box. 1 = Regional/local water scheme (operated by a Water Service Authority or Provider) 2 = Borehole 3 = Spring 4 = Rain-water tank 5 = Dam / pool / stagnant water 6 = River/stream 7 = Water vendor 8 = Other (specify) _----- ---
ZA2001A_WATACC	ZA2001A_WATACC	Acess to water	H-26a. Source of water _ What is this household's main source of water for domestic use? Write only one code in the box. 1 = Regional/local water scheme (operated by a Water Service Authority or Provider) 2 = Borehole 3 = Spring 4 = Rain-water tank 5 = Dam / pool / stagnant water 6 = River/stream 7 = Water vendor 8 = Other (specify) _----- ---
ZA2001A_TOILET	ZA2001A_TOILET	Type of toilet facility	H-27. Toilet facility _ What is the main type of toilet facility that is available for use by this household? Write only one code in the box. 1 = Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system) 2 = Flush toilet (with septic tank) 3 = Chemical toilet 4 = Pit latrine with ventilation (VIP) 5 = Pit latrine without ventilation 6 = Bucket latrine 7 = None

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_FUELCK	ZA2001A_FUELCK	Fuel for cooking	<p>H-28. Energy/fuel What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking, for heating and for lighting? Write one code in each box.</p> <p>Note: -Wood (4), coal (5) and animal dung (7) cannot be used for lighting -Candles (6) cannot be used for cooking or heating</p> <p>_ Cooking 1 = Electricity 2 = Gas 3 = Paraffin 4 = Wood 5 = Coal 6 = Candles 7 = Animal dung 8 = Solar 9 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p> <p>_ Heating 1 = Electricity 2 = Gas 3 = Paraffin 4 = Wood 5 = Coal 6 = Candles 7 = Animal dung 8 = Solar 9 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p> <p>_ Lighting 1 = Electricity 2 = Gas 3 = Paraffin 4 = Wood 5 = Coal 6 = Candles 7 = Animal dung 8 = Solar 9 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_FUELHT	ZA2001A_FUELHT	Fuel for heating	<p>H-28. Energy/fuel What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking, for heating and for lighting? Write one code in each box.</p> <p>Note: -Wood (4), coal (5) and animal dung (7) cannot be used for lighting -Candles (6) cannot be used for cooking or heating</p> <p>_ Cooking 1 = Electricity 2 = Gas 3 = Paraffin 4 = Wood 5 = Coal 6 = Candles 7 = Animal dung 8 = Solar 9 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p> <p>_ Heating 1 = Electricity 2 = Gas 3 = Paraffin 4 = Wood 5 = Coal 6 = Candles 7 = Animal dung 8 = Solar 9 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p> <p>_ Lighting 1 = Electricity 2 = Gas 3 = Paraffin 4 = Wood 5 = Coal 6 = Candles 7 = Animal dung 8 = Solar 9 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_FUELLT	ZA2001A_FUELLT	Source of lighting	<p>H-28. Energy/fuel What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking, for heating and for lighting? Write one code in each box.</p> <p>Note: -Wood (4), coal (5) and animal dung (7) cannot be used for lighting -Candles (6) cannot be used for cooking or heating</p> <p>_ Cooking 1 = Electricity 2 = Gas 3 = Paraffin 4 = Wood 5 = Coal 6 = Candles 7 = Animal dung 8 = Solar 9 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p> <p>_ Heating 1 = Electricity 2 = Gas 3 = Paraffin 4 = Wood 5 = Coal 6 = Candles 7 = Animal dung 8 = Solar 9 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p> <p>_ Lighting 1 = Electricity 2 = Gas 3 = Paraffin 4 = Wood 5 = Coal 6 = Candles 7 = Animal dung 8 = Solar 9 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p>
ZA2001A_RADIO	ZA2001A_RADIO	Radio in household	<p>H-29. Household goods Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item.</p> <p>Radio <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Television <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Computer <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Refrigerator <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Telephone in the dwelling <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Cell-phone <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_TV	ZA2001A_TV	Television	H-29. Household goods Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item. Radio <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No Television <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No Computer <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N =No Refrigerator <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No Telephone in the dwelling <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No Cell-phone <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30
ZA2001A_COMPUTER	ZA2001A_COMPUTER	Computer	H-29. Household goods Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item. Radio <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No Television <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No Computer <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N =No Refrigerator <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No Telephone in the dwelling <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No Cell-phone <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_REFRIG	ZA2001A_REFRIG	Refrigerator	<p>H-29. Household goods Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item.</p> <p>Radio <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Television <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Computer <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N =No</p> <p>Refrigerator <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Telephone in the dwelling <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Cell-phone <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30</p>
ZA2001A_PHONE	ZA2001A_PHONE	Telephone	<p>H-29. Household goods Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item.</p> <p>Radio <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Television <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Computer <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N =No</p> <p>Refrigerator <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Telephone in the dwelling <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Cell-phone <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_CELL	ZA2001A_CELL	Cell phone	<p>H-29. Household goods Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item.</p> <p>Radio <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Television <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Computer <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Refrigerator <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Telephone in the dwelling <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Cell-phone <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30</p>
ZA2001A_PHONEAC	ZA2001A_PHONEAC	Access to telephone	<p>H-29a. Access to telephone (If no to "telephone" and "cell-phone" in H-28) Where do members of this household mainly use a telephone? Write only one code in the box.</p> <p>1 = At a neighbour nearby 2 = At a public telephone nearby 3 = At another location nearby 4 = At another location, not nearby 5 = No access to a telephone</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_PHONETY	ZA2001A_PHONETY	Type of telephone access	<p>H-29. Household goods Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item.</p> <p>Radio <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Television <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Computer <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Refrigerator <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Telephone in the dwelling <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>Cell-phone <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p> <p>If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30</p> <p>H-29a. Access to telephone (If no to "telephone" and "cell-phone" in H-28) Where do members of this household mainly use a telephone? Write only one code in the box. 1 = At a neighbour nearby 2 = At a public telephone nearby 3 = At another location nearby 4 = At another location, not nearby 5 = No access to a telephone</p>
ZA2001A_GARBAGE	ZA2001A_GARBAGE	Refuse disposal	<p>H-30. Refuse or rubbish How is the refuse or rubbish of this household mainly disposed of? Write only one code in the box. 1 = Removed by local authority at least once a week 2 = Removed by local authority less often 3 = Communal refuse dump 4 = Own refuse dump 5 = No rubbish disposal 6 = Other (specify) _____ _____</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_RACEH	ZA2001A_RACEH	Majority race/ethnicity of household	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-04. Relationship __ What is (the person's) relationship to the head or acting head of the household? The head or acting head is the person listed in row 1 (of the first questionnaire, if more than one questionnaire has been completed for this household). See definition of head in column P-00. Write the appropriate code in the boxes.</p> <p>01 = Head/acting head 02 = Husband/wife/partner 03 = Son/daughter 04 = Adopted child 05 = Stepchild 06 = Brother/sister 07 = Parent 08 = Parent-in-law 09 = Grand/greatgrand child 10 = Son/daughter-in-law 11 = Brother/sister-in-law 12 = Other relative 13 = Non related person</p> <p>P-06. Population group _ How would (the person) describe him/herself in terms of population group? 1 = Black African 2 = Coloured 3 = Indian or Asian 4 = White 5 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_INCH	ZA2001A_INCH	Annual household income	Ask of everyone P-22. Income category __ What is the income category that best describes the gross income of (this person) before tax? Choose from the table below the code that corresponds to the income level. A monthly income of R1 500 is code 04 and an annual income of R25 000 is code 05. Monthly 01 = No income 02 = R 1 -- R 400 03 = R 401 -- R 800 04 = R 801 -- R 1 600 05 = R 1 601 -- R 3 200 06 = R 3 201 -- R 6 400 07 = R 6 401 -- R 12 800 08 = R 12 801 -- R 25 600 09 = R 25 601 -- R 51 200 10 = R 51 201 -- R 102 400 11 = R 102 401 -- R 204 800 12 = R 204 801 or more Annual 01 = No income 02 = R 1 -- R 4 800 03 = R 4 801 -- R 9 600 04 = R 9 601 -- R 19 200 05 = R 19 201 -- R 38 400 06 = R 38 401 -- R 76 800 07 = R 76 801 -- R 153 600 08 = R 153 601 -- R 307 200 09 = R 307 201 -- R 614 400 10 = R 614 401 -- R 1 228 800 11 = R 1 228 801 -- R 2 457 600 12 = R 2 457 601 or more
ZA2001A_WTHH	ZA2001A_WTHH	Household weight	
ZA2001A_QDWTYPE1	ZA2001A_QDWTYPE1	Flag for type of living quarters (comprehensive)	
ZA2001A_QDWTYPE2	ZA2001A_QDWTYPE2	Flag for type of housing unit or institution	
ZA2001A_QDWMULT	ZA2001A_QDWMULT	Flag for more than one dwelling	
ZA2001A_QROOMS	ZA2001A_QROOMS	Flag for number of rooms	
ZA2001A_QSHARERM	ZA2001A_QSHARERM	Flag for sharing one room	
ZA2001A_QOWNER	ZA2001A_QOWNER	Flag for tenure status	
ZA2001A_QWATPIPE	ZA2001A_QWATPIPE	Flag for access to piped water	
ZA2001A_QWATSRC	ZA2001A_QWATSRC	Flag for source of water	
ZA2001A_QTOILET	ZA2001A_QTOILET	Flag for type of toilet facility	
ZA2001A_QFUELCK	ZA2001A_QFUELCK	Flag for fuel for cooking	
ZA2001A_QFUELHT	ZA2001A_QFUELHT	Flag for fuel for heating	
ZA2001A_QFUELLT	ZA2001A_QFUELLT	Flag for source of lighting	
ZA2001A_QRADIO	ZA2001A_QRADIO	Flag for radio in household	
ZA2001A_QTV	ZA2001A_QTV	Flag for television	
ZA2001A_QCOMPUTE	ZA2001A_QCOMPUTE	Flag for computer	
ZA2001A_QREFRIG	ZA2001A_QREFRIG	Flag for refrigerator	
ZA2001A_QPHONE	ZA2001A_QPHONE	Flag for telephone	
ZA2001A_QCELL	ZA2001A_QCELL	Flag for cell phone	
ZA2001A_QPHONEAC	ZA2001A_QPHONEAC	Flag for access to telephone	
ZA2001A_QGARBAGE	ZA2001A_QGARBAGE	Flag for refuse disposal	

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_MORTN	ZA2001A_MORTN	Number of mortality records in input data	
ZA2001A_STRATA	ZA2001A_STRATA	Strata	

total: 102

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Person records

Cases: 3725655

variables:

variables

ID	Name	Label	Question
PERNUM	PERNUM	Person number	
PERWT	PERWT	Person weight	
MOMLOC	MOMLOC	Mother's location in household	
POPLOC	POPLOC	Father's location in household	
SPLOC	SPLOC	Spouse's location in household	
PARRULE	PARRULE	Rule for linking parent	
SPRULE	SPRULE	Rule for linking spouse	
STEPMOM	STEPMOM	Probable stepmother	
STEPPOP	STEPPOP	Probable stepfather	
POLYMAL	POLYMAL	Man with more than one wife linked	
POLY2ND	POLY2ND	Woman is second or higher order wife	
FAMUNIT	FAMUNIT	Family unit membership	
FAMSIZE	FAMSIZE	Number of own family members in household	
NCHILD	NCHILD	Number of own children in household	
NCHLT5	NCHLT5	Number of own children under age 5 in household	
ELDCH	ELDCH	Age of eldest own child in household	
YNGCH	YNGCH	Age of youngest own child in household	
RELATE	RELATE	Relationship to household head [general version]	
RELATED	RELATED	Relationship to household head [detailed version]	
AGE	AGE	Age	
AGE2	AGE2	Age, grouped into intervals	
SEX	SEX	Sex	
MARST	MARST	Marital status [general version]	
MARSTD	MARSTD	Marital status [detailed version]	
CONSENS	CONSENS	Consensual union	
POLYGAM	POLYGAM	Polygamous union	
CHBORN	CHBORN	Children ever born	

ID	Name	Label	Question
CHSURV	CHSURV	Children surviving	
CHBORNF	CHBORNF	Number of female children ever born	
CHBORNM	CHBORNM	Number of male children ever born	
LASTBMO	LASTBMO	Month of last birth	
LASTBYR	LASTBYR	Year of last birth	
MORTMOT	MORTMOT	Mortality status of mother	
MORTFAT	MORTFAT	Mortality status of father	
NATIVITY	NATIVITY	Nativity status	
BPLCOUNTRY	BPLCOUNTRY	Country of birth	
CITIZEN	CITIZEN	Citizenship	
NATION	NATION	Country of citizenship	
BPLZA	BPLZA	Province of birth, South Africa	
RELIGION	RELIGION	Religion [general version]	
RELIGIOND	RELIGIOND	Religion [detailed version]	
RACE	RACE	Race or color	
LANGZA1	LANGZA1	Language spoken at home, South Africa	
SCHOOL	SCHOOL	School attendance	
EDATTAIN	EDATTAIN	Educational attainment, international recode [general version]	
EDATTAIND	EDATTAIND	Educational attainment, international recode [detailed version]	
YRSCHOOL	YRSCHOOL	Years of schooling	
EDUCZA	EDUCZA	Educational attainment, South Africa	
EMPSTAT	EMPSTAT	Activity status (employment status) [general version]	
EMPSTATD	EMPSTATD	Activity status (employment status) [detailed version]	
LABFORCE	LABFORCE	Labor force participation	
OCCISCO	OCCISCO	Occupation, ISCO general	
OCC	OCC	Occupation, unrecoded	
ISCO88A	ISCO88A	Occupation, ISCO-1988, 3-digit	
INDGEN	INDGEN	Industry, general recode	
IND	IND	Industry, unrecoded	
CLASSWK	CLASSWK	Status in employment (class of worker) [general version]	
CLASSWKD	CLASSWKD	Status in employment (class of worker) [detailed version]	
HRSWORK1	HRSWORK1	Hours worked per week	

ID	Name	Label	Question
HRSWORK2	HRSWORK2	Hours worked per week, categorized	
HRSACTUAL1	HRSACTUAL1	Actual hours worked per week	
HRSACTUAL2	HRSACTUAL2	Actual hours worked per week, categorized	
WRKAVAIL	WRKAVAIL	Available to work	
INCTOT	INCTOT	Total income	
MIGRATE5	MIGRATE5	Migration status, 5 years	
GEOMIG1_5	GEOMIG1_5	1st subnational geographic level of residence 5 years prior to survey, world [consistent boundaries over time]	
MIGYRS2	MIGYRS2	Years residing in current dwelling	
MIG1_5_ZA	MIG1_5_ZA	Province of residence 5 years ago, South Africa; consistent boundaries, GIS	
MIGPLCZA	MIGPLCZA	Same place 5 years ago, South Africa	
DISABLED	DISABLED	Disability status	
DISBLND	DISBLND	Blind or vision-impaired	
DISDEAF	DISDEAF	Deaf or hearing-impaired	
DISMUTE	DISMUTE	Mute or speech impaired	
DISMNTL	DISMNTL	Mental disability	
DISPSYC	DISPSYC	Psychological disability	
ZA2001A_PERNUM	ZA2001A_PERNUM	Person number (within household)	
ZA2001A_DWTYPE1P	ZA2001A_DWTYPE1P	Type of living quarters (comprehensive)	
ZA2001A_PERNUMO	ZA2001A_PERNUMO	Person number	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.] P-01. Person no Assign row or person number to each person starting from 01. For example, first person becomes [0] 1, the tenth person becomes [1] 0. The eleventh person becomes [1] 1 in the second questionnaire (if used).</p> <p>_ 1 _ 2 _ 3 _ 4 _ 5 _ 6 _ 7 _ 8 _ 9 _ 0</p> <p>[In P-01 above, all 10 rows are listed because they are not exactly the same.]</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_BMO	ZA2001A_BMO	Month of birth	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-02. Date of birth What is (the person's) date of birth and age in completed years? If date of birth not known give (the person's) age in completed years. If age not known give an estimate of age.</p> <p>----- Date of Birth --- Age Date of birth is recorded as DD/MM/YYYY. DD is for day / MM is for month and / YYYY is for year. For example, if the person was born on 7 September 1963, write [0] [7] for the day DD, [0] [9] for the month MM, and [1] [9] [6] [3] for the year YYYY. For babies less than one year write [0] [0] [0] for the age, and for persons 7 years and 10 months old write [0] [0] [7] for age.</p>
ZA2001A_BYR	ZA2001A_BYR	Year of birth	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-02. Date of birth What is (the person's) date of birth and age in completed years? If date of birth not known give (the person's) age in completed years. If age not known give an estimate of age.</p> <p>----- Date of Birth --- Age Date of birth is recorded as DD/MM/YYYY. DD is for day / MM is for month and / YYYY is for year. For example, if the person was born on 7 September 1963, write [0] [7] for the day DD, [0] [9] for the month MM, and [1] [9] [6] [3] for the year YYYY. For babies less than one year write [0] [0] [0] for the age, and for persons 7 years and 10 months old write [0] [0] [7] for age.</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_AGE	ZA2001A_AGE	Age	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-02. Date of birth What is (the person's) date of birth and age in completed years? If date of birth not known give (the person's) age in completed years. If age not known give an estimate of age.</p> <p>----- Date of Birth ___ Age Date of birth is recorded as DD/MM/YYYY. DD is for day / MM is for month and / YYYY is for year. For example, if the person was born on 7 September 1963, write [0] [7] for the day DD, [0] [9] for the month MM, and [1] [9] [6] [3] for the year YYYY. For babies less than one year write [0] [0] [0] for the age, and for persons 7 years and 10 months old write [0] [0] [7] for age.</p>
ZA2001A_SEX	ZA2001A_SEX	Sex	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-03. Sex Is (the person) male or female? Dot the appropriate box. [] M = Male [] F = Female</p>
ZA2001A_RELATE	ZA2001A_RELATE	Relationship to head of household	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-04. Relationship __ What is (the person's) relationship to the head or acting head of the household? The head or acting head is the person listed in row 1 (of the first questionnaire, if more than one questionnaire has been completed for this household). See definition of head in column P-00. Write the appropriate code in the boxes.</p> <p>01 = Head/acting head 02 = Husband/wife/partner 03 = Son/daughter 04 = Adopted child 05 = Stepchild 06 = Brother/sister 07 = Parent 08 = Parent-in-law 09 = Grand/greatgrand child 10 = Son/daughter-in-law 11 = Brother/sister-in-law 12 = Other relative 13 = Non related person</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_MARST	ZA2001A_MARST	Marital status	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-05. Marital status _ What is (the person's) present marital status? Write only one code per person in the box. If both civil/religious and traditional marriage, indicate civil/religious. 1 = Married civil/religious 2 = Married traditional/customary 3 = Polygamous marriage 4 = Living together like married partners 5 = Never married 6 = Widower/widow 7 = Separated 8 = Divorced If categories 5-8 go to (P-06).</p>
ZA2001A_SPLOCO	ZA2001A_SPLOCO	Person number of spouse	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-05a. Spouse (If categories 1-4 in P-05) __ Who, in the household, is (the person's) spouse or partner? Write the person number of the spouse or partner in the appropriate box. For example, if the spouse of the head of the household is the person listed in row 2 write [0] [2] in row 1. If a man has more than one wife, write the row number of the first wife. Write the row number of the husband for each of his wives. If spouse is not in the household write [9] [9].</p>
ZA2001A_RACE	ZA2001A_RACE	Race/ethnicity	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-06. Population group _ How would (the person) describe him/herself in terms of population group? 1 = Black African 2 = Coloured 3 = Indian or Asian 4 = White 5 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_LANG	ZA2001A_LANG	Language	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-07. Language __ Which language does (the person) speak most often in this household? Write only one code per person. 01 = Afrikaans 02 = English 03 = IsiNdebele 04 = IsiXhosa 05 = IsiZulu 06 = Sepedi 07 = Sesotho 08 = Setswana 09 = SiSwati 10 = Tshivenda 11 = Xitsonga 12 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p>
ZA2001A_RELIG1	ZA2001A_RELIG1	Religion	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-08. Religion _ _ _ _ _ What is (the person's) religion, denomination, or belief? Please write the complete name. For example, Apostolic Faith Mission, Dutch Reformed Church, Hinduism, Islam, Zion Christian Church. If no religion, write none. Use capital letters only.</p>
ZA2001A_RELIGGR	ZA2001A_RELIGGR	Religion (grouped)	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-08. Religion _ _ _ _ _ What is (the person's) religion, denomination, or belief? Please write the complete name. For example, Apostolic Faith Mission, Dutch Reformed Church, Hinduism, Islam, Zion Christian Church. If no religion, write none. Use capital letters only.</p>
ZA2001A_BORNSAF	ZA2001A_BORNSAF	Born in South Africa	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-09. Born in SA? Was (the person) born in South Africa? Include former "homelands" as South Africa. Dot the appropriate box. [] Y = Yes [] N = No If no go to P-09b</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_BPLPROV	ZA2001A_BPLPROV	Province of birth	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-09a. Place of birth (If yes to P-09) _____ In which province was (the person) born?</p> <p>1 = Western Cape 2 = Eastern Cape 3 = Northern Cape 4 = Free State 5 = KwaZulu-Natal 6 = North West 7 = Gauteng 8 = Mpumalanga 9 = Northern Province Go to P-10</p>
ZA2001A_BPLCTRY	ZA2001A_BPLCTRY	Country of birth	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-09b. Country of birth (If no to P-09) _____ In which country was (the person) born? Write the present name of the country. Use capital letters only.</p>
ZA2001A_BPLCTRY2	ZA2001A_BPLCTRY2	Country of birth (grouped)	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-09b. Country of birth (If no to P-09) _____ In which country was (the person) born? Write the present name of the country. Use capital letters only.</p>
ZA2001A_CITIZ	ZA2001A_CITIZ	Citizenship	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>Citizenship P-10. Is (the person) a South African citizen? Dot the appropriate box.</p> <p>[] Y = Yes [] N = No If yes go to P-11</p> <p>P-10a. _____ If no, what is the name of the country of citizenship? Use capital letters only.</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_CITIZGR	ZA2001A_CITIZGR	Citizenship (grouped)	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>Citizenship P-10. Is (the person) a South African citizen? Dot the appropriate box.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No If yes go to P-11</p> <p>P-10a. _____ If no, what is the name of the country of citizenship?</p> <p>Use capital letters only.</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_USLRES	ZA2001A_USLRES	Usually live here	<p>For office use</p> <p>----- EA number ----- Record number ----- Household number ----- Institution number ----- Province</p> <p>----- Name of local munic.</p> <p>----- Main place ----- Sub-place</p> <p>____ Physical address ____ Postal code ____ Telephone no</p> <p>_ How many questionnaires were completed for this household? _ If more than one questionnaire, what is the number of this questionnaire?</p> <p>Number of people: -- Total -- Male -- Female</p> <p>This Questionnaire should be completed for all households living in housing units and collective living quarters including those located in institutions (for example, boarding schools, prisons, hospitals, etc.)</p> <p>Who completed this questionnaire? Use a dot. [] An enumerator through an interview [] A household member through self-completion</p> <p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>Usually live P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</p> <p>Dot the appropriate box. [] Y = Yes [] N = No If yes go to P-12</p> <p>P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of enumeration, dot the S box. [] S If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only. -- Province ----- Main Place ----- Sub-space</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_USLPROV	ZA2001A_USLPROV	Province of usual residence	<p>For office use</p> <p>----- EA number</p> <p>----- Record number</p> <p>----- Household number</p> <p>----- Institution number</p> <p>----- Province</p> <p>----- Name of local munic.</p> <p>----- Main place</p> <p>----- Sub-place</p> <p>----- Physical address</p> <p>----- Postal code</p> <p>----- Telephone no</p> <p>_ How many questionnaires were completed for this household?</p> <p>_ If more than one questionnaire, what is the number of this questionnaire?</p> <p>Number of people:</p> <p>-- Total</p> <p>-- Male</p> <p>-- Female</p> <p>This Questionnaire should be completed for all households living in housing units and collective living quarters including those located in institutions (for example, boarding schools, prisons, hospitals, etc.)</p> <p>Who completed this questionnaire? Use a dot.</p> <p>[] An enumerator through an interview</p> <p>[] A household member through self-completion</p> <p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone</p> <p>[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>Usually live</p> <p>P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</p> <p>Dot the appropriate box.</p> <p>[] Y = Yes</p> <p>[] N = No</p> <p>If yes go to P-12</p> <p>P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of enumeration, dot the S box.</p> <p>[] S</p> <p>If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only.</p> <p>___ Province</p> <p>----- Main Place</p> <p>----- Sub-space</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_MOVED	ZA2001A_MOVED	Living in same place five years ago	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-12. Five years ago Five years ago (at the time of Census '96), was (the person) living in this place (i.e. this suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement)? Dot the appropriate box. <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No <input type="checkbox"/> B = Born after October 1996 If Y or B go to P-13</p>
ZA2001A_YRMOVED	ZA2001A_YRMOVED	Year moved	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-12b. In which year (If no to P-12) _ In which year did (the person) move to this place? If more than one move, write the code for the year of the last move. 1 = 1996 2 = 1997 3 = 1998 4 = 1999 5 = 2000 6 = 2001</p>
ZA2001A_PRVPROV	ZA2001A_PRVPROV	Province five years ago	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-12. Five years ago Five years ago (at the time of Census '96), was (the person) living in this place (i.e. this suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement)? Dot the appropriate box. <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No <input type="checkbox"/> B = Born after October 1996 If Y or B go to P-13</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_DSSIGHT	ZA2001A_DSSIGHT	Disability - sight	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-13. Disability Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes. <input type="checkbox"/> 0 = None <input type="checkbox"/> 1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation) <input type="checkbox"/> 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) <input type="checkbox"/> 3 = Communication (speech impairment) <input type="checkbox"/> 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations) <input type="checkbox"/> 5 = Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) <input type="checkbox"/> 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</p>
ZA2001A_DSHEAR	ZA2001A_DSHEAR	Disability - hearing	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-13. Disability Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes. <input type="checkbox"/> 0 = None <input type="checkbox"/> 1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation) <input type="checkbox"/> 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) <input type="checkbox"/> 3 = Communication (speech impairment) <input type="checkbox"/> 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations) <input type="checkbox"/> 5 = Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) <input type="checkbox"/> 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</p>
ZA2001A_DSCOMM	ZA2001A_DSCOMM	Disability - communication	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-13. Disability Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes. <input type="checkbox"/> 0 = None <input type="checkbox"/> 1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation) <input type="checkbox"/> 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) <input type="checkbox"/> 3 = Communication (speech impairment) <input type="checkbox"/> 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations) <input type="checkbox"/> 5 = Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) <input type="checkbox"/> 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_DSPHYS	ZA2001A_DSPHYS	Disability - physical	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-13. Disability Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes. <input type="checkbox"/> 0 = None <input type="checkbox"/> 1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation) <input type="checkbox"/> 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) <input type="checkbox"/> 3 = Communication (speech impairment) <input type="checkbox"/> 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations) <input type="checkbox"/> 5 = Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) <input type="checkbox"/> 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</p>
ZA2001A_DISMENT	ZA2001A_DISMENT	Disability - intellectual	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-13. Disability Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes. <input type="checkbox"/> 0 = None <input type="checkbox"/> 1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation) <input type="checkbox"/> 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) <input type="checkbox"/> 3 = Communication (speech impairment) <input type="checkbox"/> 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations) <input type="checkbox"/> 5 = Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) <input type="checkbox"/> 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</p>
ZA2001A_DISEMOT	ZA2001A_DISEMOT	Disability - emotional	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-13. Disability Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes. <input type="checkbox"/> 0 = None <input type="checkbox"/> 1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation) <input type="checkbox"/> 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) <input type="checkbox"/> 3 = Communication (speech impairment) <input type="checkbox"/> 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations) <input type="checkbox"/> 5 = Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) <input type="checkbox"/> 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_DISAB	ZA2001A_DISAB	Type of disability	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-13. Disability Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 0 = None <input type="checkbox"/> 1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation) <input type="checkbox"/> 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing) <input type="checkbox"/> 3 = Communication (speech impairment) <input type="checkbox"/> 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations) <input type="checkbox"/> 5 = Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning) <input type="checkbox"/> 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</p>
ZA2001A_MOTHLIV	ZA2001A_MOTHLIV	Mother alive	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>Mother alive P-14. Is (the person's) own biological mother still alive? Dot the appropriate box.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No <input type="checkbox"/> D = Do not know</p> <p>P-14a. __ (Person no.) If yes, who in this household is (the person's) mother? For example, if the mother is the person listed in row 2, write [0] [2]. If the mother does not live in this household, write [9] [9] in the appropriate boxes.</p>
ZA2001A_MOTHLOC	ZA2001A_MOTHLOC	Mother's person number in household	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>Mother alive P-14. Is (the person's) own biological mother still alive? Dot the appropriate box.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No <input type="checkbox"/> D = Do not know</p> <p>P-14a. __ (Person no.) If yes, who in this household is (the person's) mother? For example, if the mother is the person listed in row 2, write [0] [2]. If the mother does not live in this household, write [9] [9] in the appropriate boxes.</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_FATHLIV	ZA2001A_FATHLIV	Father alive	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>Father alive P-15. Is (the person's) own biological father still alive?</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No <input type="checkbox"/> D = Do not know</p> <p>P-15a. __ (Person no.) If yes, who in this household is (the person's) father? For</p> <p>example, if the father is the person listed in row 2, write [0] [2]. If the father does not live in this household, write [9] [9] in the appropriate boxes.</p>
ZA2001A_FATHLOC	ZA2001A_FATHLOC	Father's person number in household	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>Father alive P-15. Is (the person's) own biological father still alive?</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No <input type="checkbox"/> D = Do not know</p> <p>P-15a. __ (Person no.) If yes, who in this household is (the person's) father? For</p> <p>example, if the father is the person listed in row 2, write [0] [2]. If the father does not live in this household, write [9] [9] in the appropriate boxes.</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_SCHOOL	ZA2001A_SCHOOL	Present school attendance	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>Present school attendance P-16. _ Does (the person) presently attend an educational institution? Please include</p> <p>studies by correspondence/ distance education. 1 = No (Go to P-17) 2 = Yes: Pre-school 3 = Yes: School 4 = Yes: College 5 = Yes: Technikon 6 = Yes: University 7 = Yes: Adult education centre 8 = Yes: Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p> <p>P-16a. _ If yes, is this institution public or private? 1 = public (government) 2 = private 3 = don't know</p>
ZA2001A_SCHTYPE	ZA2001A_SCHTYPE	Type of educational institution	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>Present school attendance P-16. _ Does (the person) presently attend an educational institution? Please include</p> <p>studies by correspondence/ distance education. 1 = No (Go to P-17) 2 = Yes: Pre-school 3 = Yes: School 4 = Yes: College 5 = Yes: Technikon 6 = Yes: University 7 = Yes: Adult education centre 8 = Yes: Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p> <p>P-16a. _ If yes, is this institution public or private? 1 = public (government) 2 = private 3 = don't know</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_EDATTAN	ZA2001A_EDATTAN	Level of education	<p>[Ask of] ALL aged 5 years or more P-17. Level of education __ What is the highest level of education that (the person) has completed? 99 = No schooling 00 = Grade 0 01 = Grade 1/Sub A 02 = Grade 2/Sub B 03 = Grade 3/Standard 1 04 = Grade 4/Standard 2 05 = Grade 5/Standard 3 06 = Grade 6/Standard 4 07 = Grade 7/Standard 5 08 = Grade8/Standard 6/Form 1 09 = Grade9/Standard 7/Form 2 10 = Grade 10/Standard 8/Form 3/NTCI 11 = Grade 11/Standard 9/Form 4/NTCII 12 = Grade 12/Standard10/Form 5/Matric./NTCIII 13 = Certificate with less than Grade 12 14 = Diploma with less than Grade 12 15 = Certificate with Grade 12 16 = Diploma with Grade 12 17 = Bachelors Degree 18 = Bachelors Degree and Diploma 19 = Honours degree 20 = Higher Degree (Masters, Doctorate) 21 = Other 22 = Don't know If categories 99 or 00-12 go to P-18</p>
ZA2001A_EDATTAN2	ZA2001A_EDATTAN2	Level of education (grouped)	<p>[Ask of] ALL aged 5 years or more P-17. Level of education __ What is the highest level of education that (the person) has completed? 99 = No schooling 00 = Grade 0 01 = Grade 1/Sub A 02 = Grade 2/Sub B 03 = Grade 3/Standard 1 04 = Grade 4/Standard 2 05 = Grade 5/Standard 3 06 = Grade 6/Standard 4 07 = Grade 7/Standard 5 08 = Grade8/Standard 6/Form 1 09 = Grade9/Standard 7/Form 2 10 = Grade 10/Standard 8/Form 3/NTCI 11 = Grade 11/Standard 9/Form 4/NTCII 12 = Grade 12/Standard10/Form 5/Matric./NTCIII 13 = Certificate with less than Grade 12 14 = Diploma with less than Grade 12 15 = Certificate with Grade 12 16 = Diploma with Grade 12 17 = Bachelors Degree 18 = Bachelors Degree and Diploma 19 = Honours degree 20 = Higher Degree (Masters, Doctorate) 21 = Other 22 = Don't know If categories 99 or 00-12 go to P-18</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_EDFIELD	ZA2001A_EDFIELD	Field of education	<p>[Ask of] all persons with post-school qualifications P-17a. Field of education (If categories 13-20 in P-17) __ In which field is (the person's) highest post-school qualification? 01 = Agriculture or Renewable Natural Resources 02 = Architecture or Environmental Design 03 = Arts, Visual or Performing 04 = Business, Commerce or Management Sciences 05 = Communication 06 = Computer Science or Data Processing 07 = Education, Training or Development 08 = Engineering or Engineering Technology 09 = Health Care or Health Sciences 10 = Home Economics 11 = Industrial Arts, Trades or Technology 12 = Languages, Linguistics or Literature 13 = Law 14 = Libraries or Museums 15 = Life Sciences or Physical Sciences 16 = Mathematical Sciences 17 = Military Sciences 18 = Philosophy, Religion or Theology 19 = Physical Education or Leisure 20 = Psychology 21 = Public Administration or Social Services 22 = Social Sciences or Social Studies 23 = Other (Specify) _____ --</p>
ZA2001A_WRKWEEK	ZA2001A_WRKWEEK	Any work in the seven days before 10 October	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) P-18. Any work in the 7 days before 10 October _ In the seven days before 10 October did (the person) do any work for PAY (in cash or in kind profit or family gain, for one hour or more?) 1 = Yes: formal registered (non-farming) 2 = Yes: informal unregistered (non-farming) 3 = Yes: farming 4 = Yes: has work but was temporarily absent 5 = No: did not have work If yes go to P-19</p>
ZA2001A_WRKREASN	ZA2001A_WRKREASN	Reason why not working	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) Did not have any work P-18a. Reason why not working (If no to P-18) _ What is the main reason why (the person) did not have work in the seven days before 10 October? If more than one reason, write the code of the main (most important) reason. 1 = Scholar or student 2 = Home-maker or housewife 3 = Pensioner or retired person/ too old to work 4 = Unable to work due to illness or disability 5 = Seasonal worker not working presently 6 = Does not choose to work 7 = Could not find work</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_WRKSEEK	ZA2001A_WRKSEEK	Taking active steps to find a job	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) Did not have any work P-18b. Active steps (If no to P-18) In the past four weeks before 10 October has (the person) taken active steps to find employment? For example, (the person) went to visit factories or other employment places, placed or answered advertisements, looked for land or a building or equipment to start own business or farm. <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No</p>
ZA2001A_WRKAVAIL	ZA2001A_WRKAVAIL	Availability	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) Did not have any work P-18c. Availability (If NO to P-18) _ If offered work, how soon could (the person) start? 1 = Within one week 2 = More than 1 week, up to 2 weeks 3 = More than 2 weeks, up to 4 weeks 4 = Some time after 4 weeks 5 = Does not choose to work Go to P-20</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_EMPSTAT	ZA2001A_EMPSTAT	Employment status (official definition)	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)</p> <p>P-18. Any work in the 7 days before 10 October _ In the seven days before 10 October did (the person) do any work for PAY (in cash or in kind profit or family gain, for one hour or more?) 1 = Yes: formal registered (non-farming) 2 = Yes: informal unregistered (non-farming) 3 = Yes: farming 4 = Yes: has work but was temporarily absent 5 = No: did not have work If yes go to P-19</p> <p>Did not have any work P-18a. Reason why not working (If no to P-18) _ What is the main reason why (the person) did not have work in the seven days before 10 October? If more than one reason, write the code of the main (most important) reason. 1 = Scholar or student 2 = Home-maker or housewife 3 = Pensioner or retired person/ too old to work 4 = Unable to work due to illness or disability 5 = Seasonal worker not working presently 6 = Does not choose to work 7 = Could not find work</p> <p>P-18b. Active steps (If no to P-18) In the past four weeks before 10 October has (the person) taken active steps to find employment? For example, (the person) went to visit factories or other employment places, placed or answered advertisements, looked for land or a building or equipment to start own business or farm. [] Y = Yes [] N = No</p> <p>P-18c. Availability (If NO to P-18) _ If offered work, how soon could (the person) start? 1 = Within one week 2 = More than 1 week, up to 2 weeks 3 = More than 2 weeks, up to 4 weeks 4 = Some time after 4 weeks 5 = Does not choose to work Go to P-20</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_EMPSTAT2	ZA2001A_EMPSTAT2	Employment status (expanded definition)	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)</p> <p>P-18. Any work in the 7 days before 10 October _ In the seven days before 10 October did (the person) do any work for PAY (in cash or in kind profit or family gain, for one hour or more?) 1 = Yes: formal registered (non-farming) 2 = Yes: informal unregistered (non-farming) 3 = Yes: farming 4 = Yes: has work but was temporarily absent 5 = No: did not have work If yes go to P-19</p> <p>Did not have any work P-18a. Reason why not working (If no to P-18) _ What is the main reason why (the person) did not have work in the seven days before 10 October? If more than one reason, write the code of the main (most important) reason. 1 = Scholar or student 2 = Home-maker or housewife 3 = Pensioner or retired person/ too old to work 4 = Unable to work due to illness or disability 5 = Seasonal worker not working presently 6 = Does not choose to work 7 = Could not find work</p> <p>P-18b. Active steps (If no to P-18) In the past four weeks before 10 October has (the person) taken active steps to find employment? For example, (the person) went to visit factories or other employment places, placed or answered advertisements, looked for land or a building or equipment to start own business or farm. [] Y = Yes [] N = No</p> <p>P-18c. Availability (If NO to P-18) _ If offered work, how soon could (the person) start? 1 = Within one week 2 = More than 1 week, up to 2 weeks 3 = More than 2 weeks, up to 4 weeks 4 = Some time after 4 weeks 5 = Does not choose to work Go to P-20</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_EMPSTAT3	ZA2001A_EMPSTAT3	Employment status (derived)	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)</p> <p>P-18. Any work in the 7 days before 10 October _ In the seven days before 10 October did (the person) do any work for PAY (in cash or in kind profit or family gain, for one hour or more?) 1 = Yes: formal registered (non-farming) 2 = Yes: informal unregistered (non-farming) 3 = Yes: farming 4 = Yes: has work but was temporarily absent 5 = No: did not have work If yes go to P-19</p> <p>Did not have any work P-18a. Reason why not working (If no to P-18) _ What is the main reason why (the person) did not have work in the seven days before 10 October? If more than one reason, write the code of the main (most important) reason. 1 = Scholar or student 2 = Home-maker or housewife 3 = Pensioner or retired person/ too old to work 4 = Unable to work due to illness or disability 5 = Seasonal worker not working presently 6 = Does not choose to work 7 = Could not find work</p> <p>P-18b. Active steps (If no to P-18) In the past four weeks before 10 October has (the person) taken active steps to find employment? For example, (the person) went to visit factories or other employment places, placed or answered advertisements, looked for land or a building or equipment to start own business or farm. [] Y = Yes [] N = No</p> <p>P-18c. Availability (If NO to P-18) _ If offered work, how soon could (the person) start? 1 = Within one week 2 = More than 1 week, up to 2 weeks 3 = More than 2 weeks, up to 4 weeks 4 = Some time after 4 weeks 5 = Does not choose to work Go to P-20</p>
ZA2001A_CLASSWK	ZA2001A_CLASSWK	Class of worker	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)</p> <p>Had work P-19. Work status (If YES to P-18) _ How can one best describe (the person's) main activity or work status? 1 = Paid employee 2 = Paid family worker 3 = Self-employed 4 = Employer 5 = Unpaid family worker 6 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_IND1	ZA2001A_IND1	Industry, 1 digit	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) Had work P-19a. Business/company name (If yes to P-18) ----- What is the full name of the business/company or organization for whom (the person) works? If the person works for him/herself, and the business does not have a name, write self in the appropriate row. If doing paid domestic work in a private household, write domestic service. Use capital letters only.</p> <p>P-19b. Company/business activity (If yes to P-18) ----- What does the business do (main economic activity)? Write the main industry, economic activity, product or service of (the person's) employer or company. For example, gold mining, road construction, supermarket, police service, healthcare, hairdressing, banking. Or, write the activity of the person if self-employed, for example, subsistence farming. If doing paid domestic work in a private household, write domestic service. Use capital letters only.</p>
ZA2001A_IND2	ZA2001A_IND2	Industry, 2 digit	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) Had work P-19a. Business/company name (If yes to P-18) ----- What is the full name of the business/company or organization for whom (the person) works? If the person works for him/herself, and the business does not have a name, write self in the appropriate row. If doing paid domestic work in a private household, write domestic service. Use capital letters only.</p> <p>P-19b. Company/business activity (If yes to P-18) ----- What does the business do (main economic activity)? Write the main industry, economic activity, product or service of (the person's) employer or company. For example, gold mining, road construction, supermarket, police service, healthcare, hairdressing, banking. Or, write the activity of the person if self-employed, for example, subsistence farming. If doing paid domestic work in a private household, write domestic service. Use capital letters only.</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_IND3	ZA2001A_IND3	Industry, 3 digit	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) Had work P-19a. Business/company name (If yes to P-18) ----- What is the full name of the business/company or organization for whom (the person) works? If the person works for him/herself, and the business does not have a name, write self in the appropriate row. If doing paid domestic work in a private household, write domestic service. Use capital letters only.</p> <p>P-19b. Company/business activity (If yes to P-18) ----- What does the business do (main economic activity)? Write the main industry, economic activity, product or service of (the person's) employer or company. For example, gold mining, road construction, supermarket, police service, healthcare, hairdressing, banking. Or, write the activity of the person if self-employed, for example, subsistence farming. If doing paid domestic work in a private household, write domestic service. Use capital letters only.</p>
ZA2001A_OCC1	ZA2001A_OCC1	Occupation, 1 digit	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) Had work P-19c. Occupation (If yes to P-18) ----- What is the main occupation of (the person) in this workplace? Occupation refers to the type of work (the person) performed in the seven days before 10 October. Use two or more words. For example, street trader, cattle farmer, primary school teacher, domestic worker, fruit vendor, truck driver, warehouse manager, filing clerk, etc. Use capital letters only.</p>
ZA2001A_OCC2	ZA2001A_OCC2	Occupation, 2 digit	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) Had work P-19c. Occupation (If yes to P-18) ----- What is the main occupation of (the person) in this workplace? Occupation refers to the type of work (the person) performed in the seven days before 10 October. Use two or more words. For example, street trader, cattle farmer, primary school teacher, domestic worker, fruit vendor, truck driver, warehouse manager, filing clerk, etc. Use capital letters only.</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_OCC	ZA2001A_OCC	Occupation, 3 digit	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) Had work P-19c. Occupation (If yes to P-18)</p> <p>----- What is the main occupation of (the person) in this workplace? Occupation refers to the type of work (the person) performed in the seven days before 10 October. Use two or more words. For example, street trader, cattle farmer, primary school teacher, domestic worker, fruit vendor, truck driver, warehouse manager, filing clerk, etc. Use capital letters only.</p>
ZA2001A_HRSWRK	ZA2001A_HRSWRK	Hours worked during the 7 days before October 10	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) Had work P-19d. Hours worked (If yes to P-18) __ How many hours did (the person) work in the seven days before 10 October? If (the person) was absent from work those seven days, but usually works, write the number of hours s/he usually works.</p>
ZA2001A_WRKHERE	ZA2001A_WRKHERE	Place of work same as sub-place where usually lives	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) Had work Place of work (If yes to P-18) (P-19e) Does (the person) work in the same sub-place in which s/he usually lives? Dot</p> <p>the appropriate box. [] Y = Yes [] N = No</p>
ZA2001A_WRKPROV	ZA2001A_WRKPROV	Province of work	<p>Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991) Had work (P-19f) If no, where is this place of work? If not the same place, write province [P] [R],</p> <p>main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. __ Province ----- Main Place ----- Sub-place</p>
ZA2001A_CHBORN	ZA2001A_CHBORN	Total births	<p>Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989) P-20. Total births If none write [0] [0] and go to P-21. Include ALL her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead). [Example given of total children: 03 for total, 02 for boys and 01 for girls.] __ How many [total] children, if any, has (the person) ever had, that were born alive? __ How many of these were boys? __ How many of these were girls?</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_BORNMAL	ZA2001A_BORNMAL	Male births	<p>Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989) P-20. Total births If none write [0] [0] and go to P-21. Include ALL her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead). [Example given of total children: 03 for total, 02 for boys and 01 for girls.] __ How many [total] children, if any, has (the person) ever had, that were born alive? __ How many of these were boys? __ How many of these were girls?</p>
ZA2001A_BORNFEM	ZA2001A_BORNFEM	Female births	<p>Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989) P-20. Total births If none write [0] [0] and go to P-21. Include ALL her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead). [Example given of total children: 03 for total, 02 for boys and 01 for girls.] __ How many [total] children, if any, has (the person) ever had, that were born alive? __ How many of these were boys? __ How many of these were girls?</p>
ZA2001A_CHSURV	ZA2001A_CHSURV	Total children still living	<p>Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989) P-20a. Still living If the person has ever given live birth: __ How many [total] children, are still alive? __ How many boys are still alive? __ How many girls are still alive? For example, if 2 children of the 3 given in P-20 are still alive, 1 boy and 1 girl, write: [Example shows 02 for total, 01 for boys and 01 for girls.]</p>
ZA2001A_SURVMAL	ZA2001A_SURVMAL	Male children still living	<p>Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989) P-20a. Still living If the person has ever given live birth: __ How many [total] children, are still alive? __ How many boys are still alive? __ How many girls are still alive? For example, if 2 children of the 3 given in P-20 are still alive, 1 boy and 1 girl, write: [Example shows 02 for total, 01 for boys and 01 for girls.]</p>
ZA2001A_SURVFEM	ZA2001A_SURVFEM	Female children still living	<p>Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989) P-20a. Still living If the person has ever given live birth: __ How many [total] children, are still alive? __ How many boys are still alive? __ How many girls are still alive? For example, if 2 children of the 3 given in P-20 are still alive, 1 boy and 1 girl, write: [Example shows 02 for total, 01 for boys and 01 for girls.]</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_LSTMO	ZA2001A_LSTMO	Date of last birth - month	<p>Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989) P-20b. Last child born Write the day, month and year of the last live birth and dot the appropriate box of the sex. If multiple birth, indicate only the last child. Dot the appropriate box whether the child is still alive on Census night 9 -- 10 October. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead). If (the person) has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born? _____ Date of birth (DD/MM/YYYY) What is the sex of that child? <input type="checkbox"/> M = Male <input type="checkbox"/> F = Female Is that child alive or dead? <input type="checkbox"/> A = Alive <input type="checkbox"/> D = Dead</p>
ZA2001A_LSTYR	ZA2001A_LSTYR	Date of last birth - year	<p>Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989) P-20b. Last child born Write the day, month and year of the last live birth and dot the appropriate box of the sex. If multiple birth, indicate only the last child. Dot the appropriate box whether the child is still alive on Census night 9 -- 10 October. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead). If (the person) has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born? _____ Date of birth (DD/MM/YYYY) What is the sex of that child? <input type="checkbox"/> M = Male <input type="checkbox"/> F = Female Is that child alive or dead? <input type="checkbox"/> A = Alive <input type="checkbox"/> D = Dead</p>
ZA2001A_LSTTIME	ZA2001A_LSTTIME	Years since last birth	<p>Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989) P-20b. Last child born Write the day, month and year of the last live birth and dot the appropriate box of the sex. If multiple birth, indicate only the last child. Dot the appropriate box whether the child is still alive on Census night 9 -- 10 October. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead). If (the person) has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born? _____ Date of birth (DD/MM/YYYY) What is the sex of that child? <input type="checkbox"/> M = Male <input type="checkbox"/> F = Female Is that child alive or dead? <input type="checkbox"/> A = Alive <input type="checkbox"/> D = Dead</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_LSTAGE	ZA2001A_LSTAGE	Age of mother at last birth	<p>Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989) P-20b. Last child born Write the day, month and year of the last live birth and dot the appropriate box of the sex. If multiple birth, indicate only the last child. Dot the appropriate box whether the child is still alive on Census night 9 -- 10 October. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead). If (the person) has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born? _____ Date of birth (DD/MM/YYYY) What is the sex of that child? <input type="checkbox"/> M = Male <input type="checkbox"/> F = Female Is that child alive or dead? <input type="checkbox"/> A = Alive <input type="checkbox"/> D = Dead</p>
ZA2001A_LSTSEX	ZA2001A_LSTSEX	Sex of last child born	<p>Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989) P-20b. Last child born Write the day, month and year of the last live birth and dot the appropriate box of the sex. If multiple birth, indicate only the last child. Dot the appropriate box whether the child is still alive on Census night 9 -- 10 October. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead). If (the person) has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born? _____ Date of birth (DD/MM/YYYY) What is the sex of that child? <input type="checkbox"/> M = Male <input type="checkbox"/> F = Female Is that child alive or dead? <input type="checkbox"/> A = Alive <input type="checkbox"/> D = Dead</p>
ZA2001A_LSTLIVE	ZA2001A_LSTLIVE	Last child still alive	<p>Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989) P-20b. Last child born Write the day, month and year of the last live birth and dot the appropriate box of the sex. If multiple birth, indicate only the last child. Dot the appropriate box whether the child is still alive on Census night 9 -- 10 October. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead). If (the person) has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born? _____ Date of birth (DD/MM/YYYY) What is the sex of that child? <input type="checkbox"/> M = Male <input type="checkbox"/> F = Female Is that child alive or dead? <input type="checkbox"/> A = Alive <input type="checkbox"/> D = Dead</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_TRAVWRK	ZA2001A_TRAVWRK	Method of transportation to school or place of work	<p>Ask of everyone</p> <p>P-21. Travel to school or place of work</p> <p>_ How does (the person) usually travel to school or to his/her place of work? Indicate the main mode of travel even if s/he was temporarily absent that week. If more than one mode of travel, write the code of the mode that covers the longest distance.</p> <p>0 = Not applicable 1 = On foot 2 = By bicycle 3 = By motorcycle 4 = By car as a driver 5 = By car as a passenger 6 = By minibus/ taxi 7 = By bus 8 = By train 9 = Other</p>
ZA2001A_INCOME	ZA2001A_INCOME	Income (annual)	<p>Ask of everyone</p> <p>P-22. Income category</p> <p>_ _ What is the income category that best describes the gross income of (this person) before tax? Choose from the table below the code that corresponds to the income level. A monthly income of R1 500 is code 04 and an annual income of R25 000 is code 05.</p> <p>Monthly</p> <p>01 = No income 02 = R 1 -- R 400 03 = R 401 -- R 800 04 = R 801 -- R 1 600 05 = R 1 601 -- R 3 200 06 = R 3 201 -- R 6 400 07 = R 6 401 -- R 12 800 08 = R 12 801 -- R 25 600 09 = R 25 601 -- R 51 200 10 = R 51 201 -- R 102 400 11 = R 102 401 -- R 204 800 12 = R 204 801 or more</p> <p>Annual</p> <p>01 = No income 02 = R 1 -- R 4 800 03 = R 4 801 -- R 9 600 04 = R 9 601 -- R 19 200 05 = R 19 201 -- R 38 400 06 = R 38 401 -- R 76 800 07 = R 76 801 -- R 153 600 08 = R 153 601 -- R 307 200 09 = R 307 201 -- R 614 400 10 = R 614 401 -- R 1 228 800 11 = R 1 228 801 -- R 2 457 600 12 = R 2 457 601 or more</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_ENUMPLAC	ZA2001A_ENUMPLAC	Place of enumeration and place of usual residence	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>Usually live P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</p> <p>Dot the appropriate box. <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No If yes go to P-12</p> <p>P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of enumeration, dot the S box. <input type="checkbox"/> S If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only.</p> <p>__ Province ----- Main Place ----- Sub-space</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_ENUMPROV	ZA2001A_ENUMPROV	Place of enumeration and birth place	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-09a. Place of birth (If yes to P-09) _ In which province was (the person) born? 1 = Western Cape 2 = Eastern Cape 3 = Northern Cape 4 = Free State 5 = KwaZulu-Natal 6 = North West 7 = Gauteng 8 = Mpumalanga 9 = Northern Province Go to P-10</p> <p>Usually live P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</p> <p>Dot the appropriate box. [] Y = Yes [] N = No If yes go to P-12</p> <p>P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of enumeration, dot the S box. [] S If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only. __ Province ----- Main Place ----- Sub-space</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_ENUM96	ZA2001A_ENUM96	Place of enumeration and 1996 residence	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.] Usually live P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</p> <p>Dot the appropriate box. <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No If yes go to P-12</p> <p>P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of enumeration, dot the S box. <input type="checkbox"/> S If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only. __ Province ----- Main Place ----- Sub-space</p> <p>P-12a. From where moved (If no to P-12) Where did (the person) move from? If more than one move, give details of the last move. Write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country. Use capital letters only. __ Province ----- Main Place ----- Sub-place</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_BPLCITIZ	ZA2001A_BPLCITIZ	Place of birth and citizenship	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-09a. Place of birth (If yes to P-09) _ In which province was (the person) born? 1 = Western Cape 2 = Eastern Cape 3 = Northern Cape 4 = Free State 5 = KwaZulu-Natal 6 = North West 7 = Gauteng 8 = Mpumalanga 9 = Northern Province Go to P-10</p> <p>Citizenship P-10. Is (the person) a South African citizen? Dot the appropriate box.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No If yes go to P-11</p> <p>P-10a. _____ If no, what is the name of the country of citizenship? Use capital letters only.</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_BPLUSL	ZA2001A_BPLUSL	Place of birth and place of usual residence	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-09a. Place of birth (If yes to P-09) _ In which province was (the person) born? 1 = Western Cape 2 = Eastern Cape 3 = Northern Cape 4 = Free State 5 = KwaZulu-Natal 6 = North West 7 = Gauteng 8 = Mpumalanga 9 = Northern Province Go to P-10</p> <p>Usually live P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</p> <p>Dot the appropriate box. [] Y = Yes [] N = No If yes go to P-12</p> <p>P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of enumeration, dot the S box. [] S If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only. __ Province ----- Main Place ----- Sub-space</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_BPLRES96	ZA2001A_BPLRES96	Place of birth and place of residence in 1996	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-09a. Place of birth (If yes to P-09) _ In which province was (the person) born? 1 = Western Cape 2 = Eastern Cape 3 = Northern Cape 4 = Free State 5 = KwaZulu-Natal 6 = North West 7 = Gauteng 8 = Mpumalanga 9 = Northern Province Go to P-10</p> <p>P-12a. From where moved (If no to P-12) Where did (the person) move from? If more than one move, give details of the last move. Write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country. Use capital letters only. _ _ Province _ _ _ _ _ Main Place _ _ _ _ _ Sub-place</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_USLRES96	ZA2001A_USLRES96	Place of usual residence and place of residence in 1996	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.] Usually live P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</p> <p>Dot the appropriate box. <input type="checkbox"/> Y = Yes <input type="checkbox"/> N = No If yes go to P-12</p> <p>P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of enumeration, dot the S box. <input type="checkbox"/> S If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only. __ Province ----- Main Place ----- Sub-space</p> <p>P-12a. From where moved (If no to P-12) Where did (the person) move from? If more than one move, give details of the last move. Write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country. Use capital letters only. __ Province ----- Main Place ----- Sub-place</p>

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_BPL96EN	ZA2001A_BPL96EN	Place of birth, place of residence in 1996, and place of enumeration	<p>Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]</p> <p>P-09a. Place of birth (If yes to P-09) _ In which province was (the person) born? 1 = Western Cape 2 = Eastern Cape 3 = Northern Cape 4 = Free State 5 = KwaZulu-Natal 6 = North West 7 = Gauteng 8 = Mpumalanga 9 = Northern Province Go to P-10</p> <p>Usually live P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</p> <p>Dot the appropriate box. [] Y = Yes [] N = No If yes go to P-12</p> <p>P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of enumeration, dot the S box. [] S If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only. __ Province ----- Main Place ----- Sub-space</p> <p>P-12a. From where moved (If no to P-12) Where did (the person) move from? If more than one move, give details of the last move. Write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country. Use capital letters only. __ Province ----- Main Place ----- Sub-place</p>
ZA2001A_WTPER	ZA2001A_WTPER	Person weight	
ZA2001A_QPERNUM	ZA2001A_QPERNUM	Flag for person number	
ZA2001A_QBRTHDAY	ZA2001A_QBRTHDAY	Flag for day of birth	
ZA2001A_QBRTHMO	ZA2001A_QBRTHMO	Flag for month of birth	
ZA2001A_QBRTHYR	ZA2001A_QBRTHYR	Flag for year of birth	
ZA2001A_QAGE	ZA2001A_QAGE	Flag for age	
ZA2001A_QSEX	ZA2001A_QSEX	Flag for sex	

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_QRELATE	ZA2001A_QRELATE	Flag for relationship to head of household	
ZA2001A_QMARST	ZA2001A_QMARST	Flag for marital status	
ZA2001A_QSPLOCO	ZA2001A_QSPLOCO	Flag for person number of spouse	
ZA2001A_QRACE	ZA2001A_QRACE	Flag for race/ethnicity	
ZA2001A_QLANG	ZA2001A_QLANG	Flag for language	
ZA2001A_QRELIG	ZA2001A_QRELIG	Flag for religion	
ZA2001A_QBORNSAF	ZA2001A_QBORNSAF	Flag for born in South Africa	
ZA2001A_QBPLPROV	ZA2001A_QBPLPROV	Flag for province of birth	
ZA2001A_QBPLCTRY	ZA2001A_QBPLCTRY	Flag for country of birth	
ZA2001A_QCITIZ	ZA2001A_QCITIZ	Flag for citizenship	
ZA2001A_QUSLRES	ZA2001A_QUSLRES	Flag for usually live here	
ZA2001A_QUSLPROV	ZA2001A_QUSLPROV	Flag for province of usual residence	
ZA2001A_QUSLPLAC	ZA2001A_QUSLPLAC	Flag for usual residence main place	
ZA2001A_QMOVED	ZA2001A_QMOVED	Flag for living in same place five years ago	
ZA2001A_QYRMOVED	ZA2001A_QYRMOVED	Flag for year moved	
ZA2001A_QPRVPROV	ZA2001A_QPRVPROV	Flag for province five years ago	
ZA2001A_QPRVPLAC	ZA2001A_QPRVPLAC	Flag for place of residence five years ago	
ZA2001A_QDSSIGHT	ZA2001A_QDSSIGHT	Flag for disability - sight	
ZA2001A_QDSHEAR	ZA2001A_QDSHEAR	Flag for disability - hearing	
ZA2001A_QDSCOMM	ZA2001A_QDSCOMM	Flag for disability - communication	
ZA2001A_QDSPHYS	ZA2001A_QDSPHYS	Flag for disability - physical	
ZA2001A_QDSMENT	ZA2001A_QDSMENT	Flag for disability - intellectual	
ZA2001A_QDSEMOT	ZA2001A_QDSEMOT	Flag for disability - emotional	
ZA2001A_QMOTHLIV	ZA2001A_QMOTHLIV	Flag for mother alive	
ZA2001A_QMOTHLOC	ZA2001A_QMOTHLOC	Flag for mother's person number in household	
ZA2001A_QFATHLIV	ZA2001A_QFATHLIV	Flag for father alive	
ZA2001A_QFATHLOC	ZA2001A_QFATHLOC	Flag for father's person number in household	
ZA2001A_QSCHOOL	ZA2001A_QSCHOOL	Flag for present school attendance	
ZA2001A_QSCHTYPE	ZA2001A_QSCHTYPE	Flag for type of educational institution	
ZA2001A_QEDATTAN	ZA2001A_QEDATTAN	Flag for level of education	
ZA2001A_QEDFIELD	ZA2001A_QEDFIELD	Flag for field of education	
ZA2001A_QWRKWEEK	ZA2001A_QWRKWEEK	Flag for any work in the seven days before 10 October	

ID	Name	Label	Question
ZA2001A_QWRKREAS	ZA2001A_QWRKREAS	Flag for reason why not working	
ZA2001A_QWRKSEEK	ZA2001A_QWRKSEEK	Flag for taking active steps to find a job	
ZA2001A_QWRKAVAI	ZA2001A_QWRKAVAI	Flag for availability	
ZA2001A_QEMPSTAT	ZA2001A_QEMPSTAT	Flag for employment status	
ZA2001A_QIND	ZA2001A_QIND	Flag for industry	
ZA2001A_QOCC	ZA2001A_QOCC	Flag for occupation	
ZA2001A_QHRSWRK	ZA2001A_QHRSWRK	Flag for hours worked during week	
ZA2001A_QWRKHERE	ZA2001A_QWRKHERE	Flag for place of work same as sub-place where usually lives	
ZA2001A_QWRKPROV	ZA2001A_QWRKPROV	Flag for province of work	
ZA2001A_QWRKPLAC	ZA2001A_QWRKPLAC	Flag for main place of work	
ZA2001A_QCHBORN	ZA2001A_QCHBORN	Flag for total births	
ZA2001A_QBORNMAL	ZA2001A_QBORNMAL	Flag for male births	
ZA2001A_QBORNFEM	ZA2001A_QBORNFEM	Flag for female births	
ZA2001A_QCHSURV	ZA2001A_QCHSURV	Flag for total children still living	
ZA2001A_QSURVMAL	ZA2001A_QSURVMAL	Flag for male children still living	
ZA2001A_QSURVFEM	ZA2001A_QSURVFEM	Flag for female children still living	
ZA2001A_QLSTDAY	ZA2001A_QLSTDAY	Flag for date of last birth - day	
ZA2001A_QLSTMO	ZA2001A_QLSTMO	Flag for date of last birth - month	
ZA2001A_QLSTYR	ZA2001A_QLSTYR	Flag for date of last birth - year	
ZA2001A_QLSTSEX	ZA2001A_QLSTSEX	Flag for sex of last child born	
ZA2001A_QLSTLIV	ZA2001A_QLSTLIV	Flag for last child still alive	
ZA2001A_QTRAVWRK	ZA2001A_QTRAVWRK	Flag for method of transportation to school or work	
ZA2001A_QINCOME	ZA2001A_QINCOME	Flag for income (annual)	

total: 217

COUNTRY: Country**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
032	Argentina
051	Armenia
040	Austria
050	Bangladesh
112	Belarus
204	Benin
068	Bolivia
072	Botswana
076	Brazil
854	Burkina Faso
116	Cambodia
120	Cameroon
124	Canada
152	Chile
156	China
170	Colombia
188	Costa Rica
192	Cuba
208	Denmark
214	Dominican Republic
218	Ecuador
818	Egypt
222	El Salvador
231	Ethiopia
242	Fiji
246	Finland
250	France
276	Germany
288	Ghana
300	Greece

320	Guatemala
324	Guinea
332	Haiti
340	Honduras
348	Hungary
352	Iceland
356	India
360	Indonesia
364	Iran
368	Iraq
372	Ireland
376	Israel
380	Italy
384	Ivory Coast
388	Jamaica
400	Jordan
404	Kenya
417	Kyrgyz Republic
418	Laos
426	Lesotho
430	Liberia
454	Malawi
458	Malaysia
466	Mali
480	Mauritius
484	Mexico
496	Mongolia
504	Morocco
508	Mozambique
104	Myanmar
524	Nepal
528	Netherlands
558	Nicaragua
566	Nigeria
578	Norway
586	Pakistan
275	Palestine
591	Panama
598	Papua New Guinea

600	Paraguay
604	Peru
608	Philippines
616	Poland
620	Portugal
630	Puerto Rico
642	Romania
643	Russia
646	Rwanda
662	Saint Lucia
686	Senegal
694	Sierra Leone
703	Slovak Republic
705	Slovenia
710	South Africa
728	South Sudan
724	Spain
729	Sudan
740	Suriname
752	Sweden
756	Switzerland
834	Tanzania
764	Thailand
768	Togo
780	Trinidad and Tobago
792	Turkey
800	Uganda
804	Ukraine
826	United Kingdom
840	United States
858	Uruguay
862	Venezuela
704	Vietnam
894	Zambia
716	Zimbabwe

description

DEFINITION

COUNTRY gives the country from which the sample was drawn. The codes assigned to each country are those used by the

UN Statistics Division and the ISO (International Organization for Standardization).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

GQ: Group quarters (collective dwelling) status

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	Vacant
10	Households
20	Group quarters (collective), n.s.
21	Institutions
22	Other group quarters
29	1-person unit created by splitting large household
99	Unknown/group quarters not identified

description

DEFINITION

GQ identifies households as vacant dwellings, group quarters, or private households. Group quarters -- collective dwellings -- are generally institutions and other group living arrangements such as rooming houses and boarding schools.

Institutions often retain persons under formal supervision or custody, such as correctional institutions, military barracks, asylums, or nursing homes. Educational and religious group dwellings (e.g., boarding schools, convents, monasteries, etc.) are also included in the institutional classification.

Group quarter designations are often useful for understanding the universe of households that answered questions about household characteristics. Censuses will often exclude group quarters from such questions.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Group Quarters Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

HHWT: Household weight**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Continuous Decimal: 2 Width: 8 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

HHWT indicates the number of households in the population represented by the household in the sample.

For the samples that are truly weighted (see the comparability discussion), HHWT must be used to yield accurate household-level statistics.

NOTE: HHWT has 2 implied decimal places. That is, the last two digits of the eight-digit variable are decimal digits, but there is no actual decimal in the data.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

HHWT is an 8-digit numeric variable with 2 implied decimal places. See the variable description.

PERSONS: Number of person records in the household**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 4 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

PERSONS indicates how many person records are included in the household (i.e., the number of person records associated with the household record in the sample). These person records will all have the same serial number (SERIAL) as the household record. The information contained in the household record will normally apply to all of these persons.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

PERSONS is a 4-digit numeric variable.

RECTYPE: Record type

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: character

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
H	Household
P	Person

description

DEFINITION

RECTYPE identifies the type of record for the case: household or person.

NOTE: RECTYPE is an alphabetic (character string) variable with a value of 'H' for household records and 'P' for person records. RECTYPE will not appear as a variable in the default rectangular extracts produced by the data extract system. It is only available in hierarchical extracts, to distinguish between the two record types.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

SAMPLE: IPUMS sample identifier

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 9 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
032197001	Argentina 1970
032198001	Argentina 1980
032199101	Argentina 1991
032200101	Argentina 2001
032201001	Argentina 2010
051200101	Armenia 2001
051201101	Armenia 2011
040197101	Austria 1971
040198101	Austria 1981
040199101	Austria 1991
040200101	Austria 2001
040201101	Austria 2011
050199101	Bangladesh 1991
050200101	Bangladesh 2001
050201101	Bangladesh 2011
112199901	Belarus 1999
112200901	Belarus 2009
204197901	Benin 1979
204199201	Benin 1992
204200201	Benin 2002
204201301	Benin 2013
068197601	Bolivia 1976
068199201	Bolivia 1992
068200101	Bolivia 2001
068201201	Bolivia 2012
072198101	Botswana 1981
072199101	Botswana 1991
072200101	Botswana 2001
072201101	Botswana 2011
076196001	Brazil 1960
076197001	Brazil 1970
076198001	Brazil 1980
076199101	Brazil 1991
076200001	Brazil 2000
076201001	Brazil 2010

854198501	Burkina Faso 1985
854199601	Burkina Faso 1996
854200601	Burkina Faso 2006
116199801	Cambodia 1998
116200401	Cambodia 2004
116200801	Cambodia 2008
116201301	Cambodia 2013
116201901	Cambodia 2019
120197601	Cameroon 1976
120198701	Cameroon 1987
120200501	Cameroon 2005
124185201	Canada 1852
124187101	Canada 1871
124188101	Canada 1881
124189101	Canada 1891
124190101	Canada 1901
124191101	Canada 1911
124197101	Canada 1971
124198101	Canada 1981
124199101	Canada 1991
124200101	Canada 2001
124201101	Canada 2011
152196001	Chile 1960
152197001	Chile 1970
152198201	Chile 1982
152199201	Chile 1992
152200201	Chile 2002
152201701	Chile 2017
156198201	China 1982
156199001	China 1990
156200001	China 2000
170196401	Colombia 1964
170197301	Colombia 1973
170198501	Colombia 1985
170199301	Colombia 1993
170200501	Colombia 2005
188196301	Costa Rica 1963
188197301	Costa Rica 1973
188198401	Costa Rica 1984

188200001	Costa Rica 2000
188201101	Costa Rica 2011
192200201	Cuba 2002
192201201	Cuba 2012
208178701	Denmark 1787
208180101	Denmark 1801
208184501	Denmark 1845
208188001	Denmark 1880
208188501	Denmark 1885
214196001	Dominican Republic 1960
214197001	Dominican Republic 1970
214198101	Dominican Republic 1981
214200201	Dominican Republic 2002
214201001	Dominican Republic 2010
218196201	Ecuador 1962
218197401	Ecuador 1974
218198201	Ecuador 1982
218199001	Ecuador 1990
218200101	Ecuador 2001
218201001	Ecuador 2010
818184801	Egypt 1848
818186801	Egypt 1868
818198601	Egypt 1986
818199601	Egypt 1996
818200601	Egypt 2006
222199201	El Salvador 1992
222200701	El Salvador 2007
231198401	Ethiopia 1984
231199401	Ethiopia 1994
231200701	Ethiopia 2007
242196601	Fiji 1966
242197601	Fiji 1976
242198601	Fiji 1986
242199601	Fiji 1996
242200701	Fiji 2007
242201401	Fiji 2014
246201001	Finland 2010
250196201	France 1962
250196801	France 1968

250197501	France 1975
250198201	France 1982
250199001	France 1990
250199901	France 1999
250200601	France 2006
250201101	France 2011
276181901	Germany 1819 (Mecklenburg)
276197001	Germany 1970 (West)
276197101	Germany 1971 (East)
276198101	Germany 1981 (East)
276198701	Germany 1987 (West)
288198401	Ghana 1984
288200001	Ghana 2000
288201001	Ghana 2010
300197101	Greece 1971
300198101	Greece 1981
300199101	Greece 1991
300200101	Greece 2001
300201101	Greece 2011
320196401	Guatemala 1964
320197301	Guatemala 1973
320198101	Guatemala 1981
320199401	Guatemala 1994
320200201	Guatemala 2002
324198301	Guinea 1983
324199601	Guinea 1996
324201401	Guinea 2014
332197101	Haiti 1971
332198201	Haiti 1982
332200301	Haiti 2003
340196101	Honduras 1961
340197401	Honduras 1974
340198801	Honduras 1988
340200101	Honduras 2001
348197001	Hungary 1970
348198001	Hungary 1980
348199001	Hungary 1990
348200101	Hungary 2001
348201101	Hungary 2011

352170301	Iceland 1703
352172901	Iceland 1729
352180101	Iceland 1801
352190101	Iceland 1901
352191001	Iceland 1910
356198341	India 1983
356198741	India 1987
356199341	India 1993
356199941	India 1999
356200441	India 2004
356200941	India 2009
360197101	Indonesia 1971
360197601	Indonesia 1976
360198001	Indonesia 1980
360198501	Indonesia 1985
360199001	Indonesia 1990
360199501	Indonesia 1995
360200001	Indonesia 2000
360200501	Indonesia 2005
360201001	Indonesia 2010
364200601	Iran 2006
364201101	Iran 2011
368199701	Iraq 1997
372190101	Ireland 1901
372191101	Ireland 1911
372197101	Ireland 1971
372197901	Ireland 1979
372198101	Ireland 1981
372198601	Ireland 1986
372199101	Ireland 1991
372199601	Ireland 1996
372200201	Ireland 2002
372200601	Ireland 2006
372201101	Ireland 2011
372201601	Ireland 2016
376197201	Israel 1972
376198301	Israel 1983
376199501	Israel 1995
376200801	Israel 2008

380200101	Italy 2001
380201101	Italy 2011
380201121	Italy 2011 Q1 LFS
380201221	Italy 2012 Q1 LFS
380201321	Italy 2013 Q1 LFS
380201421	Italy 2014 Q1 LFS
380201521	Italy 2015 Q1 LFS
380201621	Italy 2016 Q1 LFS
380201721	Italy 2017 Q1 LFS
380201821	Italy 2018 Q1 LFS
380201921	Italy 2019 Q1 LFS
380202021	Italy 2020 Q1 LFS
384198801	Ivory Coast 1988
384199801	Ivory Coast 1998
388198201	Jamaica 1982
388199101	Jamaica 1991
388200101	Jamaica 2001
400200401	Jordan 2004
404196901	Kenya 1969
404197901	Kenya 1979
404198901	Kenya 1989
404199901	Kenya 1999
404200901	Kenya 2009
417199901	Kyrgyz Republic 1999
417200901	Kyrgyz Republic 2009
418199501	Laos 1995
418200501	Laos 2005
418201501	Laos 2015
426199601	Lesotho 1996
426200601	Lesotho 2006
430197401	Liberia 1974
430200801	Liberia 2008
454198701	Malawi 1987
454199801	Malawi 1998
454200801	Malawi 2008
458197001	Malaysia 1970
458198001	Malaysia 1980
458199101	Malaysia 1991
458200001	Malaysia 2000

466198701	Mali 1987
466199801	Mali 1998
466200901	Mali 2009
480199001	Mauritius 1990
480200001	Mauritius 2000
480201101	Mauritius 2011
484196001	Mexico 1960
484197001	Mexico 1970
484199001	Mexico 1990
484199501	Mexico 1995
484200001	Mexico 2000
484200501	Mexico 2005
484201001	Mexico 2010
484201501	Mexico 2015
484202001	Mexico 2020
484200521	Mexico 2005 Q1 LFS
484200522	Mexico 2005 Q2 LFS
484200523	Mexico 2005 Q3 LFS
484200524	Mexico 2005 Q4 LFS
484200621	Mexico 2006 Q1 LFS
484200622	Mexico 2006 Q2 LFS
484200623	Mexico 2006 Q3 LFS
484200624	Mexico 2006 Q4 LFS
484200721	Mexico 2007 Q1 LFS
484200722	Mexico 2007 Q2 LFS
484200723	Mexico 2007 Q3 LFS
484200724	Mexico 2007 Q4 LFS
484200821	Mexico 2008 Q1 LFS
484200822	Mexico 2008 Q2 LFS
484200823	Mexico 2008 Q3 LFS
484200824	Mexico 2008 Q4 LFS
484200921	Mexico 2009 Q1 LFS
484200922	Mexico 2009 Q2 LFS
484200923	Mexico 2009 Q3 LFS
484200924	Mexico 2009 Q4 LFS
484201021	Mexico 2010 Q1 LFS
484201022	Mexico 2010 Q2 LFS
484201023	Mexico 2010 Q3 LFS
484201024	Mexico 2010 Q4 LFS

484201121	Mexico 2011 Q1 LFS
484201122	Mexico 2011 Q2 LFS
484201123	Mexico 2011 Q3 LFS
484201124	Mexico 2011 Q4 LFS
484201221	Mexico 2012 Q1 LFS
484201222	Mexico 2012 Q2 LFS
484201223	Mexico 2012 Q3 LFS
484201224	Mexico 2012 Q4 LFS
484201321	Mexico 2013 Q1 LFS
484201322	Mexico 2013 Q2 LFS
484201323	Mexico 2013 Q3 LFS
484201324	Mexico 2013 Q4 LFS
484201421	Mexico 2014 Q1 LFS
484201422	Mexico 2014 Q2 LFS
484201423	Mexico 2014 Q3 LFS
484201424	Mexico 2014 Q4 LFS
484201521	Mexico 2015 Q1 LFS
484201522	Mexico 2015 Q2 LFS
484201523	Mexico 2015 Q3 LFS
484201524	Mexico 2015 Q4 LFS
484201621	Mexico 2016 Q1 LFS
484201622	Mexico 2016 Q2 LFS
484201623	Mexico 2016 Q3 LFS
484201624	Mexico 2016 Q4 LFS
484201721	Mexico 2017 Q1 LFS
484201722	Mexico 2017 Q2 LFS
484201723	Mexico 2017 Q3 LFS
484201724	Mexico 2017 Q4 LFS
484201821	Mexico 2018 Q1 LFS
484201822	Mexico 2018 Q2 LFS
484201823	Mexico 2018 Q3 LFS
484201824	Mexico 2018 Q4 LFS
484201921	Mexico 2019 Q1 LFS
484201922	Mexico 2019 Q2 LFS
484201923	Mexico 2019 Q3 LFS
484201924	Mexico 2019 Q4 LFS
484202021	Mexico 2020 Q1 LFS
484202023	Mexico 2020 Q3 LFS
496198901	Mongolia 1989

496200001	Mongolia 2000
504198201	Morocco 1982
504199401	Morocco 1994
504200401	Morocco 2004
504201401	Morocco 2014
508199701	Mozambique 1997
508200701	Mozambique 2007
104201401	Myanmar 2014
524200101	Nepal 2001
524201101	Nepal 2011
528196001	Netherlands 1960
528197101	Netherlands 1971
528200101	Netherlands 2001
528201101	Netherlands 2011
558197101	Nicaragua 1971
558199501	Nicaragua 1995
558200501	Nicaragua 2005
566200621	Nigeria 2006
566200721	Nigeria 2007
566200821	Nigeria 2008
566200921	Nigeria 2009
566201021	Nigeria 2010
578180101	Norway 1801
578186501	Norway 1865
578187501	Norway 1875
578190001	Norway 1900
578191001	Norway 1910
586197301	Pakistan 1973
586198101	Pakistan 1981
586199801	Pakistan 1998
275199701	Palestine 1997
275200701	Palestine 2007
275201701	Palestine 2017
591196001	Panama 1960
591197001	Panama 1970
591198001	Panama 1980
591199001	Panama 1990
591200001	Panama 2000
591201001	Panama 2010

598198001	Papua New Guinea 1980
598199001	Papua New Guinea 1990
598200001	Papua New Guinea 2000
600196201	Paraguay 1962
600197201	Paraguay 1972
600198201	Paraguay 1982
600199201	Paraguay 1992
600200201	Paraguay 2002
604199301	Peru 1993
604200701	Peru 2007
604201701	Peru 2017
608199001	Philippines 1990
608199501	Philippines 1995
608200001	Philippines 2000
608201001	Philippines 2010
616197801	Poland 1978
616198801	Poland 1988
616200201	Poland 2002
616201101	Poland 2011
620198101	Portugal 1981
620199101	Portugal 1991
620200101	Portugal 2001
620201101	Portugal 2011
630197001	Puerto Rico 1970
630198001	Puerto Rico 1980
630199001	Puerto Rico 1990
630200001	Puerto Rico 2000
630200501	Puerto Rico 2005
630201001	Puerto Rico 2010
630201501	Puerto Rico 2015
630202001	Puerto Rico 2020
642197701	Romania 1977
642199201	Romania 1992
642200201	Romania 2002
642201101	Romania 2011
643200201	Russia 2002
643201001	Russia 2010
646199101	Rwanda 1991
646200201	Rwanda 2002

646201201	Rwanda 2012
662198001	Saint Lucia 1980
662199101	Saint Lucia 1991
686198801	Senegal 1988
686200201	Senegal 2002
686201301	Senegal 2013
694200401	Sierra Leone 2004
694201501	Sierra Leone 2015
703199101	Slovak Republic 1991
703200101	Slovak Republic 2001
703201101	Slovak Republic 2011
705200201	Slovenia 2002
710199601	South Africa 1996
710200101	South Africa 2001
710200701	South Africa 2007
710201101	South Africa 2011
710201601	South Africa 2016
728200801	South Sudan 2008
724198101	Spain 1981
724199101	Spain 1991
724200101	Spain 2001
724201101	Spain 2011
724200521	Spain 2005 Q1 LFS
724200522	Spain 2005 Q2 LFS
724200523	Spain 2005 Q3 LFS
724200524	Spain 2005 Q4 LFS
724200621	Spain 2006 Q1 LFS
724200622	Spain 2006 Q2 LFS
724200623	Spain 2006 Q3 LFS
724200624	Spain 2006 Q4 LFS
724200721	Spain 2007 Q1 LFS
724200722	Spain 2007 Q2 LFS
724200723	Spain 2007 Q3 LFS
724200724	Spain 2007 Q4 LFS
724200821	Spain 2008 Q1 LFS
724200822	Spain 2008 Q2 LFS
724200823	Spain 2008 Q3 LFS
724200824	Spain 2008 Q4 LFS
724200921	Spain 2009 Q1 LFS

724200922	Spain 2009 Q2 LFS
724200923	Spain 2009 Q3 LFS
724200924	Spain 2009 Q4 LFS
724201021	Spain 2010 Q1 LFS
724201022	Spain 2010 Q2 LFS
724201023	Spain 2010 Q3 LFS
724201024	Spain 2010 Q4 LFS
724201121	Spain 2011 Q1 LFS
724201122	Spain 2011 Q2 LFS
724201123	Spain 2011 Q3 LFS
724201124	Spain 2011 Q4 LFS
724201221	Spain 2012 Q1 LFS
724201222	Spain 2012 Q2 LFS
724201223	Spain 2012 Q3 LFS
724201224	Spain 2012 Q4 LFS
724201321	Spain 2013 Q1 LFS
724201322	Spain 2013 Q2 LFS
724201323	Spain 2013 Q3 LFS
724201324	Spain 2013 Q4 LFS
724201421	Spain 2014 Q1 LFS
724201422	Spain 2014 Q2 LFS
724201423	Spain 2014 Q3 LFS
724201424	Spain 2014 Q4 LFS
724201521	Spain 2015 Q1 LFS
724201522	Spain 2015 Q2 LFS
724201523	Spain 2015 Q3 LFS
724201524	Spain 2015 Q4 LFS
724201621	Spain 2016 Q1 LFS
724201622	Spain 2016 Q2 LFS
724201623	Spain 2016 Q3 LFS
724201624	Spain 2016 Q4 LFS
724201721	Spain 2017 Q1 LFS
724201722	Spain 2017 Q2 LFS
724201723	Spain 2017 Q3 LFS
724201724	Spain 2017 Q4 LFS
724201821	Spain 2018 Q1 LFS
724201822	Spain 2018 Q2 LFS
724201823	Spain 2018 Q3 LFS
724201824	Spain 2018 Q4 LFS

724201921	Spain 2019 Q1 LFS
724201922	Spain 2019 Q2 LFS
724201923	Spain 2019 Q3 LFS
724201924	Spain 2019 Q4 LFS
724202021	Spain 2020 Q1 LFS
724202022	Spain 2020 Q2 LFS
724202023	Spain 2020 Q3 LFS
724202024	Spain 2020 Q4 LFS
729200801	Sudan 2008
740200401	Suriname 2004
740201201	Suriname 2012
752188001	Sweden 1880
752189001	Sweden 1890
752190001	Sweden 1900
752191001	Sweden 1910
756197001	Switzerland 1970
756198001	Switzerland 1980
756199001	Switzerland 1990
756200001	Switzerland 2000
756201101	Switzerland 2011
834198801	Tanzania 1988
834200201	Tanzania 2002
834201201	Tanzania 2012
764197001	Thailand 1970
764198001	Thailand 1980
764199001	Thailand 1990
764200001	Thailand 2000
768196001	Togo 1960
768197001	Togo 1970
768201001	Togo 2010
780197001	Trinidad and Tobago 1970
780198001	Trinidad and Tobago 1980
780199001	Trinidad and Tobago 1990
780200001	Trinidad and Tobago 2000
780201101	Trinidad and Tobago 2011
792198501	Turkey 1985
792199001	Turkey 1990
792200001	Turkey 2000
800199101	Uganda 1991

800200201	Uganda 2002
800201401	Uganda 2014
804200101	Ukraine 2001
826185101	United Kingdom 1851 (England and Wales)
826185102	United Kingdom 1851 (Scotland)
826185103	United Kingdom 1851 (2% sample)
826186101	United Kingdom 1861 (England and Wales)
826186102	United Kingdom 1861 (Scotland)
826187101	United Kingdom 1871 (Scotland)
826188101	United Kingdom 1881 (England and Wales)
826188102	United Kingdom 1881 (Scotland)
826189101	United Kingdom 1891 (England and Wales)
826189102	United Kingdom 1891 (Scotland)
826190101	United Kingdom 1901 (England and Wales)
826190102	United Kingdom 1901 (Scotland)
826191101	United Kingdom 1911 (England and Wales)
826196101	United Kingdom 1961
826197101	United Kingdom 1971
826199101	United Kingdom 1991
826200101	United Kingdom 2001
840185001	United States 1850 (100%)
840185002	United States 1850 (1%)
840186001	United States 1860 (1%)
840187001	United States 1870 (1%)
840188001	United States 1880 (100%)
840188002	United States 1880 (10%)
840190001	United States 1900 (5%)
840191001	United States 1910 (1%)
840196001	United States 1960
840197001	United States 1970
840198001	United States 1980
840199001	United States 1990
840200001	United States 2000
840200501	United States 2005
840201001	United States 2010
840201501	United States 2015
840202001	United States 2020
858196301	Uruguay 1963
858196302	Uruguay 1963 (full count)

858197501	Uruguay 1975
858197502	Uruguay 1975 (full count)
858198501	Uruguay 1985
858198502	Uruguay 1985 (full count)
858199601	Uruguay 1996
858199602	Uruguay 1996 (full count)
858200621	Uruguay 2006
858201101	Uruguay 2011
858201102	Uruguay 2011 (full count)
862197101	Venezuela 1971
862198101	Venezuela 1981
862199001	Venezuela 1990
862200101	Venezuela 2001
704198901	Vietnam 1989
704199901	Vietnam 1999
704200901	Vietnam 2009
704201901	Vietnam 2019
894199001	Zambia 1990
894200001	Zambia 2000
894201001	Zambia 2010
716201201	Zimbabwe 2012

description

DEFINITION

SAMPLE identifies the IPUMS sample from which the case is drawn. Each sample receives a unique 9-digit code. The code is structured as follows:

The first 3 digits are the ISO/UN codes used in COUNTRY

The next 4 digits are the year of the census/survey

The final 2 digits identify the sample within the year. For the last two digits, censuses or large census-like surveys have a value "0" (e.g., 01) in the second-to-last digit, household surveys have a value of "2" (e.g., 21), and employment surveys have a value of "4" (e.g., 41).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

SERIAL: Household serial number**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 12 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

SERIAL is an identifying number unique to each household in a given sample. All person records are assigned the same serial number as the household record that they follow. (Person records also have their own unique identifiers -- see PERNUM.) The combination of SAMPLE and SERIAL provides a unique identifier for every household in the IPUMS-International database; SAMPLE, SERIAL and PERNUM uniquely identify every person in the database.

SERIAL can be used to identify dwellings in some samples. In these samples, the first 7 digits of SERIAL provide the dwelling number common to all households that were sampled from the same structure. The last three digits give the sequence of the household within the dwelling. The following is a list of samples in which dwellings can be inferred:

Chile 1970, 1992, 2002Colombia 1993, 2005Costa Rica 1984, 2000Cuba 2002Dominican Republic 1981, 2002, 2010Ecuador 1990, 2001Germany 1971Hungary 1980, 1990, 2001Jamaica 1982, 1991, 2001Malaysia 1970, 1991, 2000Mexico 1995, 1990, 2000, 2005Nigeria 2006Panama 2000Peru 1993, 2007Portugal 1981, 1991, 2001Spain 1991Uruguay 2011Venezuela 1990, 2001Vietnam 1989In all other samples, the last 3 digits are always zeroes.

SERIAL was constructed for IPUMS-International, and has no relation to the serial number in the original datasets.

The U.S. 1900 sample and 1880 10% sample have multi-household dwellings that can be identified using the last 3 digits of SERIAL.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

SERIAL is a 10-digit numeric variable.

The last 3 digits of SERIAL indicate household number within dwelling for selected samples noted in the variable description. In all other samples, the last 3 digits are always zeroes.

STRATA: Strata identifier**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 12 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

This variable is the strata identifier for the sample. The STRATA variable provides information about the sample design that can be used to improve estimation.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

STRATA is a 12-digit numeric variable.

SUBSAMP: Subsample number

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	1st 1% subsample
01	2nd 1% subsample
02	3rd 1% subsample
03	4th 1% subsample
04	5th 1% subsample
05	6th 1% subsample
06	7th 1% subsample
07	8th 1% subsample
08	9th 1% subsample
09	10th 1% subsample
10	11th 1% subsample
11	12th 1% subsample
12	13th 1% subsample
13	14th 1% subsample

14	15th 1% subsample
15	16th 1% subsample
16	17th 1% subsample
17	18th 1% subsample
18	19th 1% subsample
19	20th 1% subsample
20	21st 1% subsample
21	22nd 1% subsample
22	23rd 1% subsample
23	24th 1% subsample
24	25th 1% subsample
25	26th 1% subsample
26	27th 1% subsample
27	28th 1% subsample
28	29th 1% subsample
29	30th 1% subsample
30	31st 1% subsample
31	32nd 1% subsample
32	33rd 1% subsample
33	34th 1% subsample
34	35th 1% subsample
35	36th 1% subsample
36	37th 1% subsample
37	38th 1% subsample
38	39th 1% subsample
39	40th 1% subsample
40	41st 1% subsample
41	42nd 1% subsample
42	43rd 1% subsample
43	44th 1% subsample
44	45th 1% subsample
45	46th 1% subsample
46	47th 1% subsample
47	48th 1% subsample
48	49th 1% subsample
49	50th 1% subsample
50	51st 1% subsample
51	52nd 1% subsample
52	53rd 1% subsample

53	54th 1% subsample
54	55th 1% subsample
55	56th 1% subsample
56	57th 1% subsample
57	58th 1% subsample
58	59th 1% subsample
59	60th 1% subsample
60	61st 1% subsample
61	62nd 1% subsample
62	63rd 1% subsample
63	64th 1% subsample
64	65th 1% subsample
65	66th 1% subsample
66	67th 1% subsample
67	68th 1% subsample
68	69th 1% subsample
69	70th 1% subsample
70	71st 1% subsample
71	72nd 1% subsample
72	73rd 1% subsample
73	74th 1% subsample
74	75th 1% subsample
75	76th 1% subsample
76	77th 1% subsample
77	78th 1% subsample
78	79th 1% subsample
79	80th 1% subsample
80	81st 1% subsample
81	82nd 1% subsample
82	83rd 1% subsample
83	84th 1% subsample
84	85th 1% subsample
85	86th 1% subsample
86	87th 1% subsample
87	88th 1% subsample
88	89th 1% subsample
89	90th 1% subsample
90	91st 1% subsample
91	92nd 1% subsample

92	93rd 1% subsample
93	94th 1% subsample
94	95th 1% subsample
95	96th 1% subsample
96	97th 1% subsample
97	98th 1% subsample
98	99th 1% subsample
99	100th 1% subsample

description

DEFINITION

SUBSAMP allocates each case to one of 100 subsample replicates, randomly numbered from 0 to 99. Each subsample is nationally representative and preserves any stratification of the sample from which it is drawn. Users who need a representative subset of a sample can use SUBSAMP to select their cases. For example, to randomly extract 10% of the cases from a sample, select any 10 of the 100 subsamples.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

YEAR: Year

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 4 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1703	1703
1729	1729
1787	1787
1801	1801
1819	1819
1845	1845
1848	1848
1850	1850

1851	1851
1852	1852
1860	1860
1861	1861
1865	1865
1868	1868
1870	1870
1871	1871
1875	1875
1880	1880
1881	1881
1885	1885
1890	1890
1891	1891
1900	1900
1901	1901
1910	1910
1911	1911
1960	1960
1961	1961
1962	1962
1963	1963
1964	1964
1966	1966
1968	1968
1969	1969
1970	1970
1971	1971
1972	1972
1973	1973
1974	1974
1975	1975
1976	1976
1977	1977
1978	1978
1979	1979
1980	1980
1981	1981
1982	1982

1983	1983
1984	1984
1985	1985
1986	1986
1987	1987
1989	1989
1990	1990
1991	1991
1992	1992
1993	1993
1994	1994
1995	1995
1996	1996
1997	1997
1998	1998
1999	1999
2000	2000
2001	2001
2002	2002
2003	2003
2004	2004
2005	2005
2006	2006
2007	2007
2008	2008
2009	2009
2010	2010
2011	2011
2012	2012
2013	2013
2014	2014
2015	2015
2016	2016
2017	2017
2018	2018
2019	2019
2020	2020

description

DEFINITION

YEAR gives the year in which the census or survey was taken. For samples that span years, the midpoint or first year of the interval is reported.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

AREAMOLLWGE01: Area of GEOLEV1 unit in square kilometers

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 10 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

AREAMOLLWGE01 indicates the area in square kilometers of the major administrative unit in which the household was enumerated. The major administrative unit of the household is identified by the GEOLEV1 variable.

The area of units in GEOLEV1 is calculated using Mollweide's equal area projection. For a full set of geography variables refer to IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1 and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found [here](#).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: Global Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

AREAMOLLWGE01 is a 10-digit string variable listing the area in square kilometers.

AREAMOLLWGE02: Area of GEOLEV2 unit in square kilometers

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 10 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

AREAMOLLWGEO2 indicates the area in square kilometers of the second major administrative unit in which the household was enumerated. The second major administrative unit of the household is identified by the GEOLEV2 variable.

The area of units in GEOLEV2 is calculated using Mollweide's equal area projection. For a full set of geography variables refer to IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1 and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found [here](#).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: Global Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

AREAMOLLWGEO2 is a 10-digit string variable listing the area in square kilometers.

GEOLEV1: 1st subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 6 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

GEOLEV1 indicates the major administrative unit in which the household was enumerated. The variable incorporates the geographies for every country, to enable cross-national geographic analysis over time. First administrative units in GEOLEV1 have been spatiotemporally harmonized to provide spatially consistent boundaries across samples in each country.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: Global Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

GEOLEV1 is a 6-digit numeric variable.

GEOLEV1 codes and labels can be found [here](#).

Codes, labels, frequencies, and information about boundary changes for each country can be found in the country specific harmonized variable e.g. GEO1_BR.

GEOLEV2: 2nd subnational geographic level, world [consistent boundaries over time]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 9 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

GEOLEV2 indicates the second major administrative unit in which the household was enumerated. The variable incorporates the geographies for every country, to enable cross-national geographic analysis over time. Second administrative units in GEOLEV2 have been spatio-temporally harmonized to provide spatially consistent boundaries across samples in each country.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: Global Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

GEOLEV2 is a 9-digit numeric variable.

GEOLEV2 codes and labels can be found [here](#).

Codes, labels, frequencies, and information about boundary changes for each country can be found in the country specific harmonized variable e.g. GEO2_BR.

GQTYPE: Group quarters type

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
100	Institutional
110	Prisons, reformatories, or correctional institutions
120	Hospital, nursing home, hospice, or institutions for persons with disabilities
121	Institutions for persons with disabilities
122	Sanatorium or mental institutions
130	Homes for the elderly or orphanage
131	Retirement home
132	Orphanage, children's home
140	Shelter for homeless, youth, or others
150	Military or police institution
160	Boarding school or student housing
170	Religious institution, monastery, seminary, or convent
199	Other institutional n.e.c.
200	Non-institutional
210	Camps (refugees, workers, or others)
220	Hotel, pension, lodging, or boarding house
230	Floating population
299	Other non-institutional n.e.c.
300	Other group quarters
399	1-person unit created by splitting large household
998	Unknown
999	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

GQTYPE identifies the type of group quarters -- collective dwellings -- which are broadly classified into institutional and non-institutional types.

Institutions are a place of residence where people are subject to a common authority or bound by a common objective or personal interest. The definition encompasses correctional facilities, health institutions, retirement homes, orphanages, shelters (social welfare institutions), military or police establishments, boarding schools, and religious group dwellings.

Non-institutional group quarters comprise refugee and workers' camps (temporary accommodation), hotels, pensions, and all types of boarding or lodging houses. The "floating population" is included as a category within the non-institutional group quarters, when identified by the corresponding sample. This group refers to outdoor sleepers, homeless persons, travelers, and persons in ships, boats, or other mobile dwellings.

A more general classification of households between private and group quarters is available in GQ.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Group Quarters Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

POPDENSGEO1: Population density of GEOLEV1 unit, in persons per square kilometer**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 8 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

POPDENSGEO1 indicates the population density in persons per square kilometer of the major administrative unit in which the household was enumerated. The major administrative unit of the household is identified by the GEOLEV1 variable.

The area of units in GEOLEV1 is calculated using Mollweide's equal area projection. For a full set of geography variables refer to IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1 and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found [here](#).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: Global Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

POPDENSGEO1 is an 8-digit string variable listing the population density in persons per square kilometer.

POPDENSGEO2: Population density of GEOLEV2 unit, in persons per square kilometer**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 12 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

POPDENSGEO2 indicates the population density in persons per square kilometer of the second major administrative unit in which the household was enumerated. The second major administrative unit of the household is identified by the GEOLEV2

variable.

The area of units in GEOLEV2 is calculated using Mollweide's equal area projection. For a full set of geography variables refer to IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1 and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found [here](#).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: Global Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

POPDENSGEO2 is a 12-digit string variable listing the population density in persons per square kilometer.

REGIONW: Continent and region of country

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
11	Eastern Africa
12	Middle Africa
13	Northern Africa
14	Southern Africa
15	Western Africa
21	Caribbean
22	Central America
23	North America
24	South America
31	Central Asia
32	Eastern Asia
33	Southern Asia
34	South-Eastern Asia
35	Western Asia
41	Eastern Europe

42	Northern Europe
43	Southern Europe
44	Western Europe
51	Australia and New Zealand
52	Melanesia
53	Micronesia
54	Polynesia

description

DEFINITION

REGIONW identifies the continent and region of each country.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: Global Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

UNREL: Number of unrelated persons

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	0
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	8
9	9+

description

DEFINITION

UNREL indicates the number of persons in the household who are unrelated to the head as defined in the variable RELATE.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Group Quarters Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

URBAN: Urban-rural status

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Rural
2	Urban
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

URBAN indicates whether the household was located in a place designated as urban or as rural.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: Global Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

DHS_IPUMSI_ZA: DHS-IPUMS-I South Africa regions, 1998-2016 [consistent boundaries, GIS]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Western Cape
4	Free State
5	Eastern Cape, Kwazulu-Natal
7	Gauteng, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, North West, Northern Cape
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

DHS_IPUMSI_ZA provides geographic codes for South Africa that match those in the DHS and IPUMS-International databases. This variable can be used to link contextual area data from IPUMS-DHS to IPUMS-International or vice versa. The codes in DHS_IPUMSI_ZA indicate the major administrative unit in which the household was enumerated or surveyed.

GIS shapefiles for South Africa can be downloaded [here](#).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: IPUMS-I, IPUMS-DHS Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ELECTRIC: Electricity

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Yes
2	No
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

ELECTRIC indicates whether the household had access to electricity.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

GEO1_ZA: South Africa, Province 2001 - 2016 [Level 1; consistent boundaries, GIS]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 6 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
710001	Western Cape
710004	Free State
710005	Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal
710007	Gauteng, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, North West, Northern Cape
710999	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

GEO1_ZA identifies the household's province (provinsie) within South Africa from 2001 to present. Provinces are the first level administrative units of the country. GEO1_ZA is spatially harmonized accounting for political boundary changes across census years. Some detail is lost in harmonization; see the comparability discussion. A GIS map (in shapefile format), corresponding to GEO1_ZA can be downloaded from the GIS Boundary files page in the IPUMS International web site.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found here.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
-------------------	------------

Geography: O-Z Variables -- HOUSEHOLD

IPUMS

GEO1_ZA2001: South Africa, Province 2001 [Level 1, GIS]**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
001	Western Cape
002	Eastern Cape
003	Northern Cape
004	Free State
005	KwaZulu-Natal
006	North West
007	Gauteng
008	Mpumalanga
009	Limpopo
099	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

GEO1_ZA2001 identifies the household's province (provinsie) within South Africa in 2001. Provinces are the first level administrative units of the country. A GIS map (in shapefile format), corresponding to GEO1_ZA2001 can be downloaded from the GIS Boundary files page in the IPUMS International web site.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found here.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: O-Z Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

GEO2_ZA: South Africa, District council 2001 - 2016 [Level 2; consistent boundaries, GIS]**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 9 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
710001001	West Coast
710001002	Cape Winelands, Overberg
710001003	Eden
710001004	Central Karoo
710001005	City of Cape Town
710004001	Thabo Mofutsanyane, Mangaung, Lejweleputswa, Fezile Dabi, Xhariep
710005001	Cacadu
710005002	Nelson Mandela Bay
710005003	Uthukela, Amajuba
710005004	Umkhanyakude
710005005	Uthungulu
710005006	iLembe
710005007	eThekweni, O.R.Tambo, Umgungundlovu, Amathole, Zululand, Alfred Nzo, Chris Hani, Buffalo City, Ugu, Umzinyathi, Sisonke, Joe Gqabi
710007001	Namakwa
710007002	Sedibeng, Ngaka Modiri Molema, West Rand, Dr Kenneth Kaunda, Dr Ruth Segomotsi Mompati, Frances Baard, Siyanda, John Taolo Gaetsewe, Pixley ka Seme
710007003	Ekurhuleni, City of Tshwane, Ehlanzeni, Bojanala, Nkangala, Vhembe, Capricorn, Greater Sekhukhune, Mopani, Waterberg
710007004	City of Johannesburg
710007005	Gert Sibande
710098098	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

GEO2_ZA identifies the household's district council (also known as district municipality) within South Africa from 2001 to present. District councils are the second level administrative units of the country, after province. GEO2_ZA is spatially harmonized to account for political boundary changes across census years. Some detail is lost in harmonization; see the comparability discussion. A GIS map (in shapefile format), corresponding to GEO2_ZA can be downloaded from the GIS Boundary files page in the IPUMS International web site.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level of any country refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found here.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: O-Z Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

GEO2_ZA2001: South Africa, District council 2001 [Level 2, GIS]**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 6 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
001001	DC1: West Coast District Municipality
001002	DC2: Boland District Municipality
001003	DC3: Overberg District Municipality
001004	DC4: Eden District Municipality
001005	DC5: Central Karoo District Municipality
002010	DC10: Cacadu District Municipality
002012	DC12: Amatole District Municipality
002013	DC13: Chris Hani District Municipality
002014	DC14: Ukhahlamba District Municipality
002015	DC15: O.R.Tambo District Municipality
003006	DC6: Namakwa District Municipality
003007	DC7: Pixley ka Seme District Municipality
003008	DC8: Siyanda District Municipality
003009	DC9: Francis Baard (cross-boundary)
004016	DC16: Xhariep District Municipality
004017	DC17: Motheo District Municipality
004018	DC18: Lejweleputswa District Municipality
004019	DC19: Thabo Mofutsanyane District Municipality
004020	DC20: Northern Free State District Municipality
005021	DC21: Ugu District Municipality
005022	DC22: UMGungundlovu District Municipality
005023	DC23: Uthukela District Municipality
005024	DC24: Umzinyathi District Municipality

005025	DC25: Amajuba District Municipality
005026	DC26: Zululand District Municipality
005027	DC27: Umkhanyakude District Municipality
005028	DC28: Uthungulu District Municipality
005029	DC29: iLembe District Municipality
008030	DC30: Gert Sibande District Municipality
008031	DC31: Nkangala District Municipality
008032	DC32: Ehlanzeni District Municipality
009033	DC33: Mopani District Municipality
009034	DC34: Vhembe District Municipality
009035	DC35: Capricorn District Municipality
009036	DC36: Waterberg District Municipality
006037	DC37: Bojanala District Municipality
006038	DC38: Central District Municipality
006039	DC39: Bophirima District Municipality
006040	DC40: Southern District Municipality
007042	DC42: Sedibeng District Municipality
005043	DC43: Sisonke District Municipality
002044	DC44: Alfred Nzo District Municipality
007076	City of Tshwane (cross-boundary)
006081	CBDC1: Kgalagadi (cross-boundary)
007082	CBDC2: Metsweding (cross-boundary)
009083	CBDC3: Sekhukhune (cross-boundary)
009084	CBDC4: Eastern (cross-boundary)
007088	CDBC8: West Rand (cross-boundary)
001171	Cape Town: City of Cape Town
002275	Port Elizabeth: Nelson Mandela
005572	Durban: Ethekwini Municipality
007773	East Rand: Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality
007774	Johannesburg: City of Johannesburg Metropolitan Municipality
099999	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

GEO2_ZA2001 identifies the household's district council (also known as district municipality) within South Africa in 2001. District councils are the second level administrative units of the country, after provinces. A GIS map (in shapefile format), corresponding to GEO2_ZA2001 can be downloaded from the GIS Boundary files page in the IPUMS International web site

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level of any country refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found here.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: O-Z Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

MAGISZA: South Africa, Magisterial District**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
101	Bellville
102	Goodwood
103	Cape
104	Simonstown
105	Wynberg
106	Mitchellsplain
107	Kuilsrivier
108	Paarl
109	Stellenbosch
110	Somerset West
111	Strand
113	Bredasdorp
114	Caledon
115	Hermanus
117	Swellendam
118	George
119	Knysna
120	Mossel bay
121	Riversdal
124	Oudtshoorn
126	Ceres
128	Robertson
129	Tulbagh

130	Worcester
132	Malmesbury
133	Piketberg
134	Vredenburg
136	Clanwilliam
138	Vredendal
139	Beaufort West
199	Magisterial districts under 20,000 in Western Cape province
202	Aliwal North
210	Maclear
215	Queenstown
217	Stutterheim
219	East-London
221	Albany
222	Alexandria
224	Bathurst
226	Fort Beaufort
227	Somerset East
228	Kirkwood
229	Cradock
230	Middelburg
232	Graaff-Reinet
237	Hankey
238	Humansdorp
240	Port Elizabeth
241	Uitenhage
242	Mdantsane
243	Zwelitsha
244	Hewu
245	Keiskammahoek
247	Victoria East
248	Middeldrift
249	Peddie
250	Bizana
251	Butterworth
252	Elliotdale
253	Engcobo
254	Flagstaff
255	Idutywa

256	Kentani
257	Libode
258	Lusikisiki
259	Maluti
260	Mt Ayliff
261	Mt Fletcher
262	Mt Frere
263	Mqanduli
264	Ngqueleni
265	Nqamakwe
266	Port St Johns
267	Qumbu
268	Cofimvaba
269	Tabankulu
270	Tsolo
271	Tsomo
272	Umtata
273	Willowvale
274	Cala
275	Lady Frere
276	Sterkspruit
277	Umzimkulu
278	Ntabathemba
299	Magisterial districts under 20,000 in Eastern Cape province
301	Namakwaland
309	De Aar
311	Hopetown
315	Gordonia
317	Barkley-West
318	Hartswater
320	Warrenton
321	Kimberley
322	Kuruman
323	Postmasburg
399	Magisterial districts under 20,000 in Northern Cape province
401	Boshof
406	Odendaalsrus
407	Virginia
408	Welkom

409	Bothaville
410	Bultfontein
411	Heilbron
412	Hennenman
413	Hoopstad
415	Kroonstad
416	Parys
417	Theunissen
418	Ventersburg
420	Viljoenskroon
421	Wesselsbron
422	Bethlehem
423	Ficksburg
424	Fouriesburg
425	Frankfort
426	Harrismith
427	Lindley
428	Reitz
429	Senekal
430	Vrede
431	Brandfort
432	Clocolan
437	Ladybrand
444	Botshabelo
445	Bloemfontein
450	Sasolburg
451	Thaba 'Nchu
452	Witsieshoek
499	Magisterial districts under 20,000 in Free State province
501	Durban
502	Inanda
503	Pinetown
504	Chatswoth
505	Camperdown
506	Richmond
507	Pietermaritzburg
508	Umzinto
509	Ixopo
510	Alfred

511	Port Shepstone
512	Mount Currie
514	Polela
515	Impendle
516	Kranskop
517	Lions River
518	New Hanover
519	Mooi river
520	Umvoti
521	Bergville
522	Estcourt
523	Kliprivier
525	Dannhauser
526	Dundee
527	Glencoe
528	Newcastle
529	Utrecht
530	Babanango
531	Ngotshe
532	Paulpietersburg
533	Vryheid
534	Eshowe
535	Hlabisa
536	Lower Umfolozi
537	Mthonjaneni
538	Mtunzini
539	Ubombo
540	Lower Tugela
541	Umbumbulu
542	Umlazi
543	Ndwedwe
544	Mapumulo
545	Nkandla
546	Nqutu
547	Msinga
548	Mhlabathini
549	Nongoma
550	Ingwavuma
551	Simdlangentsha

599	Magisterial districts under 20,000 in KwaZulu-Natal province
601	Huhudi
602	Kudumane
603	Vryburg
604	Phokwani
605	Mmabatho
606	Madikwe
607	Lichtenburg
608	Delareyville
609	Schweizer-Reneke
610	Wolmaransstad
611	Christiana
612	Klerksdorp
613	Ventersdorp
614	Potchefstroom
615	Mankwe
616	Rustenburg
617	Brits
618	Ga-Rankuwa
619	Temba
701	Pretoria
702	Soshanguve
703	Wonderboom
704	Johannesburg
705	Randburg
706	Alberton
707	Benoni
708	Boksburg
709	Germiston
710	Kempton Park
711	Brakpan
712	Heidelberg
713	Nigel
714	Springs
715	Krugersdorp
716	Oberholzer
717	Randfontein
718	Roodepoort
719	Westonaria

720	Bronkhorstspuit
721	Cullinan
722	Vereeniging
723	Vanderbijlpark
724	Soweto
801	Amersfoort
802	Bethal
803	Carolina
804	Ermelo
805	Piet Retief
806	Standerton
807	Volksrust
808	Wakkerstroom
809	Kriel
810	Balfour
811	Hoveldrif
812	Delmas
814	Groblersdal
815	Middelburg
817	Witbank
818	Moutse
819	Barberton
820	Lydenburg
821	Nelspruit
822	Pelgrimsrust
823	Witrivier
824	Eerstehoek
825	Nkomazi
826	Nsikazi
827	Mdutjana
828	Mkobola
829	Mbibana
830	Kwamhlanga
831	Moretele
899	Magisterial districts under 20,000 in Mpumalanga province
901	Letaba
902	Messina
903	Phalaborwa
904	Pietersburg

905	Soutpansberg
906	Potgietersrus
907	Waterberg
908	Ellisras
909	Thabazimbi
910	Warmbad
911	Malamulela
912	Hlanganani
913	Namakgale
914	Mhala
915	Ritavi
916	Giyani
917	Lulekani
918	Bolobedu
919	Sekgosese
920	Bochum
921	Mokerong
922	Seshego
923	Thabampoopo
924	Nebo
925	Sekhukhuneland
926	Naphuno
927	Mapulaneng
928	Dzanani
929	Mutali
930	Thohoyandou
931	Vuwani
999	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

MAGISZA identifies the household's magisterial district within South Africa in 1996 and 2001. MAGISZA is harmonized by name and does not account for boundary changes over time.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level of any country refer to GEOLEV1, and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found [here](#).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: O-Z Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

MUNIZA: South Africa, Municipality

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
011	Sol Plaatje
012	Dikgatlong, Magareng
014	Phokwane
015	City of Tshwane Metro
016	Gamagara
017	Ga-Segonyana
018	Moshaweng
019	Nokeng tsa Taemane
020	Kungwini
021	Makhuduthamaga
022	Fetakgomo
023	Greater Marble Hall
024	Greater Groblersdal
025	Greater Tubatse
026	Maruleng
027	Bushbuckridge
028	Mogale City
029	Randfontein
030	Westonaria
031	Merafong City
099	District Management Areas
160	Matzikama
161	Cederberg
162	Bergrivier
163	Saldanha Bay
164	Swartland

165	Witzenberg
166	Drakenstein
167	Stellenbosch
168	Breede Valley
169	Langeberg
150	Breede River/Winelands
170	Swellendam
171	Theewaterskloof
172	Overstrand
173	Cape Agulhas
175	Hessequa, Kannaland
176	Mossel Bay
177	George
178	Oudtshoorn
179	Bitou
180	Knysna
151	Plettenberg Bay
182	Prince Albert, Laingsburg
183	Beaufort West
199	City of Cape Town
261	Camdeboo
262	Blue Crane Route, Ikwezi
264	Makana
265	Ndlambe
266	Sunday's River Valley, Baviaans
268	Kouga
269	Kou-Kamma
270	Mbhashe
271	Mnquma
272	Great Kei
273	Amahlathi
274	Ngqushwa
276	Nkonkobe
277	Nxuba
278	Inxuba Yethemba
279	Tsolwana, Inkwanca
282	Intsika Yethu
283	Emalahleni
284	Engcobo

285	Sakhisizwe
286	Elundini
287	Senqu
288	Maletswai
289	Gariep
250	Qaukeni
290	Nguza Hill
291	Port St Johns
292	Nyandeni
293	Mhlontlo
294	King Sabata Dalindyebo
295	Matatiele
296	Umzimvubu
297	Mbizana
298	Ntabankulu
260	Buffalo City
299	Nelson Mandela
364	Nama Khoi, Richtersveld
366	Hantam, Kamiesberg
367	Karoo Hoogland, Khâi-Ma
370	Umsombomvu, Ubuntu
371	Emthanjeni
375	Siyathemba, Thembelihle, Renosterberg, Kareeberg
376	Siyancuma
378	Kai Garib, Mier
379	Khara Hais
381	Tsantsabane, Kgatelopele, Kheis
360	Joe Morolong
460	Letsemeng
461	Kopanong
462	Mohokare
463	Naledi
464	Masilonyana
465	Tokologo
466	Tswelopele
467	Matjhabeng
468	Nala
469	Setsoto
470	Dihlabeng

471	Nketoana
472	Maluti a Phofung
473	Phumelela
474	Mantsopa
475	Moqhaka
477	Ngwathe
478	Metsimaholo
479	Mafube
499	Mangaung
503	Umzumbe
504	uMuziwabantu
505	Ezingoleni
506	Hibiscus Coast
560	Vulamehlo
561	Umdoni
562	uMshwathi
563	uMngeni
564	Mooi Mpofana
565	Impendle
566	Msunduzi
567	Mkhambathini
568	Richmond
514	Emnambithi/Ladysmith
569	Indaka
570	Umtshezi
571	Okhahlamba
573	Imbabazane
574	Endumeni
575	Nqutu
576	Msinga
577	Umvoti
524	Newcastle
525	Emadlangeni
526	Dannhauser
550	Utrecht
529	Abaqulusi
578	eDumbe
579	uPhongolo
580	Nongoma

581	Ulundi
582	Umhlabuyalingana
583	Jozini
584	The Big 5 False Bay
585	Hlabisa
586	Mtubatuba
538	uMhlathuze
542	Nkandla
587	Mfolozi
588	Ntambanana
589	uMlalazi
590	Mthonjaneni
551	Mbonambi
546	Maphumulo
591	Mandeni
592	KwaDukuza
593	Ndwedwe
552	eNdongakusuka
595	Kwa Sani, Ingwe
596	Greater Kokstad
597	Ubuhlebezwe
598	Umzimkhulu
599	Ethekwini
660	Moretele
661	Madibeng
662	Rustenburg
663	Kgetlengrivier
664	Moses Kotane
665	Ratlou
666	Tswaing
667	Mafikeng
668	Ditsobotla
669	Ramotshere Moiloa
650	Setla-Kgobi
651	Zeerust
674	Kagisano/Molopo
670	Naledi
671	Mamusa
672	Greater Taung

673	Lekwa-Teemane
675	Ventersdorp
676	Tlokwe City Council
677	City of Matlosana
678	Maquassi Hills
652	Potchefstroom
653	City Council of Klerksdorp
760	Emfuleni
761	Midvaal
762	Lesedi
797	Ekurhuleni Metro
798	City of Johannesburg Metro
860	Albert Luthuli
861	Msukaligwa
862	Mkhondo
863	Seme
864	Lekwa
865	Dipaleseng
866	Govan Mbeki Municipality
867	Victor Khanye
868	Emalaheni
869	Steve Tshwete
870	Emakhazeni
871	Thembisile
872	Dr JS Moroka
850	Delmas
851	Middelburg
852	Highlands
873	Thaba Chweu
874	Mbombela
875	Umjindi
876	Nkomazi
960	Greater Giyani
961	Greater Letaba
962	Greater Tzaneen
963	Ba-Phalaborwa
967	Musina
965	Mutale
966	Thulamela

968	Makhado
969	Blouberg
970	Aganang
973	Molemole
974	Polokwane
976	Lepele-Nkumpi
977	Thabazimbi
978	Lephalale
979	Modimolle
980	Mookgopong
981	Bela-Bela
982	Mogalakwena
983	Ephraim Mogale
984	Elias Motsoaledi

description

DEFINITION

MUNIZA identifies the household's municipality within South Africa from 2001 to present. Municipalities are the third level administrative units of the country, after district council. MUNIZA is harmonized by name and does not account for boundary changes over time.

The full set of geography variables for South Africa can be found in the IPUMS International Geography variables list. For cross-national geographic analysis on the first and second major administrative level refer to GEOLEV1 and GEOLEV2. More information on IPUMS-International geography can be found [here](#).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: O-Z Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

OWNERSHIP: Ownership of dwelling [general version]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
-------	----------

0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Owned
2	Not owned
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

OWNERSHIP indicates whether a member of the household owned the housing unit. Households that acquired their unit with a mortgage or other lending arrangement were understood to "own" their unit even if they had not yet completed repayment. For those that did not own their housing unit, several options were possible: renting (from various types of owners), subletting, usufruct, and de facto occupation.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Economic Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

OWNERSHIPD: Ownership of dwelling [detailed version]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
000	NIU (not in universe)
100	Owned
110	Owned, already paid
120	Owned, still paying
130	Owned, constructed
140	Owned, inherited
190	Owned, other
191	Owned, house
192	Owned, condominium
193	Apartment proprietor
194	Shared ownership
200	Not owned

210	Renting, not specified
211	Renting, government
212	Renting, local authority
213	Renting, parastatal
214	Renting, private
215	Renting, private company
216	Renting, individual
217	Renting, collective
218	Renting, joint state and individual
219	Renting, public subsidized
220	Renting, private subsidized
221	Renting, co-tenant
222	Renting, relative of tenant
223	Renting, cooperative
224	Renting, with a job or business
225	Renting, loan-backed habitation
226	Renting, mixed contract
227	Furnished dwelling
228	Sharecropping
230	Subletting
231	Rent to own
239	Renting, other
240	Occupied de facto/squatting
250	Free/usufruct (no cash rent)
251	Free, provided by employer
252	Free, without work or services
253	Free, provided by family or friend
254	Free, private
255	Free, public
256	Free, condemned
257	Free, other
260	Endowment, Waqf (Egypt historical)
290	Not owned, other
999	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

OWNERSHIP indicates whether a member of the household owned the housing unit. Households that acquired their unit with a mortgage or other lending arrangement were understood to "own" their unit even if they had not yet completed

repayment. For those that did not own their housing unit, several options were possible: renting (from various types of owners), subletting, usufruct, and de facto occupation.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Economic Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

CELL: Cellular phone availability

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Yes
2	No
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

CELL indicates the availability of a cellular phone in the household.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

COMPUTER: Computer

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	No
2	Yes
9	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

COMPUTER indicates whether the household had a personal computer.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Appliances, Mechanicals, Other Amenities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

FUELCOOK: Cooking fuel

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	NIU (not in universe)
10	None
20	Electricity
30	Petroleum gas, unspecified
31	Gas -- piped/utility
32	Gas -- tanked or bottled
33	Propane
34	Liquefied petroleum gas
35	Gas -- piped and bottled
40	Petroleum liquid

41	Oil, kerosene, and other liquid fuels
42	Kerosene/paraffin
43	Kerosene or oil
44	Kerosene or gasoline
45	Gasoline
46	Cocinol
47	Diesel
50	Wood, coal, and other solid fuels
51	Wood and other plant fuels
52	Non-wood plant materials
53	Coal or charcoal
54	Charcoal
55	Coal
56	Wood or charcoal
60	Multiple fuels
61	Bottled gas and wood
62	Propane and electricity
63	Propane, kerosene, and electricity
64	Propane and kerosene
65	Kerosene and electricity
66	Other combinations
70	Other
71	Alcohol
72	Biogas
73	Discarded or waste material
74	Dung/manure
75	Other combined organic waste materials
76	Solar energy
77	Candle
99	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

FUELCOOK indicates the predominant type of fuel or energy used for cooking.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
--------------------------	-------------------

Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD

IPUMS

FUELHEAT: Fuel for heating**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	NIU (not in universe)
01	None
02	Electricity
03	Fuel oil, kerosene, other liquid fuels
04	Kerosene/paraffin
05	Diesel
06	Gas
07	Bottled gas, in tank, liquified
08	Solid fuel
09	Coal
10	Wood
11	Wood or coal
12	Solar
13	Animal dung
14	Charcoal
15	Biofuel
16	Other
17	Multiple sources
99	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

FUELHEAT indicates the main fuel source for heating the household.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

PHONE: Telephone availability

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	No
2	Yes
9	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

PHONE indicates the availability of a telephone in the dwelling.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

REFRIG: Refrigerator

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)

1	No
2	Yes
9	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

REFRIG indicates whether the household had a refrigerator.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Appliances, Mechanicals, Other Amenities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

SEWAGE: Sewage

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	NIU (not in universe)
10	Connected to sewage system or septic tank
11	Sewage system (public sewage disposal)
12	Septic tank (private sewage disposal)
20	Not connected to sewage disposal system
99	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

SEWAGE indicates whether the household has access to a sewage system or septic tank.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
-------------------	------------

Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD

IPUMS

TRASH: Trash disposal**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	NIU (not in universe)
10	Collected by a sanitation service
11	Collected directly from the household or dwelling
12	Collected indirectly from a garbage container or deposit
13	Collected by a sanitation service only
14	Collected by a sanitation service and disposed of in some other manner
20	Disposed of in some other manner
21	Burned or buried
22	Burned
23	Buried
24	Thrown into street, vacant land, or common area
25	Thrown into river, lake, ocean, lagoon, etc.
26	Thrown into canyon or gulley
27	Dumped in pit
28	Communal refuse dump
29	Own refuse dump
30	Authorized refuse dump
31	Illegal refuse dump
32	Other dumping
33	Outside
34	In the fields
35	Fed to animals
36	Composted
37	Heap
38	Garden
39	Other, none
99	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the household's waste or garbage is collected by a sanitation service or disposed of in some other manner.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

TV: Television set

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	NIU (not in universe)
10	No
20	Yes, color or black-and-white not specified
21	1 television
22	2 televisions
23	3 televisions
24	4 televisions
25	5 televisions
26	6 televisions
27	7 televisions
28	8 televisions
29	9+ televisions
30	Yes, at least one color tv
31	1 color tv
32	2 color tvs
33	3+ televisions
40	Yes, black-and-white only
41	1 black-white tv

42	2 black-white tvs
43	3+ black-white tvs
99	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

TV indicates whether the household had a television.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Appliances, Mechanicals, Other Amenities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

WATSUP: Water supply

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	NIU (not in universe)
10	Yes, piped water
11	Piped inside dwelling
12	Piped, exclusively to this household
13	Piped, shared with other households
14	Piped outside the dwelling
15	Piped outside dwelling, in building
16	Piped within the building or plot of land
17	Piped outside the building or lot
18	Have access to public piped water
20	No piped water
99	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

WATSUP describes the physical means by which the housing unit receives its water. The primary distinction is whether or not the household had piped (running) water.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

HEADLOC: Head's location in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

HEADLOC gives the person number (PERNUM) of the head of household in samples in which persons are organized into households.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

HEADLOC is a 3-digit numeric variable.

HHTYPE: Household classification

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
-------	----------

00	Vacant household
01	One-person household
02	Married/cohab couple, no children
03	Married/cohab couple with children
04	Single-parent family
05	Polygamous family
06	Extended family, relatives only
07	Composite household, family and non-relatives
08	Non-family household
09	Unclassified subfamily
10	Other relative or non-relative household
11	Group quarters
99	Unclassifiable

description

DEFINITION

HHTYPE is a constructed variable that describes the composition of households.

HHTYPE is constructed from information in RELATE (relationship to head), from the constructed pointer variables SPLOC, MOMLOC, and POPLOC (location of spouse, mother, and father), and from information on group quarters status, GQ.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

■ NCOUPLES: Number of married couples in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No married couples in household
1	1 couple
2	2 couples
3	3 couples

4	4 couples
5	5 couples
6	6 couples
7	7 couples
8	8 couples
9	9 or more couples

description

DEFINITION

NCOUPLES is a constructed variable indicating the number of married/in-union couples within a household.

NCOUPLES is constructed using the IPUMS-International pointer variable SPLOC (spouse's location in the household).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

NFAMS: Number of families in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	Vacant household
1	1 family
2	2 families
3	3 families
4	4 families
5	5 families
6	6 families
7	7 families
8	8 families
9	9 or more families

description

DEFINITION

NFAMS is a constructed variable that indicates the number of families within each household. Family membership is defined by FAMUNIT. A "family" is any group of persons related by blood, adoption, or marriage. An unrelated individual within the household is considered a separate family. Thus, a household consisting of a widow and a domestic employee contains two families; a household consisting of a large, multi-generation extended family with no persons unrelated to the head counts as a single family.

NFAMS is constructed from information in RELATE (relationship to head) and from the constructed pointer variables SPLOC, MOMLOC, and POPLOC (location of spouse, mother, and father). See those variable descriptions for more detail.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

NFATHERS: Number of fathers in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No fathers in household
1	1 father
2	2 fathers
3	3 fathers
4	4 fathers
5	5 fathers
6	6 fathers
7	7 fathers
8	8 fathers
9	9 or more fathers in household

description

DEFINITION

NFATHERS is a constructed variable indicating the number of fathers -- of persons of any age -- within a household.

NFATHERS is constructed using the IPUMS-International pointer variable POPLOC (father's location in the household).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

NMOTHERS: Number of mothers in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No mothers in household
1	1 mother
2	2 mothers
3	3 mothers
4	4 mothers
5	5 mothers
6	6 mothers
7	7 mothers
8	8 mothers
9	9 or more mothers in household

description

DEFINITION

NMOTHERS is a constructed variable indicating the number of mothers -- of persons of any age -- within a household.

NMOTHERS is constructed using the IPUMS-International pointer variable MOMLOC (mother's location in the household).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

RADIO: Radio in household**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	No
2	Yes
9	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

RADIO indicates whether the household had a radio.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Appliances, Mechanicals, Other Amenities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ROOMS: Number of rooms**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	Part of a room; no rooms
01	1
02	2
03	3

04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30+
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

ROOMS indicates the number of rooms occupied by the housing unit.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Dwelling Characteristics Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

TOILET: Toilet**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	NIU (not in universe)
10	No toilet
11	No flush toilet
20	Have toilet, type not specified
21	Flush toilet
22	Non-flush, latrine
23	Non-flush, other and unspecified
99	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

TOILET indicates whether the household had access to a toilet and, in most cases, whether it was a flush toilet or other type of installation.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Dwelling Characteristics Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_DWNUM: Dwelling number**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 6 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the household number.

UNIVERSE
South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION
This is a 6-digit numeric variable with 0 implied decimal places

ZA2001A_DENSITY: Size and density of locality

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	High density or large settlement
2	Low density
8	Unknown

description

DEFINITION
This variable indicates the size and density of the locality.

UNIVERSE
South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_DWMULT: More than one dwelling**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<sva a="all" v="ZA01A021">H-23b. More than one dwelling<br /><div class="i1">Does this household occupy more than one dwelling on this site? Dot the appropriate box.<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No</div><br /></sva>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<sva v="ZA01A021"><span class="em">Dwelling</span><br />Any structure intended or used for human habitation. It may be a house, a hut, a flat, etc.<br /></sva></p>
```

```
<p><sva v="ZA01A020 ZA01A021">For example, some housing units consist of more than one dwelling, such as a brick house and one or more traditional huts, or a room in a converted hostel, plus a shack outside. In such cases give the type of the <span class="em">main</span> dwelling.<br /><br />Note that "more than one dwelling" refers only to dwellings on the <span class="em">same site</span>, not dwellings or houses elsewhere.<br /></sva></p>
```

```
<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A021"><span class="em">Question H-23b -- More than one dwelling</span><br /><br /><span class="em">"Does this household occupy more than one dwelling on this site?"</span><br /><br />This question will capture housing units consisting of more than one dwelling, as explained above. Again we are not talking about other dwellings or houses elsewhere.<br /></sva>
```

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the household has more than one dwelling.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Private households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Other Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_DWTYPE1: Type of living quarters (comprehensive)**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A019">H-23. Type of living quarters
<div class="i1">_ What is the type of these living quarters?
1 = Housing unit
2 = Residential hotel
3 = Students' residence
4 = Home for the aged
5 = Workers' hostel
6 = Other (specify) _____
If 2-5 go to H-25</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Housing unit
02	Residential hotel
03	Student residence
04	Home for the aged
05	Worker hostel
11	Tourist hotel/motel
12	Hospital/medical facility/clinic/frail-care centre
13	Childcare institution/orphanage
14	Home for the disabled
15	Boarding school hostel
16	Initiation school
17	Convent/monastery/religious retreat
18	Defence force barracks/camp/ship in harbour
19	Prison/correctional institution/police cells
20	Community or church hall
21	Refugee camp/shelter for the homeless
22	Homeless

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A019 ZA01A400">Question H-23 -- Type of living quarters

This question has three parts. Everyone answers the first part. Only those who choose option 1 for H-23 will answer the other two parts.

"What is the type of these living quarters?"

This questionnaire will be used for households in housing units and for households in some types of collective living quarters. The choices in Questionnaire A are 'housing unit' or one of the different kinds of collective living quarters. If you choose housing unit you will specify which kind in the next question.

Housing unit: A unit of accommodation for a household, which may consist of one structure, or more than one structure, or part of a structure. (Examples of each are a house, a group of rondavels, and a flat.) It may be vacant, or occupied by one or more than one household.

A housing unit has a separate entrance from outside or from a common space, as in a block of flats.

Premises not intended for use as living quarters, but used for human habitation at the time of the census, such as a barn, warehouse, etc., are also classified as housing units for census purposes.

Those who choose one of options 2-5 skip H-23a, H-23b, H-24 and H-24a, and go to Question H-25 on the next line. The others will answer the next questions.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the type of living quarters (comprehensive).

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Group Quarters Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_DWTYPE2: Type of housing unit or institution

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A020">H-23a. Type of housing unit
<div class="i1">__ Which type of dwelling or housing unit does this household occupy? If this household lives in more than one dwelling, write the code of the main dwelling that the household occupies in the boxes.
01 = House or brick structure on a separate stand or yard
02 = Traditional dwelling/hut/structure made of traditional materials
03 = Flat in block of flats
04 = Town/cluster/semi-detached house (simplex, duplex, triplex)
05 = House/flat/room in back yard
06 = Informal dwelling/shack in back yard
07 = Informal dwelling/shack NOT in back yard, e.g. in an informal/squatter settlement
08 = Room/flatlet not in back yard but on a shared property
09 = Caravan or tent
10 = Private ship/boat
11 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _
_ _ _ _ _</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	House or brick structure on a separate stand or yard
02	Traditional dwelling/hut/structure made of traditional materials
03	Flat in a block of flats
04	Town/cluster/semi-detached house (simplex, duplex or triplex)
05	House/flat/room, in backyard
06	Informal dwelling/shack, in backyard
07	Informal dwelling/shack, not in backyard (e.g. in an informal/squatter settlement)
08	Room/flatlet not in backyard but on a shared property
09	Caravan or tent
10	Private ship/boat
20	Tourist hotel/motel
21	Hospital/medical facility/clinic/frail-care centre
22	Childcare institution/orphanage

23	Home for the disabled
24	Boarding school hostel
25	Initiation school
26	Convent/monastery/religious retreat
27	Defence force barracks/camp/ship in harbour
28	Prison/correctional institution/police cells
29	Community or church hall
30	Refugee camp/shelter for the homeless
31	Homeless
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

Housing unit A unit of accommodation for a household, which may consist of one structure, or more than one structure, or part of a structure. (Examples of each are a house, a group of huts, and a flat.) It may be vacant, or occupied by one or more than one household. A housing unit has a separate entrance from outside or from a common space, as in a block of flats. Premises not intended for use as living quarters, but used for human habitation at the time of the census, such as a barn, warehouse, etc., are also classified as housing units for census purposes.

National Bureau: The term housing unit is a demographic term used when you need to be precise for certain purposes. It is contrasted with collective living quarters -- i.e. all living quarters are either housing units or collective living quarters. Collective living quarters Living quarters where certain facilities are shared by groups of individuals or households. They can be divided into: (a) hotels, motels, guest houses, etc. (b) workers hostels and student residences; and (c) institutions. People living in residential hotels, boarding houses, and hostels will be enumerated using the household questionnaire (Questionnaire A). The inmates of institutions and tourist hotels will be enumerated using the questionnaire for individuals (Questionnaire B).

Institution An institution is a particular type of collective living quarters, for people with a common characteristic who are living under a common regime. The following are institutions: hospital/clinic, frail care centre, childcare institution/ orphanage, home for the disabled, boarding school hostel, initiation school, convents and monasteries, defence force barracks, camps and ships, prison, refugee camps, shelters for the homeless.

Question H-23 a -- Type of housing unit Which type of dwelling or housing unit does this household occupy? Write the code in the boxes. This question should be answered in relation to the housing unit for that household. So a household in a separate housing unit such as a backyard room will answer accordingly. This is another reason why domestic workers, for example, are captured on their own questionnaires. [P. 58] If this household lives in more than one dwelling (as captured in the next question), answer this question in relation to the main dwelling.

For example, some housing units consist of more than one dwelling, such as a brick house and one or more traditional huts, or a room in a converted hostel, plus a shack outside. In such cases give the type of the main dwelling. Note that "more than one dwelling" refers only to dwellings on the same site, not dwellings or houses elsewhere.

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the type of housing unit or institution.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Private households, institutional collective living quarters, and homeless [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Group Quarters Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_EATYPE: Enumeration area (EA) type**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	Sparse (10 or fewer households)
1	Tribal Settlement
2	Farm
3	Smallholding
4	Urban Settlement
5	Informal Settlement
6	Recreational
7	Industrial Area
8	Institution
9	Hostel

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r v="ZA01A015">Enumeration area
An enumeration area (EA) is the smallest geographical unit (piece of land) into which the country is divided for census or survey enumeration, of a size able to be enumerated by one census fieldworker (enumerator) in the allocated period. EAs typically contain between 100 and 250 households.
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A015 ZA01A016">Urban formal
Urban formal areas are structured and organised. Houses and flats are built on plots and these often have fences or walls around them. Township houses are usually on smaller plots and there are usually many of the same size and shape.

Industrial areas, shopping centres, office parks and commercial areas also form part of urban formal areas. You will see larger and multi-storey buildings, often with car parks around them.

Recreational areas (golf courses, caravan parks, nature reserves, state forest areas, public entertainment areas, parks and botanic gardens) can contain large grassed areas; pools, paddling pools and other entertainment areas; and areas with dense trees.

Hostels are places where mine or factory workers live. They normally comprise several buildings set in ordered rows or blocks.

Institutions are prisons, hospitals, army areas, etc. On the map, some institutions look similar to hostels. If you recognise something of this kind on the photo, use the list in your 09 book to establish what kind of institution it is.

[P. 19]

Urban informal
Informal settlements or so-called squatter camps are easy to recognise on a photo. The structures are small and crowded together.

Rural formal farms cover extensive areas, so any buildings on your map will be very small. Try and pick out owners' houses and labourers' houses. Look for cultivated fields, or grassed fields for animals. Fence lines can usually be seen.

Small holdings are smaller farms, closer to towns. They are usually used for market gardens or orchards.

Commercial plantations are planted in ordered rows in large fields and are easily recognised on an aerial photo.

Tribal areas

Tribal settlement areas are usually villages that fall within a tribal area or tribal authority or administrative area. In some areas villages appear on the map as clusters of houses/huts with large areas of vacant grassland, fields, and patches of natural forest in between. In other areas huts or kraals are scattered throughout the area.

Other features such as transport routes (roads, freeways, railways and paths), public buildings (schools and churches), cemeteries, swimming pools, mine dumps, parking areas, natural forests (not plantations) will be present nearly everywhere.

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the type of enumeration area (EA).

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: O-Z Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_FBIG: Dwelling created by splitting apart a large dwelling or household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No problem
1	Yes: households within a large dwelling were split apart into separate dwellings
2	Yes: persons within a large household were split apart into separate dwellings

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the dwelling created by splitting apart a large dwelling or household.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_PERN: Number of persons in household**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22

23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the number of persons in the household.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_ROOMS: Number of rooms

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A022">H-24. Rooms
<div class="i1">__ How many rooms, including kitchens, are there for this household? Count all rooms in all dwellings. Exclude bathrooms, sheds, garages, stables, etc. unless persons are living in them. For example, if 4 rooms [0] [4].</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
001	1
002	2
003	3
004	4
005	5

006	6
007	7
008	8
009	9
010	10
011	11
012	12
013	13
014	14
015	15
016	16
017	17
018	18
019	19
020	20
021	21
022	22
023	23
024	24
025	25
026	26
027	27
028	28
029	29
030	30
031	31
032	32
033	33
034	34
035	35
036	36
037	37
038	38
039	39
040	40
041	41
042	42
043	43
044	44

045	45
046	46
047	47
048	48
049	49
050	50
051	51
052	52
053	53
054	54
055	55
057	57
058	58
059	59
060	60
062	62
063	63
064	64
065	65
066	66
068	68
069	69
070	70
071	71
072	72
073	73
074	74
075	75
076	76
077	77
078	78
079	79
080	80
081	81
082	82
084	84
085	85
086	86
087	87

089	89
090	90
094	94
096	96
097	97
098	98
099	99+
999	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

`<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A022">Question H-24 -- Rooms

This question has two parts, H-24 and H-24a. Only those who answer '1 room' to H-24 will answer 24a.

"How many rooms, including kitchens, are there for this household?"

Count all rooms (in all dwellings, if applicable). Exclude bathrooms, sheds, garages, stables, etc. unless there are people living in these rooms, but include all rooms occupied by household members.

Write the answer in the box, e.g. if 4 rooms, write "04". If three families share a four-roomed house, meaning they occupy one room each and share the kitchen, write "02". (Notice that the question does not ask how many rooms there are in the dwelling unit, but how many rooms the household uses.)

Note that the skip is only stated in the instruction for the next question.
</sva r>`

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the number of rooms in the household.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Private households and institutional collective living quarters, excluding initiation schools [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Dwelling Characteristics Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_SHARERM: Sharing one room

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

`<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A023">H-24a. Sharing 1 room
<div class="i1">If one room only: Are there two or more households sharing a single room? Dot the appropriate box.
</div>
</sva r>`

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A023">Question H-24a -- Sharing 1 room
Ask this question if the answer to Question H-24 was "1 room". If more than one room skip H-24a and go to H-25.

"Are there two or more households sharing a single room?"

Here we get further details of overcrowding if households have indicated in the previous question that they only have one room. Dot "Y" or "N".
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether there are two or more households sharing a single room.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Private households with one room [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Dwelling Characteristics Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_URBAN: Urban-rural, 1996 classification

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Urban
2	Rural
8	Unknown

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A015 ZA01A016">Urban formal
Urban formal areas are structured and organised. Houses and flats are built on plots and these often have fences or walls around them. Township houses are usually on smaller plots and there are usually many of the same size and shape.

Industrial areas, shopping centres, office parks and commercial areas also form part of urban formal areas. You will see larger and multi-storey buildings, often with car parks around them.

Recreational areas (golf courses,

caravan parks, nature reserves, state forest areas, public entertainment areas, parks and botanic gardens) can contain large grassed areas; pools, paddling pools and other entertainment areas; and areas with dense trees.

Hostels are places where mine or factory workers live. They normally comprise several buildings set in ordered rows or blocks.

Institutions are prisons, hospitals, army areas, etc. On the map, some institutions look similar to hostels. If you recognise something of this kind on the photo, use the list in your 09 book to establish what kind of institution it is.

[P. 19]

Urban informal

Informal settlements or so-called squatter camps are easy to recognise on a photo. The structures are small and crowded together.

Rural formal

Commercial farms cover extensive areas, so any buildings on your map will be very small. Try and pick out owners' houses and labourers' houses. Look for cultivated fields, or grassed fields for animals. Fence lines can usually be seen.

Small holdings are smaller farms, closer to towns. They are usually used for market gardens or orchards.

Commercial plantations are planted in ordered rows in large fields and are easily recognised on an aerial photo.

Tribal areas

Tribal settlement areas are usually villages that fall within a tribal area or tribal authority or administrative area. In some areas villages appear on the map as clusters of houses/huts with large areas of vacant grassland, fields, and patches of natural forest in between. In other areas huts or kraals are scattered throughout the area.

Other

Other features such as transport routes (roads, freeways, railways and paths), public buildings (schools and churches), cemeteries, swimming pools, mine dumps, parking areas, natural forests (not plantations) will be present nearly everywhere.

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the Census 1996 urban and rural classification.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: O-Z Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_FUELCK: Fuel for cooking

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

H-28. Energy/fuel

What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking, for heating and for lighting? Write one code in each box.

Note: -Wood (4), coal (5) and animal dung (7) cannot be used for lighting
-Candles (6) cannot be used for cooking or heating

Cooking
 1 = Electricity
 2 = Gas
 3 = Paraffin
 4 = Wood
 5 = Coal
 6 = Candles
 7 = Animal dung
 8 = Solar
 9 = Other (specify) _____

Heating
 1 = Electricity
 2 = Gas
 3 = Paraffin
 4 = Wood
 5 = Coal
 6 = Candles
 7 = Animal dung
 8 = Solar
 9 = Other (specify) _____

Lighting
 1 = Electricity
 2 = Gas
 3 = Paraffin
 4 = Wood

/>5 = Coal
6 = Candles
7 = Animal dung
8 = Solar
9 = Other (specify) _____</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Electricity
2	Gas
3	Paraffin
4	Wood
5	Coal
7	Animal dung
8	Solar
9	Other

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A029 ZA01A030 ZA01A031">Question H-28 -- Energy/fuel

"What type of energy/fuel does this household MAINLY use for cooking, heating and for lighting?"

There are three boxes to be filled in for this question. Note that certain fuels cannot be used for certain purposes.

If e.g. electricity is used for cooking, heating and lighting, write "1" in each box.

If e.g. the household mainly uses wood for cooking, coal for heating and candles for lighting, write "4", "5" and "6" in the respective boxes.

If the electricity is not from a service provider but from a private source, e.g. a small private generator or solar panel, write code 9 and specify.

When you specify the energy used, do not write in the box; instead write on the dotted line.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the type of energy source used for cooking.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_FUELHT: Fuel for heating

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A029 ZA01A030 ZA01A031">H-28. Energy/fuel</div class="i1">What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking, for heating and for lighting? Write one code in each box.</div>
Note:</div>-Wood (4), coal (5) and animal dung (7) cannot be used for lighting</div>-Candles (6) cannot be used for cooking or heating</div>_ Cooking</div>1 = Electricity</div>2 = Gas</div>3 = Paraffin</div>4 = Wood</div>5 = Coal</div>6 = Candles</div>7 = Animal dung</div>8 = Solar</div>9 = Other (specify) _____</div>_ Heating</div>1 = Electricity</div>2 = Gas</div>3 = Paraffin</div>4 = Wood</div>5 = Coal</div>6 = Candles</div>7 = Animal dung</div>8 = Solar</div>9 = Other (specify) _____</div>_ Lighting</div>1 = Electricity</div>2 = Gas</div>3 = Paraffin</div>4 = Wood</div>5 = Coal</div>6 = Candles</div>7 = Animal dung</div>8 = Solar</div>9 = Other (specify) _____</div></div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Electricity
2	Gas
3	Paraffin
4	Wood
5	Coal
7	Animal dung
8	Solar
9	Other

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A029 ZA01A030 ZA01A031">Question H-28 -- Energy/fuel </div>

"What type of energy/fuel does this household MAINLY use for cooking, heating and for lighting?"</div>

There are three boxes to be filled in for this question. Note that certain fuels cannot be used for certain purposes.</div>

If e.g. electricity is used for cooking, heating and lighting, write "1" in each box.</div>

If e.g. the household mainly uses wood for cooking, coal for heating and candles for lighting, write "4", "5" and "6" in the respective boxes.</div>

If the electricity is not from a service provider but from a private source, e.g. a small private generator or solar panel, write code 9 and specify.</div>

When you specify the energy used, do not write in the box; instead write on the dotted line.</div></sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the type of energy source used for heating.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_FUELLT: Source of lighting**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A029 ZA01A030 ZA01A031">H-28. Energy/fuel
<div class="i1">What type of energy/fuel does this household mainly use for cooking, for heating and for lighting? Write one code in each box.
Note:
-Wood (4), coal (5) and animal dung (7) cannot be used for lighting
-Candles (6) cannot be used for cooking or heating
_ Cooking
1 = Electricity
2 = Gas
3 = Paraffin
4 = Wood
5 = Coal
6 = Candles
7 = Animal dung
8 = Solar
9 = Other (specify) _____
_ Heating
1 = Electricity
2 = Gas
3 = Paraffin
4 = Wood
5 = Coal
6 = Candles
7 = Animal dung
8 = Solar
9 = Other (specify) _____
_ Lighting
1 = Electricity
2 = Gas
3 = Paraffin
4 = Wood
5 = Coal
6 = Candles
7 = Animal dung
8 = Solar
9 = Other (specify) _____</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Electricity
2	Gas
3	Paraffin
6	Candles
8	Solar
9	Other

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A029 ZA01A030 ZA01A031">Question H-28 -- Energy/fuel

"What type of energy/fuel does this household MAINLY use for cooking, heating and for lighting?"

There are three boxes to be filled in for this question. Note that certain fuels cannot be used for certain purposes.

If e.g. electricity is used for cooking, heating and lighting, write "1" in each box.

If e.g. the household mainly uses wood for cooking, coal for heating and candles for lighting, write "4", "5" and "6" in the respective boxes.

If the electricity is not from a service provider but from a private source, e.g. a small private generator or solar panel, write code 9 and specify.

When you specify the energy used, do not write in the box; instead write on the dotted line.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the type of energy source used for lighting.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_OWNER: Tenure status**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<sva a="all" v="ZA01A024">H-25. Tenure status<br /><div class="i1">_ What is the tenure status of the household? If
the household uses several dwellings, write the code for the main dwelling in the box.<br />1= Owned and fully paid off<br
/>2 = Owned but not yet paid off<br />3 = Rented<br />4 = Occupied rent-free<br />5 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _
_ _ _ _ _</div><br /></sva>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Owned and fully paid off
2	Owned but not yet paid off
3	Rented
4	Occupied rent-free
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<sva a="all" v="ZA01A024"><span class="em">Question H-25 -- Tenure status</span><br /><br /><span
class="em">"What is the tenure status of the household?"</span><br /><br />Read out the categories to the respondent.
If the household uses several dwellings, fill in the information for the <span class="em">main</span> dwelling.<br /><br
/>Indicate by writing the code for the relevant category.<br /></sva>
```

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the tenure status.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Private households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
-------------------	------------

Household Economic Variables -- HOUSEHOLD

IPUMS

ZA2001A_RADIO: Radio in household**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<sva a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037 ZA01A039">H-29. Household goods<br /><div class="i1">Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item.<br />Radio<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Television<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Computer<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Refrigerator<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Telephone in the dwelling<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Cell-phone<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30</div><br /></sva>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<sva a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037"><span class="em">Question H-29 -- Household goods</span><br /><br /><span class="em">"Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)?"</span><br /><br />Dot Y = "Yes" or N = "No" for radio, television, computer, refrigerator, telephone and cell-phone. All these devices should be in working order. If a person can receive calls but cannot use the phone to make calls this does not count.<br /><br />Dot Y for cell-phone if at least one member of the household owns one or has the right to use one.<br /><br />If <span class="em">more than one</span> household has the right to use the device, e.g. a refrigerator or computer in a common space, dot Y = "Yes". We are not counting the devices, only how many households and persons in the country have access to them.<br /><br />In households where they have <span class="em">neither</span> a telephone (landline) <span class="em">nor</span> a cell-phone, ask Question H-29a about access to a telephone.<br /><br />In households which have either a telephone or a cell-phone, skip H-29a and go to H-30.<br /></sva>
```

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether a radio in working condition exists.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Appliances, Mechanicals, Other Amenities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_TOILET: Type of toilet facility**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A028">H-27. Toilet facility
<div class="i1">_ What is the main type of toilet facility that is available for use by this household? Write only one code in the box.
1 = Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)
2 = Flush toilet (with septic tank)
3 = Chemical toilet
4 = Pit latrine with ventilation (VIP)
5 = Pit latrine without ventilation
6 = Bucket latrine
7 = None</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)
2	Flush toilet (with septic tank)
3	Chemical toilet
4	Pit latrine with ventilation (VIP)
5	Pit latrine without ventilation
6	Bucket latrine
7	None
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A028">Question H-27 -- Toilet facility

"What is the MAIN type of TOILET facility that is available for use by this household?"

[P. 60]

Read out the alternatives. Alternative 1, flush toilet attached to a sewerage system, is found mainly in urban settlements.

Alternative 2 is a flush toilet attached to a septic tank. A septic tank is an underground tank where the organic matter in sewage is dealt with by bacterial activity. It has to be emptied from time to time.

We want only one toilet facility. If there are several types available for the household, indicate the one that is mostly used.
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the main type of toilet facility available for use.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary

Dwelling Characteristics Variables -- HOUSEHOLD

IPUMS

ZA2001A_TV: Television**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<sva a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037 ZA01A039">H-29. Household goods<br /><div class="i1">Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item.<br />Radio<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Television<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Computer<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Refrigerator<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Telephone in the dwelling<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Cell-phone<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30</div><br /></sva>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<sva a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037"><span class="em">Question H-29 -- Household goods</span><br /><br /><span class="em">"Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)?"</span><br /><br />Dot Y = "Yes" or N = "No" for radio, television, computer, refrigerator, telephone and cell-phone. All these devices should be in working order. If a person can receive calls but cannot use the phone to make calls this does not count.<br /><br />Dot Y for cell-phone if at least one member of the household owns one or has the right to use one.<br /><br />If <span class="em">more than one</span> household has the right to use the device, e.g. a refrigerator or computer in a common space, dot Y = "Yes". We are not counting the devices, only how many households and persons in the country have access to them.<br /><br />In households where they have <span class="em">neither</span> a telephone (landline) <span class="em">nor</span> a cell-phone, ask Question H-29a about access to a telephone.<br /><br />In households which have either a telephone or a cell-phone, skip H-29a and go to H-30.<br /></sva>
```

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether a television in working condition exists.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Appliances, Mechanicals, Other Amenities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_WATACC: Access to water**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A026 ZA01A027">H-26a. Source of water
<div class="i1">_ What is this household's main source of water for domestic use? Write only one code in the box.
1 = Regional/local water scheme (operated by a Water Service Authority or Provider)
2 = Borehole
3 = Spring
4 = Rain-water tank
5 = Dam / pool / stagnant water
6 = River/stream
7 = Water vendor
8 = Other (specify) _
</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Piped water (tap) inside dwelling
02	Piped water (tap) inside yard
03	Piped water on community stand: distance less than 200m
04	Piped water on community stand: distance greater than 200m
05	Borehole
06	Spring
07	Rainwater tank
08	Dam/pool/stagnant water
09	River/stream
10	Water vendor
11	Other
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A025 ZA01A027">Question H-26-- Piped water

"In which way does this household obtain PIPED WATER for domestic use?"

Please write only one answer.

First ask whether the household has piped water or not. If not, write 1. If they have access to piped water, read out the other categories for the respondent to choose from. Notice that this question includes water piped locally e.g. from a nearby stream or a private borehole. In other words, it focuses on convenience.

The question is asking about water used for household needs, not water used for gardens or cattle.
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A026" v="ZA01A026 ZA01A027">Question H-26a -- Source of water

"What is this household's MAIN source of WATER for domestic use?"

Please indicate only one alternative.

Households who have piped water do not necessarily know where the water comes from. In most cases piped water comes from regional or local water schemes (1), boreholes (2) or springs (3). If the piped water is from a regional or local scheme, this takes precedence, and the respondent should not answer e.g. dam even if the scheme uses a dam. The reason is that this question is interested in the quality of people's water (rather than convenience), and it is assumed that water from a scheme is of good quality. People who do not have access to water from a scheme should indicate one of the other sources -- this assumes they carry water or have local pipework only.

If the respondent is not sure about the source of piped water, ask if they pay the municipality or service provider for water; if "Yes" mark 1. Note however that some people do

receive a certain amount of water free from the municipality, so this is not a foolproof way of knowing.

If the answer is alternative 8 ("Other"), specify beneath the box.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the type of access to water.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_WATPIPE: Access to piped water

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svar a="all" v="ZA01A025 ZA01A027">H-26. Piped water
<div class="i1">_ In which way does this household obtain piped water for domestic use? Write only one code in the box.
1 = No access to piped (tap) water
2 = Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance greater than 200 m from dwelling
3 = Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance less than 200 m from dwelling
4 = Piped (tap) water inside yard
5 = Piped (tap) water inside dwelling</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	No access to piped (tap) water
2	Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance greater than 200m from dwelling
3	Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance less than 200m from dwelling
4	Piped (tap) water inside yard
5	Piped (tap) water inside dwelling
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svar a="all" v="ZA01A025 ZA01A027">Question H-26-- Piped water

"In which way does this household obtain PIPED WATER for domestic use?"

Please write only one answer.

First ask whether the household has piped water or not. If not, write 1. If they have access to piped water, read out the other categories for the respondent to choose from. Notice that this question includes water piped locally e.g. from a nearby stream or a private borehole. In other words, it focuses on convenience.

The question is asking about water used for household needs, not water

used for gardens or cattle.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates how piped water is obtained for domestic use.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_WATSRC: Source of water

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svar a="all" v="ZA01A026 ZA01A027">H-26a. Source of water
<div class="i1">_ What is this household's main source of water for domestic use? Write only one code in the box.
1 = Regional/local water scheme (operated by a Water Service Authority or Provider)
2 = Borehole
3 = Spring
4 = Rain-water tank
5 = Dam / pool / stagnant water
6 = River/stream
7 = Water vendor
8 = Other (specify) _____</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Regional/local water scheme (operated by a Water Service Authority or Provider)
2	Borehole
3	Spring
4	Rainwater tank
5	Dam/pool/stagnant water
6	River/stream
7	Water vendor
8	Other
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svar a="ZA01A026" v="ZA01A026 ZA01A027">Question H-26a -- Source of water

"What is this household's MAIN source of WATER for domestic use?"

Please

indicate only one alternative.
Households who have piped water do not necessarily know where the water comes from. In most cases piped water comes from regional or local water schemes (1), boreholes (2) or springs (3). If the piped water is from a regional or local scheme, this takes precedence, and the respondent should not answer e.g. dam even if the scheme uses a dam. The reason is that this question is interested in the quality of people's water (rather than convenience), and it is assumed that water from a scheme is of good quality. People who do not have access to water from a scheme should indicate one of the other sources -- this assumes they carry water or have local pipework only.
If the respondent is not sure about the source of piped water, ask if they pay the municipality or service provider for water; if "Yes" mark 1. Note however that some people do receive a certain amount of water free from the municipality, so this is not a foolproof way of knowing.
If the answer is alternative 8 ("Other"), specify beneath the box.

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the main source of water for domestic use.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_CELL: Cell phone

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037 ZA01A039">H-29. Household goods
<div class="i1">Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item.

Radio
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Television
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Computer
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Refrigerator
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Telephone in the dwelling
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Cell-phone
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037">Question H-29 -- Household goods

"Does the household have any of the following (in working

condition)?"

Dot Y = "Yes" or N = "No" for radio, television, computer, refrigerator, telephone and cell-phone. All these devices should be in working order. If a person can receive calls but cannot use the phone to make calls this does not count.

Dot Y for cell-phone if at least one member of the household owns one or has the right to use one.

If more than one household has the right to use the device, e.g. a refrigerator or computer in a common space, dot Y = "Yes". We are not counting the devices, only how many households and persons in the country have access to them.

In households where they have neither a telephone (landline) nor a cell-phone, ask Question H-29a about access to a telephone.

In households which have either a telephone or a cell-phone, skip H-29a and go to H-30.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether a cell phone in working condition exists.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_COMPUTER: Computer

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svar a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037 ZA01A039">H-29. Household goods
<div class="i1">Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item.
Radio
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Television
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Computer
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Refrigerator
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Telephone in the dwelling
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Cell-phone
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svar a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037">Question H-29 -- Household goods

"Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)?"

Dot Y = "Yes" or N = "No" for radio, television, computer, refrigerator, telephone and cell-phone. All these devices should be in working order. If a person can receive calls but cannot use the phone to make calls this

does not count. Dot Y for cell-phone if at least one member of the household owns one or has the right to use one. If more than one household has the right to use the device, e.g. a refrigerator or computer in a common space, dot Y = "Yes". We are not counting the devices, only how many households and persons in the country have access to them. In households where they have neither a telephone (landline) nor a cell-phone, ask Question H-29a about access to a telephone. In households which have either a telephone or a cell-phone, skip H-29a and go to H-30.

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether a computer in working condition exists.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Appliances, Mechanicals, Other Amenities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_GARBAGE: Refuse disposal

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

H-30. Refuse or rubbish
 How is the refuse or rubbish of this household mainly disposed of? Write only one code in the box.
 1 = Removed by local authority at least once a week
 2 = Removed by local authority less often
 3 = Communal refuse dump
 4 = Own refuse dump
 5 = No rubbish disposal
 6 = Other (specify) _____

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Removed by local authority at least once a week
2	Removed by local authority less often
3	Communal refuse dump
4	Own refuse dump
5	No rubbish disposal
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

Question H-30 -- Refuse or rubbish
 "How is the refuse or rubbish of this household MAINLY disposed of?"
 Indicate only

class="em">one type of refuse removal. If there are several, choose the main way.

If alternative 6 ("other"), specify on the dotted line.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates how the refuse or rubbish is mainly disposed.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_INCH: Annual household income

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A042 ZA01A474 ZA01A475">Ask of everyone
</svar></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A042 ZA01A475">P-22. Income category
<div class="i1">_ _ What is the income category that best describes the gross income of (this person) before tax? Choose from the table below the code that corresponds to the income level. A monthly income of R1 500 is code 04 and an annual income of R25 000 is code 05.
Monthly
01 = No income
02 = R 1 -- R 400
03 = R 401 -- R 800
04 = R 801 -- R 1 600
05 = R 1 601 -- R 3 200
06 = R 3 201 -- R 6 400
07 = R 6 401 -- R 12 800
08 = R 12 801 -- R 25 600
09 = R 25 601 -- R 51 200
10 = R 51 201 -- R 102 400
11 = R 102 401 -- R 204 800
12 = R 204 801 or more
Annual
01 = No income
02 = R 1 -- R 4 800
03 = R 4 801 -- R 9 600
04 = R 9 601 -- R 19 200
05 = R 19 201 -- R 38 400
06 = R 38 401 -- R 76 800
07 = R 76 801 -- R 153 600
08 = R 153 601 -- R 307 200
09 = R 307 201 -- R 614 400
10 = R 614 401 -- R 1 228 800
11 = R 1 228 801 -- R 2 457 600
12 = R 2 457 601 or more</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	No income
02	R 1-R 4 800
03	R 4 801-R 9 600
04	R 9 601-R 19 200
05	R 19 201-R 38 400
06	R 38 401-R 76 800

07	R 76 801-R 153 600
08	R 153 601-R 307 200
09	R 307 201-R 614 400
10	R 614 401-R 1 228 800
11	R 1 228 801-R 2 457 600
12	R 2 457 601 or more
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svr v="ZA01A018 ZA01A042">Household
A household is a group of people who live together, and provide themselves jointly with food or other essentials for living, or a single person who lives alone. For a de facto census only people in the household on census night are counted as part of the household.

Notice that a household is not necessarily the same as a family.
</svr></p>

<p><svr a="all" v="ZA01A475 ZA01A042">Question P-22 -- Income category

"What is the income category that best describes the gross income of (the person) before tax?"

Read the categories out to the first respondent.

Identify the income from one of the two tables, and enter the code. Both tables are provided so that people can answer in terms of monthly or annual income. The resulting code will be the same, e.g:
<div class="i1">an annual income level of R20 000 is category 05.
a monthly income of R3000 is also category 05.</div>

The reference period for annual income is 1 October 2000 until 31 September 2001, and for monthly income September 2001.

Gross income means income before tax or deductions.

Income from investments, private business, etc. should be included. Income from the sale of home-grown produce or home-brewed beer or cattle should also be included. If any of these activities have brought in income for the household as a whole rather than for a particular person, simply add the amount to the income of someone in the household.

If the household has received remittances or payments e.g. from a person working or living elsewhere, add this income to the total of someone, e.g. the head of the household.

[P. 56]

Even a small child can have an income in the form of a child maintenance grant.

It is not necessary to be very exact because the income categories are relatively broad. If the income varies during the year, take the average.

You can show the prompt card on the back of the 09 book to help the respondent to identify the total income. The prompt card is useful when people do not want to say their income aloud in front of other household members.
</svr>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the annual household income. It is calculated by adding together the individual incomes of all members of the household.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Private households and non-institutional collective living quarters [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Economic Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_PHONE: Telephone

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<sva a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037 ZA01A039">H-29. Household goods<br /><div class="i1">Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item.<br />Radio<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Television<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Computer<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Refrigerator<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Telephone in the dwelling<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Cell-phone<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30</div><br /></sva>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<sva a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037"><span class="em">Question H-29 -- Household goods</span><br /><br /><span class="em">"Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)?"</span><br /><br />Dot Y = "Yes" or N = "No" for radio, television, computer, refrigerator, telephone and cell-phone. All these devices should be in working order. If a person can receive calls but cannot use the phone to make calls this does not count.<br /><br />Dot Y for cell-phone if at least one member of the household owns one or has the right to use one.<br /><br />If <span class="em">more than one</span> household has the right to use the device, e.g. a refrigerator or computer in a common space, dot Y = "Yes". We are not counting the devices, only how many households and persons in the country have access to them.<br /><br />In households where they have <span class="em">neither</span> a telephone (landline) <span class="em">nor</span> a cell-phone, ask Question H-29a about access to a telephone.<br /><br />In households which have either a telephone or a cell-phone, skip H-29a and go to H-30.<br /></sva>
```

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether a telephone in working condition exists.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_PHONEAC: Access to telephone

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva a="ZA01A038" v="ZA01A038 ZA01A039">H-29a. Access to telephone (If no to "telephone" and "cell-phone" in H-28)
<div class="i1">_ Where do members of this household mainly use a telephone? Write only one code in the box.
1 = At a neighbour nearby
2 = At a public telephone nearby
3 = At another location nearby
4 = At another location, not nearby
5 = No access to a telephone</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	At a neighbour nearby
2	At a public telephone nearby
3	At another location nearby
4	At another location, not nearby
5	No access to a telephone
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A038 ZA01A039">Question H-29a -- Access to telephone
Ask of households which have neither a telephone in the house nor a cell-phone.

"Where do members of this household MAINLY use a telephone?"

There are 5 alternatives; choose one on the basis of the answer given and write it in the box. "Nearby" is to be defined quite subjectively.

If the household can use a telephone at a person's workplace, dot alternative 2, 3.or 4.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the household's access to a telephone.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Households with no telephone and no cellphone [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_PHONETY: Type of telephone access

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037 ZA01A039">H-29. Household goods
<div class="i1">Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item.
Radio
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Television
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Computer
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Refrigerator
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Telephone in the dwelling
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
Cell-phone
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30</div>
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="ZA01A038" v="ZA01A038 ZA01A039">H-29a. Access to telephone (If no to "telephone" and "cell-phone" in H-28)
<div class="i1">_ Where do members of this household mainly use a telephone? Write only one code in the box.
1 = At a neighbour nearby
2 = At a public telephone nearby
3 = At another location nearby
4 = At another location, not nearby
5 = No access to a telephone</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Telephone in dwelling and cell-phone
2	Telephone in dwelling only
3	Cell-phone only
4	At a neighbour nearby
5	At a public telephone nearby
6	At another location nearby
7	At another location, not nearby
8	No access to a telephone
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A038 ZA01A039">Question H-29a -- Access to telephone
Ask of households which have neither a telephone in the house nor a cell-phone.

"Where do members of this household MAINLY use a telephone?"

There are 5 alternatives; choose one on the basis of the answer given and write it in the box. "Nearby" is to be defined quite subjectively.

If the household can use a telephone at a person's workplace, dot alternative 2, 3.or 4.
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the type of phone service available.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Private households and non-institutional collective living quarters [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Utilities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_RACEH: Majority race/ethnicity of household**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A041 ZA01A407">P-04. Relationship
<div class="i1">__ What is (the person's) relationship to the head or acting head of the household? The head or acting head is the person listed in row 1 (of the first questionnaire, if more than one questionnaire has been completed for this household). See definition of head in column P-00. Write the appropriate code in the boxes.
01 = Head/acting head
02 = Husband/wife/partner
03 = Son/daughter
04 = Adopted child
05 = Stepchild
06 = Brother/sister
07 = Parent
08 = Parent-in-law
09 = Grand/greatgrand child
10 = Son/daughter-in-law
11 = Brother/sister-in-law
12 = Other relative
13 = Non related person</div>
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A410" v="ZA01A041 ZA01A410">P-06. Population group
<div class="i1">_ How would (the person) describe him/herself in terms of population group?
1 = Black African
2 = Coloured
3 = Indian or Asian
4 = White
5 = Other (specify) _____</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Black African
2	Coloured
3	Indian or Asian
4	White

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A410 ZA01A041">Question P-06 -- Population group

 "How would (the person) describe him/herself in terms of population group?"

 Read the categories to the respondent.

 Ask for everybody even if the population group seems obvious. Remember also that persons of different population groups do sometimes form part of the same household, so you cannot assume the population group of any household member.

 There are also cases where the answer may not be not straightforward. Not everyone falls clearly into one of the four categories. The decision always rests with the respondent. Do not suggest anything. For example, the head of the household may be black African and the spouse may be white. They must decide whether or not to describe the children as coloured.

[P. 39]

 That is their choice. Under no circumstances may the response be queried; it should be accepted as a fact.

 The category "Other" is for people who do not see themselves as belonging to any of the four categories listed. In this case write the response in small capital letters (away from the boxes) on the dotted line, and write "5" in the box.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the majority race/ethnicity of the household.

UNIVERSE
South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_REFRIG: Refrigerator

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<sva a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037 ZA01A039">H-29. Household goods<br /><div class="i1">Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)? Dot the appropriate box for each item.<br />Radio<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Television<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Computer<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Refrigerator<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Telephone in the dwelling<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />Cell-phone<br />[] Y = Yes<br />[] N = No<br />If yes to telephone or cellphone go to H-30</div><br /></sva>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<sva a="all" v="ZA01A032 ZA01A033 ZA01A034 ZA01A035 ZA01A036 ZA01A037"><span class="em">Question H-29 -- Household goods</span><br /><br /><span class="em">"Does the household have any of the following (in working condition)?"</span><br /><br />Dot Y = "Yes" or N = "No" for radio, television, computer, refrigerator, telephone and cell-phone. All these devices should be in working order. If a person can receive calls but cannot use the phone to make calls this does not count.<br /><br />Dot Y for cell-phone if at least one member of the household owns one or has the right to use one.<br /><br />If <span class="em">more than one</span> household has the right to use the device, e.g. a refrigerator or computer in a common space, dot Y = "Yes". We are not counting the devices, only how many households and persons in the country have access to them.<br /><br />In households where they have <span class="em">neither</span> a telephone (landline) <span class="em">nor</span> a cell-phone, ask Question H-29a about access to a telephone.<br /><br />In households which have either a telephone or a cell-phone, skip H-29a and go to H-30.<br /></sva>
```

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether a refrigerator in working condition exists.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Non-homeless households [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Appliances, Mechanicals, Other Amenities Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_WTHH: Household weight**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Continuous Decimal: 6 Width: 8 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the household weight.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

This is a 8-digit numeric variable with 6 implied decimal places

ZA2001A_QDWMULT: Flag for more than one dwelling**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation

1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for more than one dwelling.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QDWTYP1: Flag for type of living quarters (comprehensive)

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for living quarters.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QDWTY2: Flag for type of housing unit or institution**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for type of housing unit/institution.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QFUELCK: Flag for fuel for cooking**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for the type of energy/fuel source used for cooking.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QOWNER: Flag for tenure status

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for tenure status.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QROOMS: Flag for number of rooms

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for number of rooms.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QSHARERM: Flag for sharing one room**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for whether there are two or more households sharing a single room.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QTOILET: Flag for type of toilet facility**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation

1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for the main type of toilet facility available for use.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QWATPIPE: Flag for access to piped water

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for how piped water is obtained for domestic use.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QWATSRG: Flag for source of water**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for the main source of water for domestic use.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QCELL: Flag for cell phone**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for whether a cell phone in working condition exists.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QCOMPUTE: Flag for computer

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for whether a computer in working condition exists.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QFUELHT: Flag for fuel for heating

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for the type of energy/fuel source used for heating.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QFUELLT: Flag for source of lighting**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for the type of energy/fuel source used for lighting.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QGARBAGE: Flag for refuse disposal**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation

1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for how the refuse or rubbish is mainly disposed.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QPHONE: Flag for telephone

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for whether a telephone in working condition exists.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QPHONEAC: Flag for access to telephone**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for access to a telephone by where a telephone is mainly used.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QRADIO: Flag for radio in household**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for whether a radio in working condition exists.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QREFRIG: Flag for refrigerator

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for whether a refrigerator in working condition exists.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QTV: Flag for television

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for whether a television in working condition exists.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Household Imputation Flags Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_MORTN: Number of mortality records in input data**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	0
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the number of mortality records listed.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Other Household Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

ZA2001A_STRATA: Strata**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-H-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 5 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

This variable is the strata identifier for the sample. Strata is a constructed variable that captures implicit geographic stratification resulting from the sample design. It is created by assigning a unique identifier to groups of between 10 and 19 adjacent households. Additional documentation is available on the Variance Estimation page.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All households

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Geography: O-Z Variables -- HOUSEHOLD	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

This is a 5-digit numeric variable with 0 implied decimal places

MOMLOC: Mother's location in household**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

MOMLOC is a constructed variable that indicates whether or not the person's mother lived in the same household and, if so, gives the person number of the mother (see PERNUM). MOMLOC makes it easy for researchers to link the characteristics of children and their (probable) mothers.

The method by which probable child-mother links are identified is described in PARRULE.

The general design of MOMLOC and other constructed variables follows the methods developed for IPUMS-USA "Family Interrelationships," but the details vary significantly. For more details on the construction of MOMLOC, see the Comparability section of PARRULE and this paper on IPUMSI family linking methodology.

Note: MOMLOC identifies social relationships (such as stepmother and adopted mother) as well as biological relationships. The variable STEPMOM is designed to identify some of these social relationships. To restrict MOMLOC to biological mothers, such as for own children fertility estimation, MOMLOC should be reset to zero when STEPMOM is greater than zero.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

MOMLOC is a 3-digit numeric variable.

Codes0 = No mother of this person present in the household.

1 or higher = The person number of this person's mother

PARRULE: Rule for linking parent**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
-------	----------

00	No parent of person in household
11	Link to head or spouse, unambiguous
12	Link to head or spouse, ambiguous
21	Child-Grandchild, within empirical child cap
22	Child-Grandchild, within constructed child cap
23	Child-Grandchild, exceeds child cap
31	Specified Other Relatives, within empirical child cap
32	Specified Other Relatives, within constructed child cap
33	Specified Other Relatives, exceeds child cap
41	Other Relatives, within empirical child cap
42	Other Relatives, within constructed child cap
51	Non-Relatives, within empirical child cap
52	Non-Relatives, within constructed child cap

description

DEFINITION

PARRULE describes the criteria by which the IPUMS International variables MOMLOC and POPLOC linked the person to a probable mother and/or father.

IPUMS International establishes child-parent links according to five basic rules, and PARRULE gives the number of the rule that applied to the link in question. A link to any parent automatically generates a second link to that parent's spouse or partner, so only one rule is needed to describe both MOMLOC and POPLOC.

The design of the interrelationship variables is described in this paper on IPUMSI family linking methodology.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

PERNUM: Person number

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 4 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

PERNUM numbers all persons within each household consecutively (starting with "1" for the first person record of each household). When combined with SAMPLE and SERIAL, PERNUM uniquely identifies each person in the IPUMS-International database.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Person Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

PERNUM is a 4-digit numeric variable.

PERWT: Person weight

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 2 Width: 8 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

PERWT indicates the number of persons in the actual population represented by the person in the sample.

For the samples that are truly weighted (see the comparability discussion), PERWT must be used to yield accurate statistics for the population.

NOTE: PERWT has 2 implied decimal places. That is, the last two digits of the eight-digit variable are decimal digits, but there is no actual decimal in the data.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Person Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

PERWT is an 8-digit numeric variable with 2 implied decimal places. See the variable description.

POLYMAL: Man with more than one wife linked

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No more than one wife linked via SPLOC
1	More than one wife linked via SPLOC

description

DEFINITION

POLYMAL indicates if a man had more than one wife linked to him in the constructed IPUMS variable SPLOC -- Spouse's Location in Household.

The point of POLYMAL is to facilitate using SPLOC in samples that identify polygamy. Some statistical matching procedures expect to find only one matching record for each subject record.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

POPLOC: Father's location in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

POPLOC is a constructed variable that indicates whether or not the person's father lived in the same household and, if so, gives the person number of the father (see PERNUM). POPLOC makes it easy for researchers to link the characteristics of children and their (probable) fathers.

The method by which probable child-father links are identified is described in PARRULE.

The general design of POPLOC and other constructed variables follows the methods developed for IPUMS-USA "Family Interrelationships," but the details vary significantly. For more details on the construction of POPLOC, see the Comparability section of PARRULE and this paper on IPUMSI family linking methodology.

Note: POPLOC identifies social relationships (such as stepfather and adopted father) as well as biological relationships. The variable STEPPPOP is designed to identify some of these social relationships. To restrict POPLOC to biological mothers, such as for own children fertility estimation, POPLOC should be reset to zero when STEPPPOP is greater than zero.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

POPLOC is a 3-digit numeric variable.

Codes0 = No father of this person present in the household.

1 or higher = The person number of this person's father

SPLOC: Spouse's location in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

SPLOC is a constructed variable that indicates whether or not the person's spouse lived in the same household and, if so, gives the person number (PERNUM) of the spouse. SPLOC makes it easy for researchers to link the characteristics of (probable) spouses.

The method by which probable spouse-spouse links are identified is described in SPRULE.

The general design of SPLOC and other constructed variables is modeled on the methods developed for IPUMS-USA "Family Interrelationships", but the details vary significantly. For more details on the construction of SPLOC, see the Comparability section of SPRULE and this paper on IPUMSI family linking methodology.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

SPLOC is a 3-digit numeric variable.

Codes0 = No spouse of this person present in the household.

1 or higher = The person number of this person's spouse

SPRULE: Rule for linking spouse

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	No spouse present
01	Rule 1: strong relationship pairing, couple adjacent
02	Rule 2: strong relationship pairing, couple not adjacent
03	Rule 3: weak relationship pairing, couple adjacent
04	Rule 4: weak relationship pairing, couple not adjacent
05	Rule 5: weak consensual union pairings
06	Rule 6: sample-specific rules (usually child-to-child)

description

DEFINITION

SPRULE explains the criteria by which the IPUMS-International variable SPLOC linked the person to his/her probable spouse.

IPUMS International establishes spouse-spouse links according to five basic rules, and SPRULE gives the number of the rule that applied to the link in question. A sixth rule identifies sample-specific linking procedures only imposed in selected instances.

The design of the interrelationship variables is described in this paper on IPUMSI family linking methodology.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

STEPMOM: Probable stepmother

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	Biological mother or no mother present
1	Mother has no children born or surviving
2	Child reports mother is deceased
3	Explicitly identified step relationship
4	Mother reports no children in the home
5	Age difference implausible
6	Child exceeds known fertility of mother

description

DEFINITION

STEPMOM indicates whether a person's mother, as identified by MOMLOC, was most probably not the person's biological mother. Non-zero values of STEPMOM explain why it is probable that the person's mother was a step- or adopted mother. A value of 0 indicates no likely stepmother because (1) the mother identified in MOMLOC was probably the biological mother or (2) there is no mother of this person present in the household.

The codes for STEPMOM are as follows:

- 0 = Biological mother or no mother of this person present in household.
- 1 = Mother has no children born or surviving.
- 2 = Child reports mother is deceased.
- 3 = Explicitly identified relationship (stepchild, adopted child, child of unmarried partner, stepchild/child-in-law).
- 4 = Mother reports no children in the home.
- 5 = Age difference between mother and child was less than 12 or greater than 54 years.
- 6 = Child exceeds known fertility of mother.

In cases where more than one criterion for a likely stepmother is met, STEPMOM will take the value of the criterion with the lowest code. See PARRULE for a description of the linking process.

Users should note that there are many stepmothers and adopted mothers in the population that cannot be identified with information available in the censuses. Therefore, STEPMOM will always under-represent their actual number in the population.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

STEPPOP: Probable stepfather

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	Biological father or no father present
1	Child reports father is deceased
2	Explicitly identified step relationship
3	Age difference implausible
4	Spouse of mother
5	Identified as adopted
6	Surname difference -- male child or never-married female

description

DEFINITION

STEPPOP indicates whether a person's father, as identified by POPLOC, was most probably not the person's biological father. Non-zero values of STEPPPOP explain why it is probable that the person's father was a step- or adopted father. A value of 0 indicates no likely stepfather because (1) the father identified in POPLOC was probably the biological father or (2) there is no father of this person present in the household.

The codes for STEPPPOP are as follows:

- 0 = Biological father or no father of this person present in household.
- 1 = Child reports father is deceased.
- 2 = Explicitly identified relationship (stepchild, adopted child, child of unmarried partner; stepchild/child-in-law).
- 3 = Age difference between father and child was less than 12 or greater than 54 years.

In cases where more than one criterion for a likely stepfather is met, STEPPPOP will take the value of the criterion with the lowest code. See PARRULE for a description of the linking process.

Users should note that there are many stepfathers and adopted fathers in the population that cannot be identified with information available in the censuses. Therefore, STEPPPOP will always under-represent their actual number in the population.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

AGE: Age

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
000	Less than 1 year
001	1 year
002	2 years
003	3
004	4
005	5
006	6
007	7
008	8
009	9
010	10
011	11
012	12
013	13
014	14
015	15
016	16
017	17
018	18
019	19
020	20
021	21
022	22
023	23
024	24
025	25
026	26
027	27
028	28
029	29
030	30
031	31

032	32
033	33
034	34
035	35
036	36
037	37
038	38
039	39
040	40
041	41
042	42
043	43
044	44
045	45
046	46
047	47
048	48
049	49
050	50
051	51
052	52
053	53
054	54
055	55
056	56
057	57
058	58
059	59
060	60
061	61
062	62
063	63
064	64
065	65
066	66
067	67
068	68
069	69
070	70

071	71
072	72
073	73
074	74
075	75
076	76
077	77
078	78
079	79
080	80
081	81
082	82
083	83
084	84
085	85
086	86
087	87
088	88
089	89
090	90
091	91
092	92
093	93
094	94
095	95
096	96
097	97
098	98
099	99
100	100+
999	Not reported/missing

description

DEFINITION

AGE gives age in years as of the person's last birthday prior to or on the day of enumeration.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ELDCH: Age of eldest own child in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	0
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
25	25

26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30
31	31
32	32
33	33
34	34
35	35
36	36
37	37
38	38
39	39
40	40
41	41
42	42
43	43
44	44
45	45
46	46
47	47
48	48
49	49
50	50 or older
98	One or more children have unknown age
99	No own child in household

description

DEFINITION

ELDCH gives the age of the person's oldest own child living in the household with her or him. These include all children linked to the person via the constructed IPUMS pointer variables MOMLOC or POPLOC -- mother's and father's location in the household.

ELDCH is top-coded at age 50 or older.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
--------------------------	-------------------

Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON

IPUMS

FAMSIZE: Number of own family members in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 4 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0001	1 family member present
0002	2 family members present
0003	3 family members present
0004	4
0005	5
0006	6
0007	7
0008	8
0009	9
0010	10
0011	11
0012	12
0013	13
0014	14
0015	15
0016	16
0017	17
0018	18
0019	19
0020	20
0021	21
0022	22
0023	23
0024	24
0025	25
0026	26
0027	27

0028	28
0029	29
0030	30
0031	31
0032	32
0033	33
0034	34
0035	35
0036	36
0037	37
0038	38
0039	39
0040	40
0041	41
0042	42
0043	43
0044	44
0045	45
0046	46
0047	47
0048	48
0049	49
0050	50
0051	51
0052	52
0053	53
0054	54
0055	55
0056	56
0057	57
0058	58
0059	59
0060	60
0061	61
0062	62
0063	63
0064	64
0065	65
0066	66

0067	67
0068	68
0069	69
0070	70
0071	71
0072	72
0073	73
0074	74
0075	75
0076	76
0077	77
0078	78
0079	79
0080	80
0081	81
0082	82
0083	83
0084	84
0085	85
0086	86
0087	87
0088	88
0089	89
0090	90
0091	91
0092	92
0093	93
0094	94
0095	95
0096	96
0097	97
0098	98
0099	99 or more persons

description

DEFINITION

FAMSIZE counts the number of the person's own family members living in the household with her/him, including the person her/himself. These include all persons related to the person by blood, adoption, or marriage as indicated by the census forms or inferred from them.

FAMSIZE is calculated from the units identified in the IPUMS constructed variable FAMUNIT (family unit membership). The primary family is defined as all persons related to the head in the RELATE variable. Secondary families are individuals or groups of persons linked together by the IPUMS constructed pointer variables SPLOC, MOMLOC, and POPLOC (location of spouse, mother, and father).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

FAMUNIT: Family unit membership

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 4 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

FAMUNIT is a constructed variable indicating to which family within the household a person belongs.

All persons related to the household head receive a 1 (see RELATE). Each secondary family or secondary individual receives a higher code. For purposes of FAMUNIT, secondary families are individuals or groups of persons linked together by the IPUMS constructed pointer variables SPLOC, MOMLOC, and POPLOC (location of spouse, mother, and father).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

FAMUNIT is a 4-digit numeric variable.

CodesIf there is only one group of related individuals within the household, all of them will be coded "1;" if there is a second, separate such group listed on the form, all of them will be coded "2," and so on.

NCHILD: Number of own children in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	0
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9 or more children in household

description

DEFINITION

NCHILD provides a count of the person's own children living in the household with her or him. These include all children linked to the person via the constructed IPUMS pointer variables MOMLOC or POPLOC -- mother's and father's location in the household.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

NCHLT5: Number of own children under age 5 in household**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
-------	----------

00	0
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9 or more own children under age 5 in household
98	One or more children have unknown age

description

DEFINITION

NCHLT5 provides a count of the person's own children under age five living in the household with her or him. These include all children linked to the person via the constructed IPUMS pointer variables MOMLOC or POPLOC -- mother's and father's location in the household.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

POLY2ND: Woman is second or higher order wife

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	Person is not the 2nd or higher order wife linked via SPLOC
1	Person is the 2nd or higher order wife linked via SPLOC

description

DEFINITION

POLY2ND indicates if a woman was the second or higher order wife linked to a husband in the constructed IPUMS variable

SPLOC -- Spouse's Location in Household. The variable does not suggest the actual marital order of wives, only their relative positions in the person order of the household as it was enumerated.

The point of POLY2ND is to facilitate using SPLOC in samples that identify polygamy. Some statistical matching procedures expect to find only one matching record for each subject record.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

RELATE: Relationship to household head [general version]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Head
2	Spouse/partner
3	Child
4	Other relative
5	Non-relative
6	Other relative or non-relative
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

RELATE describes the relationship of the individual to the head of household (sometimes called the householder or reference person).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

RELATED: Relationship to household head [detailed version]**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 4 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1000	Head
2000	Spouse/partner
2100	Spouse
2200	Unmarried partner
2210	Civil union
2300	Same-sex spouse/partner
3000	Child
3100	Biological child
3200	Adopted child
3300	Stepchild
3400	Child/child-in-law
3500	Child/child-in-law/grandchild
3600	Child of unmarried partner
4000	Other relative
4100	Grandchild
4110	Grandchild or great grandchild
4120	Great grandchild
4130	Great-great grandchild
4200	Parent/parent-in-law
4210	Parent
4211	Stepparent
4220	Parent-in-law
4300	Child-in-law
4301	Daughter-in-law
4302	Spouse/partner of child
4310	Unmarried partner of child
4400	Sibling/sibling-in-law
4410	Sibling
4420	Stepsibling
4430	Sibling-in-law

4431	Sibling of spouse/partner
4432	Spouse/partner of sibling
4500	Grandparent
4510	Great grandparent
4600	Parent/grandparent/ascendant
4700	Aunt/uncle
4800	Other specified relative
4810	Nephew/niece
4820	Cousin
4830	Sibling's sibling-in-law
4900	Other relative, not elsewhere classified
4910	Other relative with same family name
4920	Other relative with different family name
4930	Other relative, not specified (secondary family)
5000	Non-relative
5100	Friend/guest/visitor/partner
5110	Partner/friend
5111	Friend
5112	Partner/roommate
5113	Housemate/roommate
5120	Visitor
5130	Ex-spouse
5140	Godparent
5150	Godchild
5200	Employee
5210	Domestic employee
5220	Relative of employee, n.s.
5221	Spouse of servant
5222	Child of servant
5223	Other relative of servant
5300	Roomer/boarder/lodger/foster child
5310	Boarder
5311	Boarder or guest
5320	Lodger
5330	Foster child
5340	Tutored/foster child
5350	Tutored child
5400	Employee, boarder, or guest
5500	Other specified non-relative

5510	Agregado
5520	Temporary resident, guest
5600	Group quarters
5610	Group quarters, non-inmates
5620	Institutional inmates
5900	Non-relative, n.e.c.
6000	Other relative or non-relative
9999	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

RELATE describes the relationship of the individual to the head of household (sometimes called the householder or reference person).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

YNGCH: Age of youngest own child in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	0
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9

10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30
31	31
32	32
33	33
34	34
35	35
36	36
37	37
38	38
39	39
40	40
41	41
42	42
43	43
44	44
45	45
46	46
47	47
48	48

49	49
50	50 or older
98	One or more children have unknown age
99	No own child in household

description

DEFINITION

YNGCH gives the age of the person's youngest own child living in the household with her or him. These include all children linked to the person via the constructed IPUMS pointer variables MOMLOC or POPLOC -- mother's and father's location in the household.

YNGCH is top-coded at age 50 or older.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

AGE2: Age, grouped into intervals

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	0 to 4
02	5 to 9
03	10 to 14
04	15 to 19
05	0 to 5
06	6 to 10
07	10 to 15
08	11 to 14
09	15 to 17
10	16 to 19
11	18 to 24
12	20 to 24

13	25 to 29
14	30 to 34
15	35 to 39
16	40 to 44
17	45 to 49
18	50 to 54
19	55 to 59
20	60 to 64
21	65 to 69
22	70 to 74
23	75 to 79
24	80 to 84
25	85+
98	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

AGE2 gives computed years of age grouped into intervals.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

CHBORN: Children ever born

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	No children
01	1 child
02	2 children
03	3

04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30+
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

CHBORN reports the number of children ever born to each woman of whom the question was asked. In most samples, women were to report all live births by all fathers, whether or not the child was still living.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
--------------------------	-------------------

Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON

IPUMS

CHBORNF: Number of female children ever born**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	No children
01	1 child
02	2 children
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26

27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30+
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

CHBORNF indicates the number of female children ever born to a woman. Only live births are counted.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

CHBORNM: Number of male children ever born

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	No children
01	1 child
02	2 children
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11

12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30+
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

CHBORNM indicates the number of male children ever born to a woman. Only live births are counted.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

CHSURV: Children surviving

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	No children
01	1 child
02	2 children
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30+
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

CHSURV reports the number of children born to a woman who were still living at the time of the census.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

CONSENS: Consensual union

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes, in consensual union
2	No, married
8	Unknown
9	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

CONSENS indicates whether the respondent was in a consensual union -- a de facto marriage.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

MARST: Marital status [general version]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Single/never married
2	Married/in union
3	Separated/divorced/spouse absent
4	Widowed
9	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

MARST describes the person's current marital status according to law or custom. Individuals who remarried should report the status relevant to their most recent marriage. Census instructions rarely explicitly limit marital status to strictly legal unions.

Note regarding universe: The lowest age at which a person can be anything but "never married" varies among samples.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

MARSTD: Marital status [detailed version]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
000	NIU (not in universe)
100	Single/never married
110	Engaged
111	Never married and never cohabited

200	Married or consensual union
210	Married, formally
211	Married, civil
212	Married, religious
213	Married, civil and religious
214	Married, civil or religious
215	Married, traditional/customary
216	Married, monogamous
217	Married, polygamous
219	Married, spouse absent (historical samples)
220	Consensual union
300	Separated/divorced/spouse absent
310	Separated or divorced
320	Separated or annulled
330	Separated
331	Separated legally
332	Separated de facto
333	Separated from marriage
334	Separated from consensual union
335	Separated from consensual union or marriage
340	Annulled
350	Divorced
400	Widowed
410	Widowed or divorced
411	Widowed from consensual union or marriage
412	Widowed from marriage
413	Widowed from consensual union
420	Widowed, divorced, or separated
999	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

MARST describes the person's current marital status according to law or custom. Individuals who remarried should report the status relevant to their most recent marriage. Census instructions rarely explicitly limit marital status to strictly legal unions.

Note regarding universe: The lowest age at which a person can be anything but "never married" varies among samples.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

POLYGAM: Polygamous union

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	NIU (not in universe)
01	No, in monogamous union
02	Yes, in polygamous union
03	Man in polygamous union
04	Polygamous man, 2 wives
05	Polygamous man, 3 or more wives
06	Woman in polygamous union
07	Polygamous marriage, 2 wives
08	Polygamous marriage, 3 or more wives
09	First wife
10	Second wife
11	Third or higher order wife
99	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

POLYGAM indicates whether the respondent was in a polygamous union and, in some samples, the number of wives or the rank order of the wife.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

SEX: Sex**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Male
2	Female
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

SEX reports the sex (gender) of the respondent.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

BPLCOUNTRY: Country of birth**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 5 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00000	NIU (not in universe)
10000	Africa
11000	Eastern Africa
11005	British Indian Ocean Territory
11010	Burundi
11020	Comoros

11030	Djibouti
11040	Eritrea
11050	Ethiopia
11051	Ethiopia (including Eritrea)
11060	Kenya
11070	Madagascar
11080	Malawi
11090	Mauritius
11100	Mozambique
11110	Reunion
11120	Rwanda
11130	Seychelles
11140	Somalia
11150	South Sudan
11160	Uganda
11170	Tanzania
11180	Zambia
11190	Zimbabwe
11999	Eastern Africa, other or n.s.
12000	Middle Africa
12010	Angola
12020	Cameroon
12030	Central African Republic
12040	Chad
12050	Congo (Republic of)
12060	Democratic Republic of Congo
12070	Equatorial Guinea
12080	Gabon
12090	Sao Tome and Principe
12999	Middle Africa, other or n.s.
13000	Northern Africa
13010	Algeria
13011	Algeria/Tunisia
13020	Egypt
13021	Egypt/Sudan
13030	Libya
13040	Morocco
13050	Sudan
13060	Tunisia

13070	Western Sahara
13999	Northern Africa, other or n.s.
14000	Southern Africa
14010	Botswana
14020	Lesotho
14030	Namibia
14040	South Africa
14050	Swaziland
14999	Southern Africa, other or n.s.
15000	Western Africa
15010	Benin
15020	Burkina Faso
15021	Upper Volta
15030	Cape Verde
15040	Ivory Coast
15050	Gambia
15060	Ghana
15070	Guinea
15080	Guinea-Bissau
15081	Guinea-Bissau and Cape Verde
15090	Liberia
15100	Mali
15110	Mauritania
15120	Niger
15130	Nigeria
15140	St. Helena and Ascension
15150	Senegal
15160	Sierra Leone
15170	Togo
15180	Canary Islands
15999	West Africa, other or n.s.
19999	Africa, other or n.s.
20000	Americas
21000	Caribbean
21010	Anguilla
21020	Antigua-Barbuda
21030	Aruba
21040	Bahamas
21050	Barbados

21060	British Virgin Islands
21070	Cayman Isles
21080	Cuba
21090	Dominica
21100	Dominican Republic
21110	Grenada
21120	Guadeloupe
21130	Haiti
21140	Jamaica
21150	Martinique
21160	Montserrat
21170	Netherlands Antilles
21180	Puerto Rico
21190	St. Kitts-Nevis
21200	St. Croix
21210	St. John
21220	St. Lucia
21230	St Thomas
21240	St. Vincent
21250	Trinidad and Tobago
21260	Turks and Caicos
21270	U.S. Virgin Islands
21991	Caribbean commonwealth, n.s.
21999	Caribbean, other or n.s.
22000	Central America
22010	Belize/British Honduras
22020	Costa Rica
22030	El Salvador
22040	Guatemala
22050	Honduras
22060	Mexico
22070	Nicaragua
22080	Panama
22081	Panama Canal Zone
22999	Central America, other or n.s.
23000	South America
23010	Argentina
23020	Bolivia
23030	Brazil

23040	Chile
23050	Colombia
23060	Ecuador
23070	Falkland Islands
23080	French Guiana
23090	Guyana/British Guiana
23100	Paraguay
23110	Peru
23120	Suriname
23130	Uruguay
23140	Venezuela
23999	South America, other or n.s.
24000	North America
24010	Bermuda
24020	Canada
24030	Greenland
24040	United States
24999	North America, other or n.s.
29999	Americas, other or n.s.
30000	Asia
31000	Eastern Asia
31010	China
31011	Hong Kong
31012	Macau
31013	Taiwan
31020	Japan
31030	Korea
31031	Korea, DPR (North)
31032	Korea, RO (South)
31040	Mongolia
31999	Eastern Asia, other or n.s.
32000	South-Central Asia
32010	Afghanistan
32020	Bangladesh
32030	Bhutan
32040	India
32041	India/Pakistan
32042	India/Pakistan/Bangladesh/Sri Lanka
32050	Iran

32060	Kazakhstan
32070	Kyrgyzstan
32080	Maldives
32090	Nepal
32100	Pakistan
32101	Pakistan/Bangladesh
32110	Sri Lanka (Ceylon)
32120	Tajikistan
32130	Turkmenistan
32140	Uzbekistan
32999	South-Central Asia, other or n.s.
33000	South-Eastern Asia
33010	Brunei
33020	Cambodia (Kampuchea)
33030	East Timor
33040	Indonesia
33050	Laos
33060	Malaysia
33070	Myanmar (Burma)
33080	Philippines
33090	Singapore
33100	Thailand
33110	Vietnam
33999	South-Eastern Asia, other or n.s.
34000	Western Asia
34010	Armenia
34020	Azerbaijan
34030	Bahrain
34040	Cyprus
34050	Georgia
34051	Abkhazia
34052	South Ossetia
34060	Iraq
34070	Israel
34071	Israel/Palestine
34080	Jordan
34090	Kuwait
34100	Lebanon
34110	Palestine

34111	West Bank
34112	Gaza Strip
34120	Oman
34130	Qatar
34140	Saudi Arabia
34150	Syria
34151	Syria/Lebanon
34160	Turkey
34170	United Arab Emirates
34180	Yemen
34991	Middle East
34999	Western Asia, other or n.s.
39999	Asia, other or n.s.
40000	Europe
41000	Eastern Europe
41010	Belarus
41020	Bulgaria
41021	Bulgaria/Greece
41030	Czech Republic/Czechoslovakia
41040	Hungary
41050	Poland
41060	Moldova
41070	Romania
41080	Russia/USSR
41090	Slovakia
41100	Ukraine
41991	Albania, Bulgaria, Czech, Hungary, Romania, Yugoslavia
41992	Central-Eastern Europe
41999	Eastern Europe, other or n.s.
42000	Northern Europe
42010	Denmark
42020	Estonia
42030	Faroe Islands
42040	Finland
42050	Iceland
42060	Ireland
42070	Latvia
42080	Lithuania
42090	Norway

42100	Svalbard and Jan Mayen Islands
42110	Sweden
42120	United Kingdom
42999	Northern Europe, other or n.s.
43000	Southern Europe
43010	Albania
43020	Andorra
43030	Bosnia and Herzegovina
43040	Croatia
43050	Gibraltar
43060	Greece
43070	Italy
43071	Vatican City
43080	Malta
43090	Portugal
43100	San Marino
43110	Slovenia
43120	Spain
43121	Spain/Portugal
43130	Macedonia
43140	Yugoslavia
43141	Montenegro
43142	Serbia
43143	Kosovo
43144	Serbia and Montenegro
43991	Gibraltar/Malta
43992	Portugal/Greece
43993	Italy, Holy See, San Marino
43999	Southern Europe, other or n.s.
44000	Western Europe
44010	Austria
44020	Belgium
44021	Belgium/Luxemburg
44022	Belgium/Netherlands/Luxemburg
44030	France
44040	Germany
44042	West Germany
44043	Germany/Austria
44044	Mecklenburg-Schwerin

44050	Liechtenstein
44060	Luxembourg
44070	Monaco
44080	Netherlands
44090	Switzerland
44991	Belgium, Denmark, Luxembourg, Netherlands
44999	Western Europe, other or n.s.
49992	European Union
49993	European Union (original 15)
49994	Other European Union (not original 15)
49999	Europe, other or n.s.
50000	Oceania
51000	Australia and New Zealand
51010	Australia
51020	New Zealand
51030	Norfolk Islands
51999	Australia and New Zealand, n.s.
52000	Melanesia
52010	Fiji
52020	New Caledonia
52030	Papua New Guinea
52040	Solomon Islands
52050	Vanuatu (New Hebrides)
52999	Melanesia, n.s.
53000	Micronesia
53010	Kiribati
53020	Marshall Islands
53030	Nauru
53040	Northern Mariana Isls.
53050	Palau
53060	Federated States of Micronesia
53999	Micronesia, other or n.s.
54000	Polynesia
54010	Cook Islands
54020	French Polynesia
54030	Niue
54040	Pitcairn Island
54050	Western Samoa
54060	Eastern Samoa

54070	Tokelau
54080	Tonga
54090	Tuvalu
54100	Wallis and Futuna Isls.
54999	Polynesia, other or n.s.
55000	U.S. Pacific Possessions
55010	American Samoa
55020	Baker Island
55030	Guam
55040	Howland Island
55050	Johnston Atoll
55060	Kingman Reef
55070	Midway Islands
55080	Wake Island
55999	US Pacific, other or n.s.
59999	Oceania, other or n.s.
80000	AT SEA
90000	Other countries n.s.
99999	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

BPLCOUNTRY indicates the person's country of birth.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

BPLZA: Province of birth, South Africa

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Western Cape
02	Eastern Cape
03	Northern Cape
04	Free State
05	KwaZulu-Natal
06	North West
07	Gauteng
08	Mpumalanga
09	Limpopo
97	Foreign country
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

BPLZA indicates the province in South Africa in which the person was born.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

CITIZEN: Citizenship

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Citizen, not specified
2	Citizen by birth
3	Naturalized citizen
4	Not a citizen
5	Without citizenship, stateless

8	Unknown
9	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

CITIZEN indicates the person's citizenship status within the country in which they were enumerated.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

LASTBMO: Month of last birth

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	January
02	February
03	March
04	April
05	May
06	June
07	July
08	August
09	September
10	October
11	November
12	December
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

LASTBMO indicates the month of birth of the last child born by the respondent. The data refer to live births.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

LASTBYR: Year of last birth

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 4 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1900	1900
1901	1901
1902	1902
1903	1903
1904	1904
1905	1905
1906	1906
1907	1907
1908	1908
1909	1909
1910	1910
1911	1911
1912	1912
1913	1913
1914	1914
1915	1915
1916	1916
1917	1917
1918	1918

1919	1919
1920	1920
1921	1921
1922	1922
1923	1923
1924	1924
1925	1925
1926	1926
1927	1927
1928	1928
1929	1929
1930	1930
1931	1931
1932	1932
1933	1933
1934	1934
1935	1935
1936	1936
1937	1937
1938	1938
1939	1939
1940	1940
1941	1941
1942	1942
1943	1943
1944	1944
1945	1945
1946	1946
1947	1947
1948	1948
1949	1949
1950	1950
1951	1951
1952	1952
1953	1953
1954	1954
1955	1955
1956	1956
1957	1957

1958	1958
1959	1959
1960	1960
1961	1961
1962	1962
1963	1963
1964	1964
1965	1965
1966	1966
1967	1967
1968	1968
1969	1969
1970	1970
1971	1971
1972	1972
1973	1973
1974	1974
1975	1975
1976	1976
1977	1977
1978	1978
1979	1979
1980	1980
1981	1981
1982	1982
1983	1983
1984	1984
1985	1985
1986	1986
1987	1987
1988	1988
1989	1989
1990	1990
1991	1991
1992	1992
1993	1993
1994	1994
1995	1995
1996	1996

1997	1997
1998	1998
1999	1999
2000	2000
2001	2001
2002	2002
2003	2003
2004	2004
2005	2005
2006	2006
2007	2007
2008	2008
2009	2009
2010	2010
2011	2011
2012	2012
2013	2013
2014	2014
2015	2015
2016	2016
2017	2017
2018	2018
2019	2019
2020	2020
9998	Unknown
9999	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

LASTBYR indicates the year of birth of the last child born by the respondent. The data refer to live births.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

MORTFAT: Mortality status of father**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Alive
2	Dead
7	Does not know
8	Missing
9	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

MORTFAT indicates whether the person's biological father was still living.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

MORTMOT: Mortality status of mother**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Alive
2	Dead
7	Does not know
8	Missing

9	NIU (not in universe)
---	-----------------------

description

DEFINITION

MORTMOT indicates whether the person's biological mother was still living at the time of the census.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

NATION: Country of citizenship

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 5 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00000	NIU (not in universe)
10000	Africa
11000	Eastern Africa
11010	Burundi
11020	Comoros
11030	Djibouti
11040	Eritrea
11050	Ethiopia
11060	Kenya
11070	Madagascar
11080	Malawi
11090	Mauritius
11100	Mozambique
11110	Reunion
11120	Rwanda
11130	Seychelles
11140	Somalia

11150	South Sudan
11160	Uganda
11170	Tanzania
11180	Zambia
11190	Zimbabwe
11999	Eastern Africa, other or n.s.
12000	Middle Africa
12010	Angola
12020	Cameroon
12030	Central African Republic
12040	Chad
12050	Congo (Republic of)
12060	Democratic Republic of Congo
12070	Equatorial Guinea
12080	Gabon
12090	Sao Tome and Principe
12999	Middle Africa, other or n.s.
13000	Northern Africa
13010	Algeria
13011	Algeria/Tunisia
13020	Egypt/United Arab Rep.
13021	Egypt/Sudan
13030	Libya
13040	Morocco
13050	Sudan
13060	Tunisia
13070	Western Sahara
13999	Northern Africa, other or n.s.
14000	Southern Africa
14010	Botswana
14020	Lesotho
14030	Namibia
14040	South Africa
14050	Swaziland
14999	Southern Africa, other or n.s.
15000	Western Africa
15010	Benin
15020	Burkina Faso
15030	Cape Verde

15040	Ivory Coast
15050	Gambia
15060	Ghana
15070	Guinea
15080	Guinea-Bissau
15090	Liberia
15100	Mali
15110	Mauritania
15120	Niger
15130	Nigeria
15140	St. Helena and Ascension
15150	Senegal
15160	Sierra Leone
15170	Togo
15999	West Africa, other or n.s.
19999	Africa, other or n.s.
20000	Americas
21000	Caribbean
21010	Anguilla
21020	Antigua-Barbuda
21030	Aruba
21040	Bahamas
21050	Barbados
21060	British Virgin Islands
21070	Cayman Isles
21080	Cuba
21090	Dominica
21100	Dominican Republic
21110	Grenada
21120	Guadeloupe
21130	Haiti
21140	Jamaica
21150	Martinique
21160	Montserrat
21170	Netherlands Antilles
21180	Puerto Rico
21190	St. Kitts-Nevis
21220	St. Lucia
21240	St. Vincent

21250	Trinidad and Tobago
21260	Turks and Caicos
21270	U.S. Virgin Islands
21999	Caribbean, other or n.s.
22000	Central America
22010	Belize/British Honduras
22020	Costa Rica
22030	El Salvador
22040	Guatemala
22050	Honduras
22060	Mexico
22070	Nicaragua
22080	Panama
22081	Panama Canal Zone
22999	Central America, other or n.s.
23000	South America
23010	Argentina
23020	Bolivia
23030	Brazil
23040	Chile
23050	Colombia
23060	Ecuador
23070	Falkland Islands
23080	French Guiana
23090	Guyana/British Guiana
23100	Paraguay
23110	Peru
23120	Suriname
23130	Uruguay
23140	Venezuela
23999	South America, other or n.s.
24000	North America
24010	Bermuda
24020	Canada
24021	Canada, First Nations
24030	Greenland
24040	United States
24999	North America, other or n.s.
29999	Americas, other or n.s.

30000	Asia
31000	Eastern Asia
31010	China
31011	Hong Kong
31012	Macau
31013	Taiwan
31020	Japan
31030	Korea
31031	Korea, DPR (North)
31032	Korea, RO (South)
31040	Mongolia
31999	Eastern Asia, other or n.s.
32000	South-Central Asia
32010	Afghanistan
32020	Bangladesh
32030	Bhutan
32040	India
32041	India/Pakistan
32050	Iran
32060	Kazakhstan
32070	Kyrgyzstan
32080	Maldives
32090	Nepal
32100	Pakistan
32110	Sri Lanka (Ceylon)
32120	Tajikistan
32130	Turkmenistan
32140	Uzbekistan
32990	Burma, India, Pakistan, Ceylon
32999	South-Central Asia, other or n.s.
33000	South-Eastern Asia
33010	Brunei
33020	Cambodia (Kampuchea)
33030	East Timor
33040	Indonesia
33050	Laos
33060	Malaysia
33070	Myanmar (Burma)
33080	Philippines

33090	Singapore
33100	Thailand
33110	Vietnam
33991	Laos and Cambodia
33992	Malaysia and Singapore
33999	South-Eastern Asia, other or n.s.
34000	Western Asia
34010	Armenia
34020	Azerbaijan
34030	Bahrain
34040	Cyprus
34050	Georgia
34051	Abkhazia
34052	South Ossetia
34060	Iraq
34070	Israel
34080	Jordan
34090	Kuwait
34100	Lebanon
34110	Palestine
34120	Oman
34130	Qatar
34140	Saudi Arabia
34150	Syria
34151	Syria/Lebanon
34160	Turkey
34170	United Arab Emirates
34180	Yemen
34991	Middle East
34999	Western Asia, other or n.s.
39999	Asia, other or n.s.
40000	Europe
41000	Eastern Europe
41010	Belarus
41020	Bulgaria
41021	Bulgaria/Greece
41030	Czech Republic/Czechoslovakia
41040	Hungary
41050	Poland

41060	Moldova
41070	Romania
41080	Russia/USSR
41090	Slovakia
41100	Ukraine
41992	Central-Eastern Europe
41999	Eastern Europe, other or n.s.
42000	Northern Europe
42010	Denmark
42020	Estonia
42030	Faroe Islands
42040	Finland
42050	Iceland
42060	Ireland
42070	Latvia
42080	Lithuania
42090	Norway
42100	Svalbard and Jan Mayen Islands
42110	Sweden
42120	United Kingdom
42121	Britain
42122	Scotland
42123	Wales
42990	Nordic countries
42999	Northern Europe, other or n.s.
43000	Southern Europe
43010	Albania
43020	Andorra
43030	Bosnia and Herzegovina
43040	Croatia
43050	Gibraltar
43060	Greece
43070	Italy
43071	Vatican City
43080	Malta
43090	Portugal
43100	San Marino
43110	Slovenia
43120	Spain

43130	Macedonia
43140	Yugoslavia
43141	Montenegro
43142	Serbia
43143	Kosovo
43144	Serbia and Montenegro
43999	Southern Europe, other or n.s.
44000	Western Europe
44010	Austria
44011	Austro-Hungarian
44020	Belgium
44022	Belgium/Netherlands/Luxemburg
44030	France
44040	Germany
44041	East Germany
44042	West Germany
44050	Liechtenstein
44060	Luxembourg
44070	Monaco
44080	Netherlands
44090	Switzerland
44999	Western Europe, other or n.s.
49992	European Union
49993	European Union (Original 15)
49994	Other European Union
49999	Europe, other or n.s.
50000	Oceania
51000	Australia and New Zealand
51010	Australia
51020	New Zealand
51030	Norfolk Islands
51999	Australia and New Zealand, n.s.
52000	Melanesia
52010	Fiji
52020	New Caledonia
52030	Papua New Guinea
52040	Solomon Islands
52050	Vanuatu (New Hebrides)
52999	Melanesia, n.s.

53000	Micronesia
53010	Kiribati
53020	Marshall Islands
53030	Nauru
53040	Northern Mariana Isls.
53050	Palau
53999	Micronesia, other or n.s.
54000	Polynesia
54010	Cook Islands
54020	French Polynesia
54030	Niue
54040	Pitcairn Island
54050	Western Samoa
54060	Eastern Samoa
54070	Tokelau
54080	Tonga
54090	Tuvalu
54100	Wallis and Futuna Isls.
54999	Polynesia, other or n.s.
55000	U.S. Pacific Possessions
55010	American Samoa
55020	Baker Island
55030	Guam
55040	Howland Island
55050	Johnston Atoll
55060	Kingman Reef
55070	Midway Islands
55080	Wake Island
55999	US Pacific, other or n.s.
59999	Oceania, other or n.s.
90000	Other countries n.s.
99998	No citizenship/nationality
99999	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

NATION indicates the person's country of citizenship.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

NATIVITY: Nativity status**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Native-born
2	Foreign-born
9	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

NATIVITY indicates whether the person was native-born or foreign-born.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

RELIGION: Religion [general version]**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	No religion
2	Buddhist
3	Hindu
4	Jewish
5	Muslim
6	Christian
7	Other
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

RELIGION indicates the person's religion, including "none."

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Ethnicity and Language Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

EDATTAIN: Educational attainment, international recode [general version]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Less than primary completed
2	Primary completed
3	Secondary completed
4	University completed
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

EDATTAIN records the person's educational attainment in terms of the level of schooling completed (degree or other milestone). The emphasis on level completed is critical: a person attending the final year of secondary education receives the code for having completed lower secondary only -- and in some samples only primary.

EDATTAIN does not necessarily reflect any particular country's definition of the various levels of schooling in terms of terminology or the number of years of schooling. EDATTAIN is an attempt to merge -- into a single, roughly comparable variable -- samples that provide degrees, ones that provide actual years of schooling, and those that have some of both. In addition to EDATTAIN, a country-specific education classification is provided which loses no information and reflects the particular educational system of that country (for example EDUCBR for Brazil, EDUCCL for Chile, and EDUCUS for the United States). As always, users can refer to the original education source variables for each sample, if they wish.

Many samples also give single years of schooling completed, recorded in YRSCHOOL. Some samples provide educational information in a form that could not be incorporated into EDATTAIN.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

EDATTAIN: Educational attainment, international recode [detailed version]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
000	NIU (not in universe)
100	Less than primary completed (n.s.)
110	No schooling
120	Some primary completed
130	Primary (4 yrs) completed
211	Primary (5 yrs) completed
212	Primary (6 yrs) completed
221	Lower secondary general completed
222	Lower secondary technical completed
311	Secondary, general track completed
312	Some college completed

320	Secondary or post-secondary technical completed
321	Secondary, technical track completed
322	Post-secondary technical education
400	University completed
999	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

EDATTAIN records the person's educational attainment in terms of the level of schooling completed (degree or other milestone). The emphasis on level completed is critical: a person attending the final year of secondary education receives the code for having completed lower secondary only -- and in some samples only primary.

EDATTAIN does not necessarily reflect any particular country's definition of the various levels of schooling in terms of terminology or the number of years of schooling. EDATTAIN is an attempt to merge -- into a single, roughly comparable variable -- samples that provide degrees, ones that provide actual years of schooling, and those that have some of both. In addition to EDATTAIN, a country-specific education classification is provided which loses no information and reflects the particular educational system of that country (for example EDUCBR for Brazil, EDUCCL for Chile, and EDUCUS for the United States). As always, users can refer to the original education source variables for each sample, if they wish.

Many samples also give single years of schooling completed, recorded in YRSCHOOL. Some samples provide educational information in a form that could not be incorporated into EDATTAIN.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

EDUCZA: Educational attainment, South Africa

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
000	None
100	Formal Schooling
101	Year 0 (preschool)
102	Year 1
103	Year 2
104	Year 3

105	Year 4
106	Year 5
107	Year 6
108	Year 7
109	Year 8
110	Year 9
111	Year 10
112	Year 11
113	Year 12
114	Year 12, without university exemption
115	Year 12, with university exemption
120	Less than year 12 with certificate or diploma
121	Less than year 12 with certificate
122	Less than year 12 with diploma
130	Year 12 with certificate
140	Year 12 with diploma
150	Certificate or diploma
151	Certificate or diploma I
152	Certificate or diploma II
153	Certificate or diploma III
154	Certificate or diploma 4
155	Certificate or diploma 5
156	Certificate or diploma 6
210	Bachelor's degree and diploma
220	Bachelor's degree
310	Honours degree or post-graduate diploma
311	Honours degree
312	Post-graduate diploma
320	Post higher diploma (Masters, Doctoral diploma)
330	Higher degree
331	Master's degree
332	Doctorate degree
300	Other
998	Unknown
999	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

EDUCZA indicates the person's educational attainment in South Africa in terms of the level of schooling completed and the

number of years completed at that level.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

EMPSTAT: Activity status (employment status) [general version]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Employed
2	Unemployed
3	Inactive
9	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

EMPSTAT indicates whether or not the respondent was part of the labor force -- working or seeking work -- over a specified period of time. Depending on the sample, EMPSTAT can also convey further information.

The first digit of EMPSTAT is fully comparable, and classifies the population into three groups: employed, unemployed, and inactive. The combination of employed and unemployed yields the total labor force. The second and third digits of EMPSTAT preserve additional information available for some countries and census years but not for others.

Employment status is sometimes referred to in other sources as "activity status".

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

EMPSTATD: Activity status (employment status) [detailed version]**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
000	NIU (not in universe)
100	Employed, not specified
110	At work
111	At work, and 'student'
112	At work, and 'housework'
113	At work, and 'seeking work'
114	At work, and 'retired'
115	At work, and 'no work'
116	At work, and other situation
117	At work, family holding, not specified
118	At work, family holding, not agricultural
119	At work, family holding, agricultural
120	Have job, not at work in reference period
130	Armed forces
131	Armed forces, at work
132	Armed forces, not at work in reference period
133	Military trainee
140	Marginally employed
200	Unemployed, not specified
201	Unemployed 6 or more months
202	Worked fewer than 6 months, permanent job
203	Worked fewer than 6 months, temporary job
210	Unemployed, experienced worker
220	Unemployed, new worker
230	No work available
240	Inactive unemployed
300	Inactive (not in labor force)
310	Housework
320	Unable to work, disabled or health reasons
321	Permanent disability

322	Temporary illness
323	Disabled or imprisoned
330	In school
340	Retirees and living on rent
341	Living on rents
342	Living on rents or pension
343	Retirees/pensioners
344	Retired
345	Pensioner
346	Non-retirement pension
347	Disability pension
348	Retired without benefits
350	Elderly
351	Elderly or disabled
360	Institutionalized
361	Prisoner
370	Intermittent worker
371	Not working, seasonal worker
372	Not working, occasional worker
380	Other income recipient
390	Inactive, other reasons
391	Too young to work
392	Dependent
999	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

EMPSTAT indicates whether or not the respondent was part of the labor force -- working or seeking work -- over a specified period of time. Depending on the sample, EMPSTAT can also convey further information.

The first digit of EMPSTAT is fully comparable, and classifies the population into three groups: employed, unemployed, and inactive. The combination of employed and unemployed yields the total labor force. The second and third digits of EMPSTAT preserve additional information available for some countries and census years but not for others.

Employment status is sometimes referred to in other sources as "activity status".

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

LANGZA1: Language spoken at home, South Africa**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Afrikaans
02	English
03	IsiNdebele
04	IsiXhosa
05	IsiZulu
06	Sepedi
07	Sesotho
08	Setswana
09	Siswati
10	Tshivenda
11	Xitsonga
12	Khoi, Nama and San language
13	Dutch
14	German
15	Greek
16	Italian
17	Portuguese
18	French
19	Tamil
20	Hindi
21	Telugu
22	Gujarati
23	Urdu
24	Chinese
25	Swahili
26	Shona
27	Arabic
28	Sign language
29	Other

98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

LANGZA1 indicates the language the person spoke in the home.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Ethnicity and Language Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

RACE: Race or color

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
10	White
20	Black
21	Black African
22	Black Caribbean
23	Afro-Ecuadorian
24	Other Black
30	Indigenous
31	American Indian
32	Latin American Indian
40	Asian
41	Chinese
42	Japanese
43	Korean
44	Vietnamese
45	Filipino
46	Indian

47	Pakistani
48	Bangladeshi
49	Other Asian
50	Mixed race
51	Brown (Brazil)
52	Mestizo (Indigenous and White)
53	Mulatto (Black and White)
54	Coloured (South Africa)
55	Two or more races
60	Other
61	Montubio (Ecuador)
99	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

Race identifies the racial group with which a person identified himself or herself, or to which an enumerator assigned them. Determinations of race are based largely on appearance or ancestral place of origin.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Ethnicity and Language Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

RELIGIOND: Religion [detailed version]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 4 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0000	NIU (not in universe)
1000	No religion
1001	Atheist
1002	Agnostic
1003	Without religion
2000	Buddhist

3000	Hindu
4000	Jewish
5000	Muslim
5005	Ahmadis
5006	Sunni
6000	Christian
6001	Catholic (Roman or unspecified)
6002	Orthodox
6003	Protestant
6004	Evangelical protestant
6005	Pentecostal
6006	Adventist / Seventh-day adventist
6007	Anglican
6008	Assembly of God
6009	Baptist
6010	Church of the Nazarene
6011	Congregational
6012	Dutch Reformed
6013	Episcopalian
6014	Jehovah's Witnesses
6015	Latter Day Saints (Mormon)
6016	Lutheran
6017	Mennonite
6018	Methodist
6019	New Apostolic
6020	Presbyterian
6021	Zion Christian
6022	Moravian
6090	Other Christian, historical
6100	Other Christian, Armenia
6101	Armenia apostolic
6102	Nestorian
6103	Molokai
6104	Other Christian, Austria
6105	Old Catholic
6106	Protestant, Augsburg confession
6107	Protestant, Westminster confession
6108	Protestant, Helvetic confession
6109	Greek Oriental

6110	Armenian Apostolic
6111	Other Protestant
6112	Christian Community for renewal
6113	Christian Community, not specified
6114	Other Christian, Benin
6115	Other Christian
6116	Celestial
6117	Other Christian, Brazil
6118	Christian Congregation of Brazil
6119	Brazilian Catholic Apostolic
6120	Brazil for Christ
6121	Foursquare Gospel
6122	Universal of the Kingdom of God
6123	House of the Blessing
6124	House of Prayer
6125	God is Love
6126	Maranata
6127	Other Christian, Brazil 1991
6128	Undetermined Protestant
6129	Other traditional Protestant
6130	Neo-Christian
6131	Other Neo-Christian
6132	Undetermined Christian
6133	Other Christian, Brazil 2000
6134	Other Catholic
6135	Renewed Evangelical Protestant without institutional ties
6136	Pentecostal Evangelical without institutional ties
6137	New Life Evangelical Protestant Pentecostal
6138	Evangelical Protestant Biblical Revival Pentecostal
6139	Chain Of Prayer Pentecostal
6140	Undetermined Evangelical Protestant
6141	Religion Of God
6142	Christian without institutional ties
6143	Other Christian, Brazil 2010
6144	Salvation Army
6145	Other Christian, Canada
6146	Other Catholic
6147	United Church
6148	Protestant, not specified

6149	Other Protestant
6150	Other Christian, Cameroon
6151	Other Christian, Fiji
6152	Christian undefined
6153	Church of England
6154	Gospel Hall and Brethern
6155	Christian Mission Fellowship (CMF) or Every Home
6156	Salvation Army
6157	All Nations Christian Fellowship
6158	Apostles Gospel Outreach Fellowship
6159	Christian Outreach Centre
6160	Other Christian
6161	Other Christian, Germany
6162	Oriental Christian
6163	Other Christian, Ghana
6164	Other Christian, Iran
6165	Assyrian or Chaldean
6166	Armenian
6167	Other Christians
6168	Other Christian, Indonesia
6169	Other Christian
6170	Protestant/Other Christian
6171	Other Christian, Ireland
6172	Church of Ireland
6173	Church of Scotland
6174	Independent
6175	Unitarian
6176	Salvation Army
6177	Free Church
6178	Brethren
6179	Christian Brethren
6180	Plymouth Brethren
6181	Quaker
6182	Other Christians
6183	Other Christian, Ivory Coast
6184	Other Christian, Jamaica
6185	Brethren
6186	Church of God
6187	Church of God of Prophecy

6188	Other Church of God
6189	United Church
6190	Salvation Army
6191	New Testament
6192	Disciples of Christ
6193	Other Christian, Mauritius
6194	Christian Tamil
6195	Salvation and Healing Mission
6196	Voice of Deliverance
6197	Other Christian
6198	Other Christian, Mexico
6199	Anabaptist
6200	Calvinist
6201	Cuaquera
6202	Disciples of Christ
6203	Christian Friendship Church
6204	Prayer House Church
6205	Faith Center
6206	Agape Force Church
6207	Alpha and Omega Church
6208	Living Water Church
6209	Apostolic Church
6210	Church of God
6211	Church of God of Prophecy
6212	Complete Gospel Church
6213	Evangelical Siblings Church
6214	Upper Room Church
6215	Pentecostal Indigenous Church
6216	Angular Stone Voice Church
6217	Pentecostal Missionary
6218	Christian
6219	Christian Societies
6220	Evangelical
6221	Evangelical Societies
6222	New Testament Evangelical
6223	Pentecostal
6224	Pentecostal Societies
6225	Independent Pentecostal
6226	Evangelical Christian Societies

6227	Pentecostal Christian Societies
6228	Evangelical Pentecostal Societies
6229	Evangelical Pentecostal Christian Societies
6230	Soldiers of Christ's Cross Church
6231	Tabernacle
6232	Traditionalists
6233	Other Evangelical Pentecostal Societies
6234	Pentecostal not clearly specified
6235	Living God, Light of the World
6236	Christian and Missionary Alliance
6237	Non-Pentecostal Apostolic
6238	Evangelical Associations
6239	Biblical
6240	Confraternities
6241	Christ Church
6242	Peace Grace and Misericordia Church
6243	Open Bible Church
6244	Holiness Church
6245	Evangelical Salem Church
6246	Beautiful Woman Dressed in the Sun
6247	Messianic Church
6248	Evangelical Ministers
6249	Evangelical Missionaries
6250	Evangelical Movements
6251	New Jerusalem
6252	World Vision Church
6253	Evangelical not clearly specified
6254	Biblical - non-evangelicals
6255	Other Christians not clearly specified
6256	Assumptionist
6257	Carmelite
6258	Claretian
6259	Conception Franciscan
6260	Maronite Diocese of Mexico
6261	Dominican
6262	Servants of Mary Immaculate
6263	Franciscan
6264	Guadalupan
6265	Daughters of the Immaculate Conception

6266	Jesuit
6267	Legionaries of Christ
6268	Divine Word Missionary
6269	Pauline
6270	Sacred Heart
6271	Saint Joseph of Tarbes
6272	Servant of the Lord and the Virgin
6273	Servant of Jesus
6274	Greek Catholic Church
6275	Reformed Roman Catholic Church
6276	Mexican National Catholic Church
6277	Tridentine Latin Rite Catholic Church
6278	Priestly Society Trento
6279	Mexican Catholic Union of Trento
6280	Anabaptist / Memnonite
6281	Anglican / Episcopal
6282	House of Prayer
6283	Center of Faith, Hope and Love of the Missionary Revival Crusade
6284	Center of Faith, Hope and Love Agape Force
6285	Salvation Army
6286	Independent Pentecostal Fellowship
6287	Upper Chamber Church
6288	Faith Apostolic Church of Jesus Christ
6289	Spiritual Christian Church
6290	Pentecostal Evangelical Christian Church
6291	Interdenominational Christian Church
6292	Church of God Full Gospel in Mexico
6293	Church of Jesus Christ on the Rock
6294	Christ Evangelical Pentecostal Church Rock of my Salvation
6295	Mexican Church of Christ's Gospel Pentecost
6296	United Pentecostal Church of Mexico
6297	Universal Church of the Kingdom of God
6298	Only Christ Savior Christian Church
6299	Independent Evangelical Pentecostal Movement
6300	Prince of Peace
6301	National Union of Evangelical Christian Churches (UNICE)
6302	Union of Independent Evangelical Churches
6303	Other associations Pentecostal
6304	Church of the Living God, Pillar and Support of Truth, the Light of the World

6305	Bible Church
6306	Interdenominational Christian Church in Mexico
6307	Church of Christ
6308	Honey Church of Christ
6309	Independent Evangelical Church in Mexico
6310	Renewed Church of Jesus Christ and the Apostles of Divine Love
6311	Other Christian and Evangelical associations without Pentecostal support
6312	Faith Christian Church
6313	Traditional Apostolic Catholic Holy Church Mexico-USA
6314	Mexican Apostolic Catholic Church
6315	Elias
6316	Spiritualistic
6317	Spiritualist
6318	Marian Trinitarian Spirituality
6319	Spirituality of the Third Age
6320	Christian Spiritual
6321	Judiciary Society Reign of Leonardo Alcalá Leos
6322	Spirituality for the Divine Master and the purity of Mary
6323	Light and Hope
6324	Holy Spirit, Purity, Love and Light
6325	Christian Science
6326	Neo-Israelite Jewish Syncretic Movements
6327	Other Christian, Netherlands
6328	Reformed Churches in The Netherlands
6329	Other Reformed
6330	Other Christian, Papua New Guinea
6331	Asian Pacific Christian Mission
6332	Asutalian Church
6333	Bamu River Mission
6334	Christian Brethren Church of PNG
6335	Christian Mission of Many Lands
6336	Christian Revival Crusade
6337	Christain Union Mission
6338	Church of Christ of PNG
6339	Faith mission
6340	Four Square Gospel Mission
6341	Kwato Church
6342	Life Center
6343	Lighthouse church

6344	New Guinea Gospel Mission
6345	New Life Mission
6346	New tribes Mission
6347	Paliau Christian Native Church
6348	Rhema Fellowship
6349	Salvation Army
6350	Sovereign Grace
6351	United Church
6352	Wewak Fellowship
6353	Western Highland
6354	Independent
6355	Plymouth Brethern
6356	Tiliba Mission
6357	Tokarara Christian Fellowship
6358	Village Mission
6359	Other Christian
6360	Other Christian, Paraguay
6361	Christian Community
6362	Free Brothers
6363	Church of God
6364	Church of God of Prophecy
6365	New testament
6366	God is love
6367	Universal Church of the Kingdom of God
6368	People of God
6369	Family worship center
6370	Pseudo-Christian groups
6371	Other Christian, Philippines
6372	Aglipay
6373	Bible Christian Committees
6374	Born-again Christian
6375	Bread of Life Ministries
6376	Cathedral of Praise, Incorporated
6377	Charismatic Full Gospel Ministries
6378	Christ the Living Stone Fellowship
6379	Christian and Missionary Alliance
6380	Christians Missions
6381	Christian Reformed Church in the Philippines, Incorporated
6382	Church of Christ

6383	Crusaders of the Divine Church of Christ, Incorporated
6384	Evangelical Christian Outreach Foundation
6385	Evangelical Free Church
6386	Filipino Assemblies of the First Born Inc.
6387	Foursquare Gospel
6388	Free Believers in Christ Fellowship
6389	Free Mission in the Philippines Inc.
6390	God World Mission
6391	Good News Christian Churches
6392	IEMELIF Reform Movement
6393	Iglesia Evangelista Methodista en Las
6394	Iglesia Evangelica Unida de Cristo
6395	Iglesia ni Cristo
6396	Iglesia sa Dios Espiritu Santo, Incorporated
6397	Jesus Christ Saves Global Outreach
6398	Jesus is Alive Community, Incorporated
6399	Jesus is Lord Church
6400	Jesus Reigns Ministries
6401	Love of Christ International Ministries
6402	Other Evangelical
6403	Other Evangelical Church
6404	Other Protestants
6405	Philippine Ecumenical Christian Church
6406	Philippine Evangelical Mission
6407	Philippine Grace Gospel Fellowship
6408	Philippines Benevolent Missionaries
6409	Philippines General Council of the Assemblies of God
6410	Potter's House Christian Center
6411	Salvation Army Philippines
6412	Take the Nation for Jesus Global Ministries (Corpus Christi)
6413	UNIDA Evangelical Church
6414	Union Espiritista Cristiana de Filipinas, Incorporated
6415	United Church of Christ in the Philippines
6416	United Evangelical Church of the Philippines (Chinese)
6417	Victory Chapel Christian Fellowship
6418	Wesleyan Church
6419	World Missionary Evangelism
6420	Worldwide Church of God
6421	Zion Christian Community Church

6422	Other Christian, Portugal
6423	Other Christian, Romania
6424	Greek Catholic
6425	Reformed Church
6426	Evangelic of Augustan Confession
6427	Evangelic Synodo-Presbyterian
6428	Christian of Old Rite
6429	Christian by Gospel
6430	Evangelic
6431	Other Christian, Rwanda 2002
6432	Other Christian, Sierra Leone
6433	Other Christian, Slovak Republic
6434	Old Catholic
6435	Greek Catholic
6436	Christian Reformed
6437	Other Christian, South Africa
6438	Reformed
6439	International Fellowship of Christian Churches
6440	Apostolic Faith Mission of SA
6441	Other Apostolic Churches
6442	Pinkster Protestant Church
6443	Afrikaanse Protestant Church
6444	Full Gospel Church of God in Southern Africa
6445	Pentecostal Churches
6446	Salvation Army
6447	Bandla Lama Nazaretha
6448	African Methodist Episcopal Church
6449	St John's Apostolic Church
6450	International Pentecost Church
6451	Ethiopian type churches
6452	Ethnic churches
6453	Other African Independent Churches
6454	Other Christian Churches
6455	Other Catholic Churches
6456	Other Pentecostal Churches
6457	Other Orthodox Churches
6458	Other African Apostolic churches
6459	Other Assemblies
6460	Christian Scientist

6461	Christian Centres
6462	Other Evangelical Churches
6463	Other Charismatic Churches
6464	Just a Christian or non-denominational
6465	Other
6466	Other Christian, Suriname
6467	Other Christian
6468	Other Christian, Saint Lucia
6469	Church of God
6470	Other Christian, Senegal
6471	Other Christian
6472	Other Christian, Switzerland
6473	Other protestant churches and communities
6474	Christ-Catholic church
6475	Other Christian communities
6476	Other Christian, Trinidad and Tobago
6477	Church of God
6478	African Methodist Espiscopalians
6479	Brethren, Christian or Plymouth
6480	Church of Christ
6481	Gospel Hall or Gospel Missionary
6482	Nazarenes
6483	Pilgrim Holiness
6484	Ethiopian Orthodox
6485	Open Bible Church
6486	Assemblies of Yahweh
6487	Evangelical Church of West Indies
6488	Christadelphian
6489	Full Gospel Fellowship
6490	Dutch Reform
6491	Christian Brotherhood Assembly
6492	Other Christian, Uganda
6493	Other Christian
6494	Salvation Army
6495	Other Christian non-Catholic, Uruguay
6496	Other Christian non-Catholic, Guatemala
6497	Other Christian, Togo
7000	Other
7001	Bahai

7002	Sikh
7003	Rastafarian
7100	Other, Armenia
7101	Pagan
7102	Shar-fadinian
7103	Other, Austria
7104	Unification Church, Austria
7105	Other, Benin
7106	Traditional
7107	Vodoun
7108	Other, Botswana
7109	Badimo
7110	Other, Brazil
7111	Spiritist
7112	Kardecist Spiritist
7113	Afro Spiritist
7114	Mediumistic Spiritist
7115	Umbandist Mediumistic
7116	Candomblecist Mediumistic
7117	Other Afro-Brazilian
7118	Oriental, Brazil
7119	New Oriental
7120	Oriental Seicho No-je
7121	Other Oriental, Brazil
7122	Esoteric, Brazil
7123	Indigenous, Brazil
7124	Other minority groups, Brazil
7125	Other, Burkina Faso
7126	Animist
7127	Other, Cameroon
7128	Animist
7129	Other, Canada
7130	Eastern religions, Canada
7131	Other, Chile
7132	Theosophism
7133	Shintoism
7134	Other, Ethiopia
7135	Traditional
7136	Other, Ethiopia

7137	Other, Fiji
7138	Confucian
7139	Kabir Panthi
7140	Satya Sai Baba
7141	Bahai
7142	Other non-Christian, Fiji
7143	Other, Germany
7144	Other, Germany
7145	Other, Ghana
7146	Traditional, Ghana
7147	Other, Guinea
7148	Animist
7149	Other, Guinea
7150	Other, Haiti
7151	Voodoo
7152	Other, India
7153	Jainism
7154	Zoroastrianism
7155	Other, India
7156	Other, Indonesia
7157	Confucianism
7158	Other, Indonesia
7159	Other, Iran
7160	Zoroastrian
7161	Other, Iran
7162	Other, Ivory Coast
7163	Animist
7164	Harrist
7165	Other, Jamaica
7166	Muslim/Hindu
7167	Other, Israel
7168	Druse
7169	Other, Israel
7170	Other, Laos
7171	Animist
7172	Other, Liberia
7173	Traditional
7174	Other, Malaysia
7175	Confucianism/Taoism

7176	Tribal/Folk religion, Malaysia
7177	Other, Mali
7178	Animist
7179	Other, Mexico
7180	Brahmanism
7181	Hare Krishna
7182	Shintoism
7183	Taoism
7184	Mexican Movements
7185	Ananda Marga
7186	Church of Scientology
7187	Masons
7188	Raelian Movement
7189	New Age Movement
7190	Neoisraelites
7191	Occultists
7192	Palmar of Troya
7193	Rose Cross
7194	Theosophism
7195	Spiritualist Special Keys
7196	Onkaranada Center
7197	Confucianism
7198	Shia
7199	Universal Great Brotherhood
7200	Esoteric Science
7201	Gnosticism
7202	Metaphysics
7203	Wicca
7204	Shamanism
7205	The Custom
7206	Mexicayotl
7207	Restorative Confederate Movement of Anahuac Culture
7208	African Origin
7209	Indigenous Religions
7210	Growing in Grace
7211	Eckankar
7212	Transcendental Meditation
7213	Mission Branch
7214	Children of God

7215	Sri Sathya Sai Baba
7216	Other religions from Asia
7217	Ethnic roots
7218	Afro roots
7219	Popular cults
7220	Other new religious movements
7221	Other, Nepal
7222	Kirat
7223	Jain
7224	Garaute
7225	Tap jura
7226	Bon
7227	Prakriti
7228	Other, Nigeria
7229	Traditional
7230	Other, Pakistan
7231	Ahmadi
7232	Parsi
7233	Scheduled caste
7234	Other, Paraguay
7235	Philosophical revelations
7236	Indigenous religion
7237	Reyukai
7238	Other, Paraguay
7239	Other, Philippines
7240	Door of Faith
7241	Faith Tabernacle Church (Living Rock Ministries)
7242	Iglesia Filipina Independiente
7243	International One Way Outreach
7244	Miracle Life Fellowship International
7245	Miracle Revival Church of the Philippines
7246	Philippine Good News Ministries
7247	Philippine Missionary fellowship
7248	Things to Come
7249	Way of Salvation
7250	Word of the World
7251	Word International Ministries
7252	Tribal Religions, Philippines
7253	Other, Romania

7254	Unitarian
7255	Armenian
7256	Mosaic
7257	Other, Romania
7258	Other, Rwanda
7259	Traditional religion, Rwanda
7260	Other, Rwanda
7261	Other, Sierra Leone
7262	Traditional religion, Sierra Leone
7263	Other, South Africa
7264	African traditional belief
7265	Taoist
7266	Confucian
7267	New Age
7268	Winti
7269	Javanism
7270	Other non-Christian, S. Africa
7271	Other, Suriname
7272	Javanism
7273	Traditional
7274	Winti
7275	Other, Thailand
7276	Confucian
7277	Other, Trinidad and Tobago
7278	Pocomania or Shango
7279	Orisha
7280	Other, Uganda
7281	Traditional religion
7282	Mammon
7283	Other non-Christian, Uganda
7284	Other, United Kindom
7285	Other, Uruguay
7286	Umbanda/other Afro-American
7287	Other, Uruguay
7288	Other, Vietnam
7289	Cao Dai
7290	Cham Brahmin
7296	Other, Togo
7297	Animist

7900	Other, not elsewhere classified
9999	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

RELIGION indicates the person's religion, including "none."

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Ethnicity and Language Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

SCHOOL: School attendance

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Yes
2	No, not specified
3	No, attended in the past
4	No, never attended
9	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

SCHOOL indicates whether or not the person attended school at the time of the census or within some specified period of time prior to the census.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

YRSCHOOL: Years of schooling**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	None or pre-school
01	1 year
02	2 years
03	3 years
04	4 years
05	5 years
06	6 years
07	7 years
08	8 years
09	9 years
10	10 years
11	11 years
12	12 years
13	13 years
14	14 years
15	15 years
16	16 years
17	17 years
18	18 years or more
90	Not specified
91	Some primary
92	Some technical after primary
93	Some secondary
94	Some tertiary
95	Adult literacy
96	Special education
98	Unknown/missing
99	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

YRSCHOOL indicates the highest grade/level of schooling the person had completed, in years. Only formal schooling is counted. YRSCHOOL accounts for the number of years of study, regardless of the track or kind of study. Information on degree and/or technical track is available in EDATTAIN. Years of schooling for Israel, categorized into intervals, are given in YRSCHOOL2.

Users should pay close attention to the top-codes in each sample, as discussed in the comparability section.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

CLASSWK: Status in employment (class of worker) [general version]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Self-employed
2	Wage/salary worker
3	Unpaid worker
4	Other
9	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

CLASSWK refers to the status of an economically active person with respect to his or her employment -- that is, the type of explicit or implicit contract of employment with other persons or organizations that the person has in his/her job. In general, the variable indicates whether a person was self-employed, or worked for someone else, either for pay or as an unpaid family worker. CLASSWK is related to EMPSTAT, which is used to define the universe in many samples.

Class of worker is often referred to as "status in employment" in other sources.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

CLASSWKD: Status in employment (class of worker) [detailed version]**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
000	NIU (not in universe)
100	Self-employed
101	Self-employed, unincorporated
102	Self-employed, incorporated
110	Employer
111	Sharecropper, employer
120	Working on own account
121	Own account, agriculture
122	Domestic worker, self-employed
123	Subsistence worker, own consumption
124	Own account, other
125	Own account, without temporary/unpaid help
126	Own account, with temporary/unpaid help
130	Member of cooperative
140	Sharecropper
141	Sharecropper, self-employed
142	Sharecropper, employee
150	Kibbutz member
199	Self-employed, not specified
200	Wage/salary worker
201	Management
202	Non-management
203	White collar (non-manual)

204	Blue collar (manual)
205	White or blue collar
206	Day laborer
207	Employee, with a permanent job
208	Employee, occasional, temporary, contract
209	Employee without legal contract
210	Wage/salary worker, private employer
211	Apprentice
212	Religious worker
213	Wage/salary worker, non-profit, NGO
214	White collar, private
215	Blue collar, private
216	Paid family worker
217	Cooperative employee
220	Wage/salary worker, government
221	Federal, government employee
222	State government employee
223	Local government employee
224	White collar, public
225	Blue collar, public
226	Public companies
227	Civil servants, local collectives
230	Domestic worker (work for private household)
240	Seasonal migrant
241	Seasonal migrant, no broker
242	Seasonal migrant, uses broker
250	Other wage and salary
251	Canal zone/commission employee
252	Government employment/training program
253	Mixed state/private enterprise/parastatal
254	Government public work program
255	State enterprise employee
256	Coordinated and continuous collaboration job
300	Unpaid worker
310	Unpaid family worker
320	Apprentice, unpaid or unspecified
330	Trainee
340	Apprentice or trainee
350	Works for others without wage

400	Other
999	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

CLASSWK refers to the status of an economically active person with respect to his or her employment -- that is, the type of explicit or implicit contract of employment with other persons or organizations that the person has in his/her job. In general, the variable indicates whether a person was self-employed, or worked for someone else, either for pay or as an unpaid family worker. CLASSWK is related to EMPSTAT, which is used to define the universe in many samples.

Class of worker is often referred to as "status in employment" in other sources.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

HRSWORK1: Hours worked per week

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
000	0 hours
001	1 hour
002	2 hours
003	3 hours
004	4 hours
005	5 hours
006	6 hours
007	7 hours
008	8 hours
009	9 hours
010	10 hours
011	11 hours
012	12 hours

013	13 hours
014	14 hours
015	15 hours
016	16 hours
017	17 hours
018	18 hours
019	19 hours
020	20 hours
021	21 hours
022	22 hours
023	23 hours
024	24 hours
025	25 hours
026	26 hours
027	27 hours
028	28 hours
029	29 hours
030	30 hours
031	31 hours
032	32 hours
033	33 hours
034	34 hours
035	35 hours
036	36 hours
037	37 hours
038	38 hours
039	39 hours
040	40 hours
041	41 hours
042	42 hours
043	43 hours
044	44 hours
045	45 hours
046	46 hours
047	47 hours
048	48 hours
049	49 hours
050	50 hours
051	51 hours

052	52 hours
053	53 hours
054	54 hours
055	55 hours
056	56 hours
057	57 hours
058	58 hours
059	59 hours
060	60 hours
061	61 hours
062	62 hours
063	63 hours
064	64 hours
065	65 hours
066	66 hours
067	67 hours
068	68 hours
069	69 hours
070	70 hours
071	71 hours
072	72 hours
073	73 hours
074	74 hours
075	75 hours
076	76 hours
077	77 hours
078	78 hours
079	79 hours
080	80 hours
081	81 hours
082	82 hours
083	83 hours
084	84 hours
085	85 hours
086	86 hours
087	87 hours
088	88 hours
089	89 hours
090	90 hours

091	91 hours
092	92 hours
093	93 hours
094	94 hours
095	95 hours
096	96 hours
097	97 hours
098	98 hours
099	99 hours
100	100 hours
101	101 hours
102	102 hours
103	103 hours
104	104 hours
105	105 hours
106	106 hours
107	107 hours
108	108 hours
109	109 hours
110	110 hours
111	111 hours
112	112 hours
113	113 hours
114	114 hours
115	115 hours
116	116 hours
117	117 hours
118	118 hours
119	119 hours
120	120 hours
121	121 hours
122	122 hours
123	123 hours
124	124 hours
125	125 hours
126	126 hours
127	127 hours
128	128 hours
129	129 hours

130	130 hours
131	131 hours
132	132 hours
133	133 hours
134	134 hours
135	135 hours
136	136 hours
137	137 hours
138	138 hours
139	139 hours
140	140+ hours
998	Unknown
999	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

HRSWORK1 indicates the number of hours the respondent worked per week at all jobs.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

HRSWORK2: Hours worked per week, categorized

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	None
1	1 to 14 hours (except tt1980, tt1990 and tt2000)
2	15 to 29 hours (except de1970, ps2017, tt1980, tt1990, tt2000, and ve1971)
3	30 to 39 hours (except de1970, ps2017, tt1980, tt1990, tt2000, and ve1971)
4	40-48 hours (except il1972, tt1980, tt1990, and tt2000)

5	49 hours or more (except il1972 and tt2000)
8	Unknown
9	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

HRSWORK2 indicates the number of hours the respondent worked per week at all jobs, categorized into intervals.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

IND: Industry, unrecoded

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 5 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

"Industry" refers to the activity or product of the establishment or sector in which the person worked. IND is classified according to the system used by the respective national census office at the time, and is not recoded by IPUMS-International.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

IND is a 5-digit numeric variable.

Some samples use fewer than 5 digits. In those cases, the data are right-justified, and the extra leading digits are padded with zeroes.

CodesArgentina 1970 - Spanish
Argentina 1980 - Spanish

Argentina 1991 - Spanish
Argentina 2001 - Spanish
Armenia 2001
Armenia 2011
Austria 1971-2001 - German
Austria 2011
Bangladesh 1991
Bangladesh 2001
Bangladesh 2011
Belarus 2009
Benin 1979
Benin 1992
Benin 2002
Benin 2013
Bolivia 1976
Bolivia 1992
Bolivia 2001
Bolivia 2012
Botswana 1981
Botswana 1991
Botswana 2001
Botswana 2011
Brazil 1960 - Portuguese
Brazil 1970 - Portuguese
Brazil 1980 - Portuguese
Brazil 1991 - Portuguese
Brazil 2000 - Portuguese
Brazil 2010
Burkina Faso 1996
Cambodia 1998
Cambodia 2004
Cambodia 2008
Cambodia 2013
Cambodia 2019
Cameroon 2005
Canada 1971
Canada 1981
Canada 1991-2001
Canada 2011
Chile 1960
Chile 1970
Chile 1982
Chile 1992
Chile 2002
Chile 2017
China 1982
China 1990
China 2000
Colombia 1964 - Spanish
Colombia 1973 - Spanish
Colombia 1993 - Spanish
Colombia 2005 - Spanish
Costa Rica 1963
Costa Rica 1973
Costa Rica 1984
Costa Rica 2000
Costa Rica 2011
Cote d'Ivoire 1988
Cote d'Ivoire 1998
Cuba 2002
Cuba 2012
Dominican Republic 1960

Dominican Republic 1970
Dominican Republic 1981
Dominican Republic 2002
Dominican Republic 2010
Ecuador 1962
Ecuador 1982
Ecuador 1990
Ecuador 2001
Ecuador 2010
Egypt 1986
Egypt 1996
Egypt 2006
El Salvador 1992
El Salvador 2007
Ethiopia 1984
Ethiopia 1994
Fiji 1966
Fiji 1976
Fiji 1986
Fiji 1996
Fiji 2007
Fiji 2014
Finland 2010
France 1962-1968 - French
France 1975-1982 - French
France 1990 - French
France 1999
France 2006
France 2011
Germany 1970
Germany 1971
Germany 1981
Germany 1987
Ghana 1984
Ghana 2000
Ghana 2010
Greece 1971
Greece 1981
Greece 1991-2001
Greece 2011
Guatemala 1964
Guatemala 1973
Guatemala 1981
Guatemala 1994
Guatemala 2002
Guinea 1983
Guinea 2014
Haiti 1971
Haiti 1982
Haiti 2003
Honduras 1961
Honduras 1974
Honduras 2001
Hungary 2001
Hungary 2011
India 1983
India 1987
India 1993
India 1999
India 2004
India 2009
Indonesia 1971

Indonesia 1976
Indonesia 1980
Indonesia 1985
Indonesia 1990
Indonesia 1995
Indonesia 2000
Indonesia 2005
Indonesia 2010
Iran 2006
Iran 2011
Iraq 1997
Ireland 1971
Ireland 1981
Ireland 1986
Ireland 1991
Ireland 1996
Ireland 2002
Ireland 2006
Ireland 2011
Ireland 2016
Israel 1972
Israel 1983
Israel 1995
Israel 2008
Italy 2001
Italy 2011
Italy Surveys 2011-2013
Italy Surveys 2014-2020
Jamaica 1982
Jamaica 1991
Jamaica 2001
Jordan 2004
Kyrgyz Republic 1999
Kyrgyz Republic 2009
Laos 1995
Laos 2005
Laos 2015
Lesotho 2006
Liberia 1974
Liberia 2008
Malawi 1987
Malawi 1998
Malawi 2008
Malaysia 1970
Malaysia 1980-1991
Malaysia 2000
Mali 1987
Mali 1998
Mali 2009
Mauritius 1990
Mauritius 2000
Mauritius 2011
Mexico 1960 - Spanish
Mexico 1970 - Spanish
Mexico 1990 - Spanish
Mexico 1995 - Spanish
Mexico 2000 - Spanish
Mexico 2010
Mexico 2015
Mexico 2020
Mexico surveys 2005-2019
Morocco 1982

Morocco 1994
Morocco 2004
Morocco 2014
Mozambique 1997
Mozambique 2007
Myanmar 2014
Nepal 2001
Nepal 2011
Netherlands 1960
Netherlands 1971
Netherlands 2001
Netherlands 2011
Nicaragua 1971
Nicaragua 1995
Nicaragua 2005
Nigeria 2006
Nigeria 2007
Nigeria 2008
Nigeria 2009
Nigeria 2010
Pakistan 1973
Palestine 1997
Palestine 2007
Palestine 2017
Panama 1960 - Spanish
Panama 1970-1980 - Spanish
Panama 1990-2000 - Spanish
Panama 2010
Papua New Guinea 1980
Papua New Guinea 2000
Paraguay 1962
Paraguay 1972
Paraguay 1982
Paraguay 1992
Paraguay 2002
Peru 1993
Peru 2007
Peru 2017
Philippines 1990
Philippines 1995
Philippines 2000
Philippines 2010
Poland 1978
Poland 2002
Portugal 1981 - Portuguese
Portugal 1991-2001 - Portuguese
Portugal 2011
Puerto Rico 1970-2005
Puerto Rico 2010
Puerto Rico 2015
Puerto Rico 2020
Romania 1977
Romania 1992
Romania 2002
Romania 2011
Rwanda 2002 - French
Rwanda 2012
Saint Lucia 1991
Senegal 1988
Senegal 2013
Sierra Leone 2004
South Africa 1996

South Africa 2001-2007
 South Sudan 2008
 Spain 1981 - Spanish
 Spain 1991 - Spanish
 Spain 2001 - Spanish
 Spain 2011
 Spain Surveys 2005-2020
 Sudan 2008
 Suriname 2004
 Suriname 2012
 Switzerland 1970-2000
 Switzerland 2011
 Tanzania 2002
 Tanzania 2012
 Thailand 1970
 Thailand 1980
 Thailand 1990
 Thailand 2000
 Togo 1970
 Togo 2010
 Trinidad and Tobago 1980
 Trinidad and Tobago 1990
 Trinidad and Tobago 2000
 Turkey 1985
 Turkey 1990
 Turkey 2000
 Uganda 2002
 United Kingdom 1961
 United Kingdom 1971
 United Kingdom 1991
 United Kingdom 2001
 United States 1960
 United States 1970
 United States 1980
 United States 1990
 United States 2000-2005
 United States 2010
 United States 2015
 United States 2020
 Uruguay 1963
 Uruguay 1985
 Uruguay 1996
 Uruguay 2006
 Venezuela 1981
 Venezuela 1990
 Venezuela 2001 - Spanish
 Vietnam 1989
 Vietnam 1999
 Vietnam 2009
 Vietnam 2019
 Zambia 1990
 Zambia 2000
 Zambia 2010

INDGEN: Industry, general recode

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
000	NIU (not in universe)
010	Agriculture, fishing, and forestry
020	Mining and extraction
030	Manufacturing
040	Electricity, gas, water and waste management
050	Construction
060	Wholesale and retail trade
070	Hotels and restaurants
080	Transportation, storage, and communications
090	Financial services and insurance
100	Public administration and defense
110	Services, not specified
111	Business services and real estate
112	Education
113	Health and social work
114	Other services
120	Private household services
130	Other industry, n.e.c.
998	Response suppressed
999	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

INDGEN recodes the industrial classifications of the various samples into twelve groups that can be fairly consistently identified across all available samples. The groupings roughly conform to the International Standard Industrial Classification (ISIC). The third digit of INDGEN retains important detail among the service industries that could not be consistently distinguished in all samples.

"Industry" refers to the activity or product of the establishment or sector in which a person worked.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
-------------------	------------

Work Variables -- PERSON

IPUMS

ISCO88A: Occupation, ISCO-1988, 3-digit**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
010	Armed forces
111	Legislators
112	Senior government officials
113	Traditional chiefs and heads of villages
114	Senior officials of special-interest organizations
121	Directors and chief executives
122	Production and operations department managers
123	Other department managers
131	General managers
199	Legislators, senior officials and managers not elsewhere classified
211	Physicists, chemists and related professionals
212	Mathematicians, statisticians and related professionals
213	Computing professionals
214	Architects, engineers and related professionals
221	Life science professionals
222	Health professionals (except nursing)
223	Nursing and midwifery professionals
231	College, university and higher education teaching professionals
232	Secondary education teaching professionals
233	Primary and pre-primary education teaching professionals
234	Special education teaching professionals
235	Other teaching professionals
241	Business professionals
242	Legal professionals
243	Archivists, librarians and related information professionals
244	Social science and related professionals
245	Writers and creative or performing artists

246	Religious professionals
299	Professionals no elsewhere classified
311	Physical and engineering science technicians
312	Computer associate professionals
313	Optical and electronic equipment operators
314	Ship and aircraft controllers and technicians
315	Safety and quality inspectors
321	Life science technicians and related associate professionals
322	Modern health associate professionals (except nursing)
323	Nursing and midwifery associate professionals
324	Traditional medicine practitioners and faith healers
331	Primary education teaching associate professionals
332	Pre-primary education teaching associate professionals
333	Special education teaching associate professionals
334	Other teaching associate professionals
341	Finance and sales associate professionals
342	Business services agents and trade brokers
343	Administrative associate professionals
344	Customs, tax and related government associate professionals
345	Police inspectors and detectives
346	Social work associate professionals
347	Artistic, entertainment and sports associate professionals
348	Religious associate professionals
399	Technicians and associate professionals not elsewhere classified
411	Secretaries and keyboard-operating clerks
412	Numerical clerks
413	Material-recording and transport clerks
414	Library, mail and related clerks
419	Other office clerks
421	Cashiers, tellers and related clerks
422	Client information clerks
499	Clerks not elsewhere classified
511	Travel attendants and related workers
512	Housekeeping and restaurant services workers
513	Personal care and related workers
514	Other personal services workers
515	Astrologers, fortune-tellers and related workers
516	Protective services workers
521	Fashion and other models

522	Shop salespersons and demonstrators
523	Stall and market salespersons
599	Service workers and shop and market sales workers not elsewhere classified
611	Market gardeners and crop growers
612	Market-oriented animal producers and related workers
613	Market-oriented crop and animal producers
614	Forestry and related workers
615	Fishery workers, hunters and trappers
621	Subsistence agricultural and fishery workers
699	Skilled agricultural and fishery workers not elsewhere classified
711	Miners, shotfirers, stone cutters and carvers
712	Building frame and related trades workers
713	Building finishers and related trades workers
714	Painters, building structure cleaners and related trades workers
721	Metal moulders, welders, sheet-metal workers, structural- metal preparers, and related trades workers
722	Blacksmiths, tool-makers and related trades workers
723	Machinery mechanics and fitters
724	Electrical and electronic equipment mechanics and fitters
731	Precision workers in metal and related materials
732	Potters, glass-makers and related trades workers
733	Handicraft workers in wood, textile, leather and related materials
734	Printing and related trades workers
741	Food processing and related trades workers
742	Wood treaters, cabinet-makers and related trades workers
743	Textile, garment and related trades workers
744	Pelt, leather and shoemaking trades workers
799	Craft and related trade workers not elsewhere classified
811	Mining- and mineral-processing-plant operators
812	Metal-processing-plant operators
813	Glass, ceramics and related plant operators
814	Wood-processing- and papermaking-plant operators
815	Chemical-processing-plant operators
816	Power-production and related plant operators
817	Automated-assembly-line and industrial-robot operators
821	Metal- and mineral-products machine operators
822	Chemical-products machine operators
823	Rubber- and plastic-products machine operators
824	Wood-products machine operators
825	Printing-, binding- and paper-products machine operators

826	Textile-, fur- and leather-products machine operators
827	Food and related products machine operators
828	Assemblers
829	Other machine operators and assemblers
831	Locomotive-engine drivers and related workers
832	Motor-vehicle drivers
833	Agricultural and other mobile-plant operators
834	Ships' deck crews and related workers
899	Other plant and machine operators and assemblers not elsewhere classified
911	Street vendors and related workers
912	Shoe cleaning and other street services elementary occupations
913	Domestic and related helpers, cleaners and launderers
914	Building caretakers, window and related cleaners
915	Messengers, porters, doorkeepers and related workers
916	Garbage collectors and related labourers
921	Agricultural, fishery and related labourers
931	Mining and construction labourers
932	Manufacturing labourers
933	Transport labourers and freight handlers
989	Elementary occupations not elsewhere classified
990	Other workers, not elsewhere classified
998	Unknown
999	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

ISCO88A provides the 3-digit occupation code for the respondent using the ISCO-1988 occupation classification.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

LABFORCE: Labor force participation

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	No, not in the labor force
2	Yes, in the labor force
8	Unknown
9	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

LABFORCE is a dichotomous variable identifying whether a person participated in the labor force. Labor force participation generally means working or seeking work within a specified reference period.

For most samples LABFORCE is a recode of EMPSTAT (employment status). A consistent lower age universe of 15 or older has been applied to increase comparability across samples. Full detail is retained in EMPSTAT, which should be used for any study of child labor.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

OCC: Occupation, unrecoded

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 4 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

OCC records the person's primary occupation, classified according to the system used by the respective national census office at the time. For someone with more than one job, the primary occupation is usually the one in which the person spent the most time or earned the most money, although this may not have been explicit in the instructions for a specific census.

To ensure confidentiality, very small occupations are recoded to a residual category indicating the persons had an occupation, but the job title is not identified. The number of cases recoded should be too small to affect analyses.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
-------------------	------------

Work Variables -- PERSON

IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

OCC is a 4-digit numeric variable.

Some samples use fewer than 4 digits. In those cases, the data are right-justified, and the extra leading digits are padded with zeroes.

CodesArgentina 1970 - Spanish

Argentina 1980 - Spanish

Argentina 1991 - Spanish

Argentina 2001 - Spanish

Armenia 2011

Austria 1971-2001 - German

Belarus 1999 - Russian

Belarus 2009

Benin 1979

Benin 1992

Benin 2002

Benin 2013

Bolivia 1976

Bolivia 1992

Bolivia 2001

Bolivia 2012

Botswana 1981

Botswana 1991

Botswana 2001

Botswana 2011

Brazil 1960 - Portuguese

Brazil 1970 - Portuguese

Brazil 1980 - Portuguese

Brazil 1991 - Portuguese

Brazil 2000 - Portuguese

Brazil 2010

Burkina Faso 1985

Burkina Faso 1996

Cambodia 1998

Cambodia 2004

Cambodia 2008

Cambodia 2013

Cambodia 2019

Cameroon 1976

Cameroon 2005

Canada 1971

Canada 1981-1991

Canada 2001

Canada 2011

Chile 1960

Chile 1970

Chile 1982

Chile 1992

Chile 2002

China 1982

China 1990

China 2000

Colombia 1964

Colombia 1973 - Spanish

Costa Rica 1973
Costa Rica 1984
Costa Rica 2000
Costa Rica 2011
Cote d'Ivoire 1988
Cote d'Ivoire 1998
Cuba 2002
Cuba 2012
Denmark 1845
Denmark 1880
Denmark 1885
Dominican Republic 1960
Dominican Republic 1970
Dominican Republic 1981
Dominican Republic 2002
Dominican Republic 2010
Ecuador 1962
Ecuador 1974
Ecuador 1982
Ecuador 1990
Ecuador 2001
Ecuador 2010
Egypt 1986
Egypt 2006
El Salvador 1992
El Salvador 2007
Ethiopia 1984
Ethiopia 1994
Fiji 1976
Fiji 1986
Fiji 1996
Fiji 2007
Fiji 2014
Finland 2010
France 1962-1990 - French
France 1999
France 2006
France 2011
Germany 1970
Germany 1981
Germany 1987
Ghana 1984
Ghana 2000
Ghana 2010
Greece 1971-1991 - Greek
Greece 2001 - Greek
Greece 2011
Guatemala 1964
Guatemala 1973
Guatemala 1981
Guatemala 1994
Guatemala 2002
Guinea 1983
Guinea 1996
Guinea 2014
Haiti 1982
Haiti 2003
Honduras 1961
Honduras 1974
Honduras 1988
Honduras 2001
Hungary 1970-1990

Hungary 2001
Hungary 2011
India 1983-2004
India 2009
Indonesia 1971
Indonesia 1976
Indonesia 1980
Indonesia 1985
Indonesia 1990
Indonesia 1995
Indonesia 2005
Iran 2006
Iran 2011
Iraq 1997
Ireland 1901
Ireland 1911
Ireland 1971
Ireland 1981
Ireland 1986
Ireland 1991
Ireland 1996
Ireland 2002
Ireland 2006
Ireland 2011
Ireland 2016
Israel 1972
Israel 1983
Israel 1995
Israel 2008
Italy 2001
Italy 2011
Italy Surveys 2011-2020
Jamaica 1982
Jamaica 1991
Jamaica 2001
Jordan 2004
Kenya 1989
Kyrgyz Republic 1999
Laos 1995
Lesotho 1996
Lesotho 2006
Liberia 1974
Liberia 2008
Malawi 1987
Malawi 1998
Malawi 2008
Malaysia 1970
Malaysia 1980-1991
Malaysia 2000
Mali 1987
Mali 1998
Mali 2009
Mauritius 1990
Mauritius 2000
Mauritius 2011
Mexico 1960 - Spanish
Mexico 1970 - Spanish
Mexico 1990 - Spanish
Mexico 1995 - Spanish
Mexico 2000 - Spanish
Mexico 2010
Mexico 2015

Mexico 2020
Mexico Surveys 2005-2020
Mongolia 2000
Morocco 1982
Morocco 1994
Morocco 2004
Morocco 2014
Mozambique 1997
Mozambique 2007
Myanmar 2014
Nepal 2001
Nepal 2011
Netherlands 1960
Netherlands 1971
Netherlands 2001
Netherlands 2011
Nicaragua 1971
Nicaragua 1995
Nicaragua 2005
Nigeria 2008
Nigeria 2009
Nigeria 2010
Pakistan 1973
Palestine 1997
Palestine 2007
Palestine 2017
Panama 1960 - Spanish
Panama 1970 - Spanish
Panama 1980 - Spanish
Panama 1990 - Spanish
Panama 2000 - Spanish
Panama 2010
Papua New Guinea 1980
Papua New Guinea 1990
Papua New Guinea 2000
Paraguay 1962
Paraguay 1972
Paraguay 1982
Paraguay 1992
Paraguay 2002
Peru 1993
Peru 2007
Peru 2017
Philippines 1990
Philippines 2000
Philippines 2010
Poland 1978
Poland 1988
Poland 2002
Portugal 1981 - Portuguese
Portugal 1991 - Portuguese
Portugal 2001 - Portuguese
Portugal 2011
Puerto Rico 1970
Puerto Rico 1980
Puerto Rico 1990
Puerto Rico 2000-2005
Puerto Rico 2010
Puerto Rico 2015
Puerto Rico 2020
Romania 1977
Romania 1992

Romania 2002
Romania 2011
Rwanda 2002 - French
Rwanda 2012
Saint Lucia 1991
Senegal 1988
Senegal 2002
Senegal 2013
Slovak Republic 1991
Slovak Republic 2001
Slovak Republic 2011
Sierra Leone 2004
Sierra Leone 2015
Slovenia 2002
South Africa 1996
South Africa 2001
South Africa 2007
South Sudan 2008
Spain 1981 - Spanish
Spain 1991 - Spanish
Spain 2001 - Spanish
Spain 2011
Spain Surveys 2005-2020
Sudan 2008
Suriname 2004
Suriname 2012
Switzerland 1970
Switzerland 1980
Switzerland 1990
Switzerland 2000
Switzerland 2011
Tanzania 1988
Tanzania 2002
Tanzania 2012
Thailand 1970
Thailand 1980
Thailand 1990
Thailand 2000
Togo 1960
Togo 1970
Togo 2010
Trinidad and Tobago 1990
Trinidad and Tobago 2000
Trinidad and Tobago 2011
Turkey 1985
Turkey 1990
Turkey 2000
Uganda 1991
Uganda 2002
Uganda 2014
United Kingdom 1961
United Kingdom 1971
United Kingdom 1991
United Kingdom 2001
United States 1960
United States 1970
United States 1980
United States 1990
United States 2000-2005
United States 2010
United States 2015
United States 2020

Uruguay 1963
 Uruguay 1975
 Uruguay 1996
 Uruguay 2006
 Venezuela 1981
 Venezuela 1990
 Venezuela 2001 - Spanish
 Vietnam 1989
 Vietnam 1999
 Vietnam 2009
 Vietnam 2019
 Zambia 1990
 Zambia 2000
 Zambia 2010
 Zimbabwe 2012

OCCISCO: Occupation, ISCO general

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Legislators, senior officials and managers
02	Professionals
03	Technicians and associate professionals
04	Clerks
05	Service workers and shop and market sales
06	Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
07	Crafts and related trades workers
08	Plant and machine operators and assemblers
09	Elementary occupations
10	Armed forces
11	Other occupations, unspecified or n.e.c.
97	Response suppressed
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

OCCISCO records the person's primary occupation, coded according to the major categories in the International Standard Classification of Occupations (ISCO) scheme for 1988. For someone with more than one job, the primary occupation is

typically the one in which the person had spent the most time or earned the most money.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

DISABLED: Disability status

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Yes, disabled
2	No, not disabled
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

DISABLED indicates whether the person reported a disability of any kind.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

GEOMIG1_5: 1st subnational geographic level of residence 5 years prior to survey, world [consistent boundaries over time]

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 6 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
032002	City of Buenos Aires [Province: Argentina]
032006	Buenos Aires province [Province: Argentina]
032010	Catamarca [Province: Argentina]
032014	Córdoba [Province: Argentina]
032018	Corrientes [Province: Argentina]
032022	Chaco [Province: Argentina]
032026	Chubut [Province: Argentina]
032030	Entre Ríos [Province: Argentina]
032034	Formosa [Province: Argentina]
032038	Jujuy [Province: Argentina]
032042	La Pampa [Province: Argentina]
032046	La Rioja [Province: Argentina]
032050	Mendoza [Province: Argentina]
032054	Misiones [Province: Argentina]
032058	Neuquén [Province: Argentina]
032062	Río Negro [Province: Argentina]
032066	Salta [Province: Argentina]
032070	San Juan [Province: Argentina]
032074	San Luis [Province: Argentina]
032078	Santa Cruz [Province: Argentina]
032082	Santa Fe [Province: Argentina]
032086	Santiago del Estero [Province: Argentina]
032090	Tucumán [Province: Argentina]
032094	Tierra del Fuego [Province: Argentina]
032096	Argentina, unknown [Province: Argentina]
032097	Foreign country [Province: Argentina]
032098	Unknown [Province: Argentina]
032999	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Argentina]
068001	Chuquisaca [Department: Bolivia]
068002	La Paz [Department: Bolivia]
068003	Cochabamba [Department: Bolivia]
068004	Oruro [Department: Bolivia]
068005	Potosí [Department: Bolivia]
068006	Tarija [Department: Bolivia]
068007	Santa Cruz [Department: Bolivia]

068008	Beni [Department: Bolivia]
068009	Pando [Department: Bolivia]
068096	Bolivia, province unknown [Department: Bolivia]
068097	Foreign country [Department: Bolivia]
068098	Unknown [Department: Bolivia]
068099	NIU (not in universe) [Department: Bolivia]
072001	Gaborone [District: Botswana]
072002	Francistown [District: Botswana]
072003	Lobatse [District: Botswana]
072004	Selebi Phikwe [District: Botswana]
072007	Central Tutume, Sowa [District: Botswana]
072010	Ngwaketse, Ngwaketse West, Ngwaketse Southern, Southern, Jwaneng [District: Botswana]
072011	Borolong [District: Botswana]
072020	South East [District: Botswana]
072030	Kweneng, Kweneng South, Kweneng North [District: Botswana]
072040	Kgatleng [District: Botswana]
072050	Central Serowe/Palapye [District: Botswana]
072051	Central Mahalapye [District: Botswana]
072052	Central Bobonong [District: Botswana]
072053	Central Boteti, Orapa [District: Botswana]
072060	North East [District: Botswana]
072070	Ngamiland East [District: Botswana]
072071	Ngamiland West, Delta [District: Botswana]
072072	Chobe [District: Botswana]
072080	Ghanzi, Central Kgalagadi Game Reserve (CKGR) [District: Botswana]
072090	Tshabong (Kgalagadi South) [District: Botswana]
072091	Hukunsti (Kgalagadi North) [District: Botswana]
072092	Botswana, district unknown [District: Botswana]
072097	Abroad [District: Botswana]
072098	Unknown [District: Botswana]
072099	NIU (not in universe) [District: Botswana]
076011	Rondônia [State: Brazil]
076012	Acre [State: Brazil]
076013	Amazonas [State: Brazil]
076014	Roraima [State: Brazil]
076015	Pará [State: Brazil]
076016	Amapá [State: Brazil]
076021	Maranhão [State: Brazil]
076022	Piauí [State: Brazil]

076023	Ceará [State: Brazil]
076024	Rio Grande do Norte [State: Brazil]
076025	Paraíba [State: Brazil]
076026	Pernambuco, Arquipelago de Fernando de Noronha [State: Brazil]
076027	Alagoas [State: Brazil]
076028	Sergipe [State: Brazil]
076029	Bahia [State: Brazil]
076031	Minas Gerais [State: Brazil]
076032	Espírito Santo [State: Brazil]
076033	Rio de Janeiro, Guanabara [State: Brazil]
076035	São Paulo [State: Brazil]
076036	Serra dos Aimorés [State: Brazil]
076041	Paraná [State: Brazil]
076042	Santa Catarina [State: Brazil]
076043	Rio Grande do Sul [State: Brazil]
076051	Mato Grosso do Sul, Mato Grosso [State: Brazil]
076052	Goiás, Tocantins [State: Brazil]
076053	Distrito Federal [State: Brazil]
076054	Brazil, unspecified [State: Brazil]
076097	Abroad [State: Brazil]
076098	Unknown [State: Brazil]
076099	NIU (not in universe) [State: Brazil]
120002	Centre, Sud [Province: Cameroon]
120003	Est [Province: Cameroon]
120004	Nord, Adamoua, Extrême Nord [Province: Cameroon]
120005	Littoral [Province: Cameroon]
120007	Nord Ouest [Province: Cameroon]
120008	Ouest [Province: Cameroon]
120010	Sud Ouest [Province: Cameroon]
120096	Cameroon - unknown arrondissement [Province: Cameroon]
120097	Foreign country [Province: Cameroon]
120098	Unknown [Province: Cameroon]
120099	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Cameroon]
124010	Newfoundland and Labrador [Province: Canada]
124011	Prince Edward Island, Yukon Territory, Northwest Territories, Nunavut [Province: Canada]
124012	Nova Scotia [Province: Canada]
124013	New Brunswick [Province: Canada]
124024	Quebec [Province: Canada]
124035	Ontario [Province: Canada]

124046	Manitoba [Province: Canada]
124047	Saskatchewan [Province: Canada]
124048	Alberta [Province: Canada]
124059	British Columbia [Province: Canada]
124099	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Canada]
152014	Iquique, Tamarugal [Province: Chile]
152021	Antofagasta [Province: Chile]
152022	El Loa [Province: Chile]
152023	Tocopilla [Province: Chile]
152031	Copiapó [Province: Chile]
152032	Chañaral [Province: Chile]
152033	Huasco [Province: Chile]
152041	Elqui [Province: Chile]
152042	Choapa [Province: Chile]
152043	Limarí [Province: Chile]
152051	Valparaíso, Quillota, Marga Marga, Isla de Pascua [Province: Chile]
152053	Los Andes [Province: Chile]
152054	Petorca [Province: Chile]
152056	San Antonio [Province: Chile]
152057	San Felipe de Aconcagua [Province: Chile]
152061	Cachapoal [Province: Chile]
152062	Cardenal Caro [Province: Chile]
152063	Colchagua [Province: Chile]
152071	Talca [Province: Chile]
152072	Cauquenes [Province: Chile]
152073	Curicó [Province: Chile]
152074	Linares [Province: Chile]
152081	Concepción [Province: Chile]
152082	Arauco [Province: Chile]
152083	Biobío [Province: Chile]
152091	Cautín [Province: Chile]
152092	Malleco [Province: Chile]
152101	Llanquihue [Province: Chile]
152102	Chiloé, Palena [Province: Chile]
152103	Osorno [Province: Chile]
152111	Coihaique [Province: Chile]
152112	Aisén, General Carrera, Capitan Prat [Province: Chile]
152121	Magallanes, Tierra del Fuego, Antártica Chilena [Province: Chile]
152124	Última Esperanza [Province: Chile]

152131	Santiago [Province: Chile]
152132	Cordillera [Province: Chile]
152133	Chacabuco [Province: Chile]
152134	Maipo [Province: Chile]
152135	Melipilla [Province: Chile]
152136	Talagante [Province: Chile]
152141	Valdivia, Ranco [Province: Chile]
152151	Arica, Parinacota [Province: Chile]
152163	Diguillín, Itata, Punilla [Province: Chile]
152997	Foreign country [Province: Chile]
152998	Unknown [Province: Chile]
152999	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Chile]
156011	Beijing [Province: China]
156012	Tianjin [Province: China]
156013	Hebei [Province: China]
156014	Shanxi [Province: China]
156015	Inner Mongolia [Province: China]
156021	Liaoning [Province: China]
156022	Jilin [Province: China]
156023	Heilongjiang [Province: China]
156031	Shanghai [Province: China]
156032	Jiangsu [Province: China]
156033	Zhejiang [Province: China]
156034	Anhui [Province: China]
156035	Fujian [Province: China]
156036	Jiangxi [Province: China]
156037	Shandong [Province: China]
156041	Henan [Province: China]
156042	Hubei [Province: China]
156043	Hunan [Province: China]
156044	Guangdong, Hainan [Province: China]
156045	Guangxi [Province: China]
156051	Sichuan, Chongqing [Province: China]
156052	Guizhou [Province: China]
156053	Yunnan [Province: China]
156054	Tibet [Province: China]
156061	Shaanxi [Province: China]
156062	Gansu [Province: China]
156063	Qinghai [Province: China]

156064	Ningxia [Province: China]
156065	Xinjiang [Province: China]
156071	Taiwan [China]
156072	Hong Kong [China]
156073	Macao [China]
156097	Other countries [Province: China]
156099	NIU (not in universe) [Province: China]
170005	Antioquia [Department: Colombia]
170008	Atlántico [Department: Colombia]
170011	Bogotá D.C., Cundinamarca [Department: Colombia]
170013	Bolívar, Sucre [Department: Colombia]
170015	Boyacá, Casanare [Department: Colombia]
170018	Caquetá [Department: Colombia]
170019	Cauca [Department: Colombia]
170023	Córdoba [Department: Colombia]
170027	Chocó [Department: Colombia]
170041	Huila [Department: Colombia]
170044	La Guajira [Department: Colombia]
170050	Meta [Department: Colombia]
170052	Nariño [Department: Colombia]
170054	Cesar, Norte De Santander, Magdalena [Department: Colombia]
170066	Caldas, Quindío, Risaralda [Department: Colombia]
170068	Santander [Department: Colombia]
170073	Tolima [Department: Colombia]
170076	Valle Del Cauca [Department: Colombia]
170081	Arauca [Department: Colombia]
170086	Putumayo [Department: Colombia]
170088	Archipiélago De San Andrés Y Providencia [Department: Colombia]
170095	Amazonas, Guaviare, Vaupés, Vichada, Guainía [Department: Colombia]
170097	Abroad, [Department: Colombia]
170098	Unknown, [Department: Colombia]
170099	NIU (not in universe), [Department: Colombia]
188001	San José [Province: Costa Rica]
188002	Alajuela [Province: Costa Rica]
188003	Cartago [Province: Costa Rica]
188004	Heredia [Province: Costa Rica]
188005	Guanacaste [Province: Costa Rica]
188006	Puntarenas [Province: Costa Rica]
188007	Limón [Province: Costa Rica]

188097	Foreign country [Province: Costa Rica]
188098	Unknown [Province: Costa Rica]
188099	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Costa Rica]
214001	Distrito Nacional, Santo Domingo [Province: Dominican Republic]
214002	Azua [Province: Dominican Republic]
214003	Baoruco, Barahona, Independencia [Province: Dominican Republic]
214005	Dajabón [Province: Dominican Republic]
214006	Duarte [Province: Dominican Republic]
214007	Elías Piña [Province: Dominican Republic]
214008	El Seibo, Hato Mayor [Province: Dominican Republic]
214009	Españat [Province: Dominican Republic]
214011	La Altagracia, La Romana [Province: Dominican Republic]
214013	Monseñor Nouel, La Vega [Province: Dominican Republic]
214014	María Trinidad Sánchez [Province: Dominican Republic]
214015	Monte Cristi [Province: Dominican Republic]
214016	Pedernales [Province: Dominican Republic]
214017	San José de Ocoa, Peravia [Province: Dominican Republic]
214018	Puerto Plata, Santiago [Province: Dominican Republic]
214019	Hermanas Mirabal [Province: Dominican Republic]
214020	Samaná [Province: Dominican Republic]
214021	San Cristóbal, Monte Plata [Province: Dominican Republic]
214022	San Juan [Province: Dominican Republic]
214023	San Pedro De Macorís [Province: Dominican Republic]
214024	Sánchez Ramírez [Province: Dominican Republic]
214026	Santiago Rodríguez [Province: Dominican Republic]
214027	Valverde [Province: Dominican Republic]
214097	Foreign country [Province: Dominican Republic]
214098	Unknown [Province: Dominican Republic]
214099	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Dominican Republic]
218001	Azuay [Province: Ecuador]
218002	Bolívar [Province: Ecuador]
218004	Carchi [Province: Ecuador]
218005	Cotopaxi [Province: Ecuador]
218006	Chimborazo [Province: Ecuador]
218007	El Oro [Province: Ecuador]
218009	Cañar, Esmeraldas, Guayas, Manabí, Manga del Cura [Disputed canton], Pichincha, El Piedrero [Disputed canton], Los Ríos, Santa Elena, Santo Domingo de las Tsáchilas, Galápagos [Province: Ecuador]
218010	Imbabura, Las Golondrinas [Disputed canton] [Province: Ecuador]
218011	Loja [Province: Ecuador]

218014	Morona Santiago [Province: Ecuador]
218016	Pastaza [Province: Ecuador]
218018	Tungurahua [Province: Ecuador]
218019	Zamora Chinchipe [Province: Ecuador]
218021	Napo, Orellana, Sucumbíos [Province: Ecuador]
218097	Foreign country [Province: Ecuador]
218098	Unknown and Disputed Zones [Province: Ecuador]
218999	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Ecuador]
242001	Central [Province: Fiji]
242002	Eastern [Province: Fiji]
242003	Northern [Province: Fiji]
242004	Western [Province: Fiji]
242097	Foreign country [Province: Fiji]
242098	Unknown [Province: Fiji]
242999	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Fiji]
288001	Western [Region: Ghana]
288002	Central [Region: Ghana]
288003	Greater Accra [Region: Ghana]
288004	Volta [Region: Ghana]
288005	Eastern [Region: Ghana]
288006	Ashanti [Region: Ghana]
288007	Brong Ahafo [Region: Ghana]
288008	Northern [Region: Ghana]
288009	Upper East [Region: Ghana]
288010	Upper West [Region: Ghana]
288098	Unknown [Region: Ghana]
288099	NIU (not in universe) [Region: Ghana]
300001	Etolia and Akarnania [Department: Greece]
300003	Viotia [Department: Greece]
300004	Evia [Department: Greece]
300005	Evrytania [Department: Greece]
300006	Fthiotida [Department: Greece]
300007	Fokida [Department: Greece]
300011	Argolida [Department: Greece]
300012	Arkadia [Department: Greece]
300013	Achaia [Department: Greece]
300014	Ilia [Department: Greece]
300015	Korinthia [Department: Greece]
300016	Lakonia [Department: Greece]

300017	Messinia [Department: Greece]
300021	Zakynthos [Department: Greece]
300022	Kerkyra [Department: Greece]
300023	Kefallinia [Department: Greece]
300024	Lefkada [Department: Greece]
300031	Arta [Department: Greece]
300032	Thesprotia [Department: Greece]
300033	Ioannina [Department: Greece]
300034	Preveza [Department: Greece]
300041	Karditsa [Department: Greece]
300042	Larissa [Department: Greece]
300043	Magnissia [Department: Greece]
300044	Trikala [Department: Greece]
300051	Grevena [Department: Greece]
300052	Drama [Department: Greece]
300053	Imathia [Department: Greece]
300054	Thessaloniki [Department: Greece]
300055	Kavala [Department: Greece]
300056	Kastoria [Department: Greece]
300057	Kilkis [Department: Greece]
300058	Kozani [Department: Greece]
300059	Pella [Department: Greece]
300061	Pieria [Department: Greece]
300062	Serres [Department: Greece]
300063	Florina [Department: Greece]
300064	Chalkidiki and Agion Oros [Department: Greece]
300071	Evros [Department: Greece]
300072	Xanthi [Department: Greece]
300073	Rodopi [Department: Greece]
300081	Dodekanissos [Department: Greece]
300082	Kyklades [Department: Greece]
300083	Lesvos [Department: Greece]
300084	Samos [Department: Greece]
300085	Chios [Department: Greece]
300091	Iraklio [Department: Greece]
300092	Lassithi [Department: Greece]
300093	Rethymno [Department: Greece]
300094	Chania [Department: Greece]
300101	Prefecture of Athens [Department: Greece]

300102	Prefecture of East Attiki [Department: Greece]
300103	Prefecture of West Attiki [Department: Greece]
300104	Prefecture of Pireas [Department: Greece]
300996	Foreign country [Department: Greece]
300997	Response suppressed [Department: Greece]
300998	Unknown [Department: Greece]
300999	NIU (not in universe) [Department: Greece]
320001	Guatemala [Department: Guatemala]
320002	El Progreso [Department: Guatemala]
320003	Sacatepéquez [Department: Guatemala]
320004	Chimaltenango [Department: Guatemala]
320005	Escuintla [Department: Guatemala]
320006	Santa Rosa [Department: Guatemala]
320007	Sololá [Department: Guatemala]
320008	Totonicapán [Department: Guatemala]
320009	Quetzaltenango [Department: Guatemala]
320010	Suchitepéquez [Department: Guatemala]
320011	Retalhuleu [Department: Guatemala]
320012	San Marcos [Department: Guatemala]
320013	Huehuetenango [Department: Guatemala]
320014	Quiché [Department: Guatemala]
320015	Baja Verapaz [Department: Guatemala]
320016	Alta Verapaz [Department: Guatemala]
320017	Petén [Department: Guatemala]
320018	Izabal [Department: Guatemala]
320019	Zacapa [Department: Guatemala]
320020	Chiquimula [Department: Guatemala]
320021	Jalapa [Department: Guatemala]
320022	Jutiapa [Department: Guatemala]
320097	Foreign Country [Department: Guatemala]
320098	Unknown [Department: Guatemala]
320099	NIU [Department: Guatemala]
332003	Nord (North) and Nord'est (North East) [Department: Haiti]
332006	Centre (Central), L'Artibonite, Ouest (West), Sud'Est (South East) [Department: Haiti]
332007	Grand'Anse, Nippes, Sud (South) [Department: Haiti]
332009	Nord'Ouest (North West) [Department: Haiti]
332097	Foreign Country [Department: Haiti]
332098	Unknown [Department: Haiti]
332099	NIU (not in universe) [Department: Haiti]

340001	Atlántida [Department: Honduras]
340002	Colón [Department: Honduras]
340003	Comayagua [Department: Honduras]
340004	Copán [Department: Honduras]
340005	Cortés [Department: Honduras]
340006	Choluteca [Department: Honduras]
340007	El Paraíso [Department: Honduras]
340008	Francisco Morazán [Department: Honduras]
340009	Gracias a Dios [Department: Honduras]
340010	Intibucá [Department: Honduras]
340011	Islas de la Bahía [Department: Honduras]
340012	La Paz [Department: Honduras]
340013	Lempira [Department: Honduras]
340014	Ocotepeque [Department: Honduras]
340015	Olancho [Department: Honduras]
340016	Santa Bárbara [Department: Honduras]
340017	Valle [Department: Honduras]
340018	Yoro [Department: Honduras]
340097	Abroad [Department: Honduras]
340098	Unknown [Department: Honduras]
340999	NIU (not in universe) [Department: Honduras]
360011	Nanggroe Aceh Darussalam [Province: Indonesia]
360012	Sumatera Utara [Province: Indonesia]
360013	Sumatera Barat [Province: Indonesia]
360014	Kepulauan Riau, Riau [Province: Indonesia]
360015	Jambi [Province: Indonesia]
360016	Bangka Belitung, Sumatera Selatan [Province: Indonesia]
360017	Bengkulu [Province: Indonesia]
360018	Lampung [Province: Indonesia]
360031	DKI Jakarta [Province: Indonesia]
360032	Banten, Jawa Barat [Province: Indonesia]
360033	Jawa Tengah [Province: Indonesia]
360034	DKI Yogyakarta [Province: Indonesia]
360035	Jawa Timur [Province: Indonesia]
360051	Bali [Province: Indonesia]
360052	Nusa Tenggara Barat [Province: Indonesia]
360053	Nusa Tenggara Timur [Province: Indonesia]
360061	Kalimantan Barat [Province: Indonesia]
360062	Kalimantan Tengah [Province: Indonesia]

360063	Kalimantan Selatan [Province: Indonesia]
360064	Kalimantan Timur [Province: Indonesia]
360071	Gorontalo, Sulawesi Utara [Province: Indonesia]
360072	Sulawesi Tengah [Province: Indonesia]
360073	Sulawesi Barat, Sulawesi Selatan [Province: Indonesia]
360074	Sulawesi Tenggara [Province: Indonesia]
360081	Maluku, Maluku Utara [Province: Indonesia]
360094	Papua, Papua Barat [Province: Indonesia]
360097	Abroad [Province: Indonesia]
360098	Unknown [Province: Indonesia]
360099	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Indonesia]
360626	East Timor [Province: Indonesia]
376001	Jerusalem [District: Israel]
376002	Northern [District: Israel]
376003	Haifa [District: Israel]
376004	Central [District: Israel]
376005	Tel-Aviv [District: Israel]
376006	Southern [District: Israel]
376071	Golan [District: Israel]
376072	Judea, Samaria and Gaza areas [District: Israel]
376098	Unknown [District: Israel]
376099	NIU (not in universe) [District: Israel]
458001	Johor [State: Malaysia]
458002	Kedah [State: Malaysia]
458003	Kelantan [State: Malaysia]
458004	Melaka [State: Malaysia]
458005	Negeri Sembilan [State: Malaysia]
458006	Pahang [State: Malaysia]
458007	Pulau Pinang [State: Malaysia]
458008	Perak [State: Malaysia]
458009	Perlis [State: Malaysia]
458010	Selangor, Kuala Lumpur Federal Territory [State: Malaysia]
458011	Terengganu [State: Malaysia]
458012	Sabah, Labuan Federal Territory [State: Malaysia]
458013	Sarawak [State: Malaysia]
458097	Other countries [State: Malaysia]
458098	Unknown [State: Malaysia]
480011	Port Louis [District: Mauritius]
480012	Pamplemousses [District: Mauritius]

480013	Rivière du Rempart [District: Mauritius]
480014	Flacq [District: Mauritius]
480015	Grand Port [District: Mauritius]
480016	Savanne [District: Mauritius]
480017	Plaines Wilhems [District: Mauritius]
480018	Moka [District: Mauritius]
480019	Black River [District: Mauritius]
480020	Rodrigues, Agaléga Islands, Saint Brandon [District: Mauritius]
480097	Abroad [District: Mauritius]
480098	Unknown [District: Mauritius]
480099	NIU [District: Mauritius]
484001	Aguascalientes [State: Mexico]
484002	Baja California [State: Mexico]
484003	Baja California Sur [State: Mexico]
484004	Campeche [State: Mexico]
484005	Coahuila de Zaragoza [State: Mexico]
484006	Colima [State: Mexico]
484007	Chiapas [State: Mexico]
484008	Chihuahua [State: Mexico]
484009	Distrito Federal [State: Mexico]
484010	Durango [State: Mexico]
484011	Guanajuato [State: Mexico]
484012	Guerrero [State: Mexico]
484013	Hidalgo [State: Mexico]
484014	Jalisco [State: Mexico]
484015	México [State: Mexico]
484016	Michoacán de Ocampo [State: Mexico]
484017	Morelos [State: Mexico]
484018	Nayarit [State: Mexico]
484019	Nuevo León [State: Mexico]
484020	Oaxaca [State: Mexico]
484021	Puebla [State: Mexico]
484022	Querétaro [State: Mexico]
484023	Quintana Roo [State: Mexico]
484024	San Luis Potosí [State: Mexico]
484025	Sinaloa [State: Mexico]
484026	Sonora [State: Mexico]
484027	Tabasco [State: Mexico]
484028	Tamaulipas [State: Mexico]

484029	Tlaxcala [State: Mexico]
484030	Veracruz de Ignacio de la Llave [State: Mexico]
484031	Yucatán [State: Mexico]
484032	Zacatecas [State: Mexico]
484097	Abroad [State: Mexico]
484098	Unknown [State: Mexico]
484099	NIU (not in universe) [State: Mexico]
496001	Arkhangai [Province: Mongolia]
496002	Bayan-Olgii [Province: Mongolia]
496003	Bayankhongor [Province: Mongolia]
496004	Bulgan [Province: Mongolia]
496005	Govi-Altai [Province: Mongolia]
496006	Dornogovi, Govisumber [Province: Mongolia]
496007	Dornod [Province: Mongolia]
496008	Dundgovi [Province: Mongolia]
496009	Zavkhan [Province: Mongolia]
496010	Ovorkhangai [Province: Mongolia]
496011	Omnogovi [Province: Mongolia]
496012	Sukhbaatar [Province: Mongolia]
496013	Selenge [Province: Mongolia]
496014	Tov [Province: Mongolia]
496015	Uvs [Province: Mongolia]
496016	Khovd [Province: Mongolia]
496017	Khovsgol [Province: Mongolia]
496018	Khentii [Province: Mongolia]
496019	Darkhan-Uul [Province: Mongolia]
496020	Ulaanbaatar [Province: Mongolia]
496021	Orkhon [Province: Mongolia]
496097	Abroad [Province: Mongolia]
496098	Unknown [Province: Mongolia]
496099	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Mongolia]
508001	Niassa [Province: Mozambique]
508002	Cabo Delgado [Province: Mozambique]
508003	Nampula [Province: Mozambique]
508004	Zambézia [Province: Mozambique]
508005	Tete [Province: Mozambique]
508006	Manica [Province: Mozambique]
508007	Sofala [Province: Mozambique]
508008	Inhambane [Province: Mozambique]

508009	Gaza [Province: Mozambique]
508010	Maputo province [Province: Mozambique]
508011	Maputo city [Province: Mozambique]
508097	Foreign Country [Province: Mozambique][Province: Mozambique]
508098	Unknown [Province: Mozambique]
508099	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Mozambique]
524001	Mechi [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524002	Koshi [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524003	Sagarmatha [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524004	Janakpur [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524005	Bagmati [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524006	Narayani [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524007	Gandaki [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524008	Dhawalagiri [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524009	Lumbini [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524010	Rapti [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524011	Bheri [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524012	Karnali [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524013	Seti [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524014	Mahakali [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524097	Foreign Country [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524098	Unknown [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
524099	NIU [Administrative Zone: Nepal]
558005	Nueva Segovia, Jinotega [Department: Nicaragua]
558020	Madriz [Department: Nicaragua]
558025	Estelí, León [Department: Nicaragua]
558030	Chinandega [Department: Nicaragua]
558040	Matagalpa, Atlantico Norte, Atlantico Sur, Zelaya [Department: Nicaragua]
558050	Boaco [Department: Nicaragua]
558055	Managua, Masaya [Department: Nicaragua]
558065	Chontales [Department: Nicaragua]
558070	Granada [Department: Nicaragua]
558075	Carazo [Department: Nicaragua]
558080	Rivas [Department: Nicaragua]
558085	Río San Juan [Department: Nicaragua]
558097	Abroad [Department: Nicaragua]
558098	Unknown [Department: Nicaragua]
558999	NIU (not in universe) [Department: Nicaragua]
598001	Western [Province: Papua New Guinea]

598002	Gulf [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598003	Central [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598004	National Capital District [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598005	Milne Bay [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598006	Northern [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598007	Southern Highlands, Hela [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598008	Enga [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598009	Western Highlands, Jiwaka [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598010	Chimbu [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598011	Eastern Highlands [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598012	Morobe [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598013	Madang [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598014	East Sepik [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598015	West Sepik [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598016	Manus [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598017	New Ireland [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598018	East New Britain [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598019	West New Britain [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598020	Autonomous Region of Bougainville [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598097	Foreign country [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598098	Unknown [Province: Papua New Guinea]
598099	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Papua New Guinea]
600001	Concepción [Department: Paraguay]
600002	San Pedro [Department: Paraguay]
600003	Cordillera [Department: Paraguay]
600004	Guaira [Department: Paraguay]
600005	Caaguazú, Canindeyú, Alto Paraná [Department: Paraguay]
600006	Caazapá [Department: Paraguay]
600007	Itapúa [Department: Paraguay]
600008	Misiones, Ñeembucú [Department: Paraguay]
600009	Paraguarí [Department: Paraguay]
600011	Central [Department: Paraguay]
600013	Amambay [Department: Paraguay]
600015	Alto Paraguay, Boquerón, Presidente Hayes [Department: Paraguay]
600019	Asunción [Department: Paraguay]
600097	Foreign Country [Department: Paraguay]
600098	Unknown [Department: Paraguay]
600999	NIU (not in universe) [Department: Paraguay]
604001	Amazonas [Department: Peru]

604002	Ancash [Department: Peru]
604003	Apurímac [Department: Peru]
604004	Arequipa [Department: Peru]
604005	Ayacucho [Department: Peru]
604006	Cajamarca [Department: Peru]
604007	Callao [Department: Peru]
604008	Cusco [Department: Peru]
604009	Huancavelica [Department: Peru]
604010	Huánuco [Department: Peru]
604011	Ica [Department: Peru]
604012	Junín [Department: Peru]
604013	La Libertad [Department: Peru]
604014	Lambayeque [Department: Peru]
604015	Lima [Department: Peru]
604016	Loreto [Department: Peru]
604017	Madre de Dios [Department: Peru]
604018	Moquegua [Department: Peru]
604019	Pasco [Department: Peru]
604020	Piura [Department: Peru]
604021	Puno [Department: Peru]
604022	San Martín [Department: Peru]
604023	Tacna [Department: Peru]
604024	Tumbes [Department: Peru]
604025	Ucayali [Department: Peru]
604097	Abroad [Department: Peru]
604099	NIU (not in universe) [Department: Peru]
608001	Abra [Province: Philippines]
608002	Agusan del norte [Province: Philippines]
608003	Agusan del sur [Province: Philippines]
608004	Aklan [Province: Philippines]
608005	Albay [Province: Philippines]
608006	Antique [Province: Philippines]
608007	Basilan, City Of Isabela [Province: Philippines]
608008	Bataan [Province: Philippines]
608010	Batangas [Province: Philippines]
608011	Benguet [Province: Philippines]
608012	Bohol [Province: Philippines]
608013	Bukidnon [Province: Philippines]
608014	Bulacan [Province: Philippines]

608015	Cagayan, Batanes [Province: Philippines]
608016	Camarines norte [Province: Philippines]
608017	Camarines Sur [Province: Philippines]
608018	Camiguin [Province: Philippines]
608019	Capiz [Province: Philippines]
608020	Catanduanes [Province: Philippines]
608021	Cavite [Province: Philippines]
608022	Cebu [Province: Philippines]
608023	Davao (Davao del Norte) [Province: Philippines]
608024	Davao del Sur, Davao Occidental [Province: Philippines]
608025	Davao Oriental [Province: Philippines]
608026	Eastern Samar [Province: Philippines]
608027	Ifugao [Province: Philippines]
608028	Ilocos Norte [Province: Philippines]
608029	Ilocos Sur [Province: Philippines]
608030	Iloilo, Guimaras [Province: Philippines]
608031	Isabela [Province: Philippines]
608032	Kalinga-Apayao, Apayo, Kalinga [Province: Philippines]
608033	La Union [Province: Philippines]
608034	Laguna [Province: Philippines]
608035	Lanao del Norte [Province: Philippines]
608036	Lanao del Sur, Maguindanao, Marawi City and Cotabato city [Province: Philippines]
608037	Leyte, Biliran [Province: Philippines]
608039	Manila [Province: Philippines]
608040	Marinduque [Province: Philippines]
608041	Masbate [Province: Philippines]
608042	Misamis Occidental [Province: Philippines]
608043	Misamis Oriental [Province: Philippines]
608044	Mountain Province [Province: Philippines]
608045	Negros Occidental [Province: Philippines]
608046	Negros Oriental [Province: Philippines]
608047	Cotabato (North Cotabato) [Province: Philippines]
608048	Northern Samar [Province: Philippines]
608049	Nueva Ecija [Province: Philippines]
608050	Nueva Vizcaya [Province: Philippines]
608051	Occidental Mindoro [Province: Philippines]
608052	Oriental Mindoro [Province: Philippines]
608053	Palawan [Province: Philippines]
608054	Pampanga [Province: Philippines]

608055	Pangasinan [Province: Philippines]
608056	Quezon [Province: Philippines]
608057	Quirino [Province: Philippines]
608058	Rizal [Province: Philippines]
608059	Romblon [Province: Philippines]
608060	Samar (Western Samar) [Province: Philippines]
608061	Siquijor [Province: Philippines]
608062	Sorsogon [Province: Philippines]
608063	South Cotabato, Sarangani [Province: Philippines]
608064	Southern Leyte [Province: Philippines]
608065	Sultan Kudarat [Province: Philippines]
608066	Sulu [Province: Philippines]
608067	Surigao Del Norte, Dinagat islands [Province: Philippines]
608068	Surigao del Sur [Province: Philippines]
608069	Tarlac [Province: Philippines]
608070	Tawi-Tawi [Province: Philippines]
608071	Zambales [Province: Philippines]
608072	Zamboanga Norte [Province: Philippines]
608073	Zamboanga del Sur, Zamboanga Sibugay [Province: Philippines]
608074	Manila Metro, 2nd District [Province: Philippines]
608075	Manila Metro, 3rd District [Province: Philippines]
608076	Manila Metro, 4th District [Province: Philippines]
608077	Aurora [Province: Philippines]
608097	Foreign country [Province: Philippines]
608098	Unknown [Province: Philippines]
608099	NIU (not in universe) [Province: Philippines]
620111	Minho-Lima [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620112	Cávado [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620113	Ave [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620114	Grande Porto [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620115	Tâmega [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620116	Entre Douro e Vouga [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620117	Douro [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620118	Alto Trás-os-Montes [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620150	Algarve [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620161	Baixo Vouga [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620162	Baixo Mondego [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620163	Pinhal Litoral [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620165	Dão-Lafões [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]

620166	Oeste [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620167	Médio Tejo [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620169	Other Center [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620171	Grande Lisboa [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620172	Península de Setúbal [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620185	Lezíria do Tejo [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620189	Other Alentejo [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620200	Região Autónoma dos Açores [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620300	Região Autónoma da Madeira [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620998	Foreign country [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
620999	NIU (not in universe) [Subregion (NUTS-3): Portugal]
686001	Dakar [Region: Senegal]
686002	Ziguinchor [Region: Senegal]
686003	Diourbel [Region: Senegal]
686004	Saint Louis, Louga, Matam [Region: Senegal]
686005	Tambacounda, Kedougou [Region: Senegal]
686006	Kaolack, Fatick, Kaffrine [Region: Senegal]
686007	Thiès [Region: Senegal]
686010	Kolda, Sedhiou [Region: Senegal]
686097	Abroad [Region: Senegal]
686098	Unknown [Region: Senegal]
686099	NIU (not in universe) [Region: Senegal]
694011	Kailahun [District: Sierra Leone]
694012	Kenema [District: Sierra Leone]
694013	Kono [District: Sierra Leone]
694021	Bombali [District: Sierra Leone]
694022	Kambia [District: Sierra Leone]
694023	Koinadugu [District: Sierra Leone]
694024	Port Loko [District: Sierra Leone]
694025	Tonkolili [District: Sierra Leone]
694031	Bo [District: Sierra Leone]
694032	Bonthe [District: Sierra Leone]
694033	Moyamba [District: Sierra Leone]
694034	Pujehun [District: Sierra Leone]
694041	Western Rural [District: Sierra Leone]
694042	Western Urban [District: Sierra Leone]
694097	Abroad [District: Sierra Leone]
694098	Unknown [District: Sierra Leone]
694099	NIU [District: Sierra Leone]

704001	Th nh Phố H Nội, Vĩnh Phúc, Ho Bình, Phú Thọ [Province: Vietnam]
704002	H Giang, Tuyên Quang [Province: Vietnam]
704003	Cao Bằng, Bắc Kạn, Thái Nguyên [Province: Vietnam]
704010	L o Cai, Điện Biên, Lai Châu, Yên Bái [Province: Vietnam]
704014	Sơn La [Province: Vietnam]
704020	Lạng Sơn [Province: Vietnam]
704022	Quảng Ninh [Province: Vietnam]
704024	Bắc Giang, Bắc Ninh [Province: Vietnam]
704030	Hải Dương, Hưng Yên [Province: Vietnam]
704031	Th nh Phố Hải Phòng [Province: Vietnam]
704034	Thái Bình [Province: Vietnam]
704035	H Nam, Nam Định, Ninh Bình [Province: Vietnam]
704038	Thanh Hoá [Province: Vietnam]
704040	Nghệ An, H Tĩnh [Province: Vietnam]
704044	Quảng Bình [Province: Vietnam]
704045	Quảng Trị [Province: Vietnam]
704046	Thừa Thiên Huế [Province: Vietnam]
704048	Th nh Phố Đ Nẵng, Quảng Nam [Province: Vietnam]
704051	Quảng Ngãi [Province: Vietnam]
704052	Bình Định [Province: Vietnam]
704054	Phú Yên [Province: Vietnam]
704056	Khánh Ho [Province: Vietnam]
704058	Ninh Thuận, Bình Thuận [Province: Vietnam]
704062	Kon Tum, Gia Lai [Province: Vietnam]
704066	Đắk Lắk, Đắk Nông [Province: Vietnam]
704068	Lâm Đồng [Province: Vietnam]
704070	Bình Phước, Bình Dương [Province: Vietnam]
704072	Tây Ninh [Province: Vietnam]
704075	Đồng Nai, B Rịa - Vũng T u [Province: Vietnam]
704079	Th nh Phố Hồ Chí Minh [Province: Vietnam]
704080	Long An [Province: Vietnam]
704082	Tiền Giang [Province: Vietnam]
704083	Bến Tre [Province: Vietnam]
704084	Tr Vinh, Vĩnh Long [Province: Vietnam]
704087	Đồng Tháp [Province: Vietnam]
704089	An Giang [Province: Vietnam]
704091	Kiên Giang [Province: Vietnam]
704092	Th nh Phố Cần Thơ, Hậu Giang, Sóc Trăng [Province: Vietnam]
704095	Bạc Liêu, C Mau [Province: Vietnam]

704097	Foreign Country [Province: Vietnam]
704098	Unknown [Province: Vietnam]
704099	NIU [Province: Vietnam]
710001	Western Cape [Province: South Africa]
710004	Free State [Province: South Africa]
710005	Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal [Province: South Africa]
710007	Gauteng, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, North West, Northern Cape [Province: South Africa]
710097	Foreign country [Province: South Africa]
710098	Unknown [Province: South Africa]
710099	NIU (not in universe) [Province: South Africa]
724011	Galicia [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724012	Principado de Asturias [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724013	Cantabria [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724021	País Vasco [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724022	Comunidad Foral de Navarra [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724023	La Rioja [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724024	Aragón [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724030	Comunidad de Madrid [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724041	Castilla y León [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724042	Castilla-La Mancha [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724043	Extremadura [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724051	Cataluña [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724052	Comunidad Valenciana [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724053	Islas Baleares [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724061	Andalucía [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724062	Región de Murcia [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724063	Ciudad Autónoma de Ceuta [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724064	Ciudad Autónoma de Melilla [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724070	Canarias [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724097	Foreign country [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
724999	NIU [Communities & autonomous city: Spain]
780010	Port of Spain [Region: Trinidad and Tobago]
780020	San Fernando [Region: Trinidad and Tobago]
780080	Diego Martin, San Juan/Laventille, Tunapuna/Piarco, Chaguanas, Sangre Grande, Couva/Tabaquite /Talparo, Rio Claro/Mayaro, Siparia, Penal/Debe, Princess Town, Port Fontin, Caroni, St. Andrew/St. David, Victoria, St. Patrick, Arima [Region: Trinidad and Tobago]
780094	St. Paul, St. Mary, St. David, St. George, St. Patrick, St. Andrew, St. John, Tobago [Region: Trinidad and Tobago]
780098	Unknown [Region: Trinidad and Tobago]
780099	NIU (not in universe) [Region: Trinidad and Tobago]
840001	Alabama [State: United States]

840002	Alaska [State: United States]
840004	Arizona [State: United States]
840005	Arkansas [State: United States]
840006	California [State: United States]
840008	Colorado [State: United States]
840009	Connecticut [State: United States]
840010	Delaware [State: United States]
840011	District of Columbia [State: United States]
840012	Florida [State: United States]
840013	Georgia [State: United States]
840015	Hawaii [State: United States]
840016	Idaho [State: United States]
840017	Illinois [State: United States]
840018	Indiana [State: United States]
840019	Iowa [State: United States]
840020	Kansas [State: United States]
840021	Kentucky [State: United States]
840022	Louisiana [State: United States]
840023	Maine [State: United States]
840024	Maryland [State: United States]
840025	Massachusetts [State: United States]
840026	Michigan [State: United States]
840027	Minnesota [State: United States]
840028	Mississippi [State: United States]
840029	Missouri [State: United States]
840030	Montana [State: United States]
840031	Nebraska [State: United States]
840032	Nevada [State: United States]
840033	New Hampshire [State: United States]
840034	New Jersey [State: United States]
840035	New Mexico [State: United States]
840036	New York [State: United States]
840037	North Carolina [State: United States]
840038	North Dakota [State: United States]
840039	Ohio [State: United States]
840040	Oklahoma [State: United States]
840041	Oregon [State: United States]
840042	Pennsylvania [State: United States]
840044	Rhode Island [State: United States]

840045	South Carolina [State: United States]
840046	South Dakota [State: United States]
840047	Tennessee [State: United States]
840048	Texas [State: United States]
840049	Utah [State: United States]
840050	Vermont [State: United States]
840051	Virginia [State: United States]
840053	Washington [State: United States]
840054	West Virginia [State: United States]
840055	Wisconsin [State: United States]
840056	Wyoming [State: United States]
840097	Abroad [State: United States]
840098	Unknown [State: United States]
840999	NIU (not in universe) [State: United States]
858001	Montevideo [Department: Uruguay]
858002	Artigas [Department: Uruguay]
858003	Canelones [Department: Uruguay]
858004	Cerro Largo [Department: Uruguay]
858005	Colonia [Department: Uruguay]
858006	Durazno [Department: Uruguay]
858007	Flores [Department: Uruguay]
858008	Florida [Department: Uruguay]
858009	Lavalleja [Department: Uruguay]
858010	Maldonado [Department: Uruguay]
858011	Paysandú [Department: Uruguay]
858012	Río Negro [Department: Uruguay]
858013	Rivera [Department: Uruguay]
858014	Rocha [Department: Uruguay]
858015	Salto [Department: Uruguay]
858016	San Jose [Department: Uruguay]
858017	Soriano [Department: Uruguay]
858018	Tacuarembó [Department: Uruguay]
858019	Treinta Y Tres [Department: Uruguay]
858097	Abroad [Department: Uruguay]
858098	Unknown [Department: Uruguay]
858999	NIU (not in universe) [Department: Uruguay]
862001	Federal District, Vargas [State: Venezuela]
862002	Amazonas Federal Territory [State: Venezuela]
862003	Anzoátegui [State: Venezuela]

862004	Apure [State: Venezuela]
862005	Aragua [State: Venezuela]
862007	Bolívar [State: Venezuela]
862008	Carabobo [State: Venezuela]
862009	Cojedes [State: Venezuela]
862010	Amacuros Delta Federal Territory [State: Venezuela]
862011	Falcón [State: Venezuela]
862012	Guárico [State: Venezuela]
862013	Lara [State: Venezuela]
862014	Barinas, Mérida [State: Venezuela]
862015	Miranda [State: Venezuela]
862016	Monagas [State: Venezuela]
862017	Nueva Esparta, Federal Dependencies [State: Venezuela]
862018	Portuguesa [State: Venezuela]
862019	Sucre [State: Venezuela]
862020	Táchira [State: Venezuela]
862021	Trujillo [State: Venezuela]
862022	Yaracuy [State: Venezuela]
862023	Zulia [State: Venezuela]
862097	Foreign country [State: Venezuela]
862098	Unknown [State: Venezuela]
862099	NIU (not in universe) [State: Venezuela]

description

DEFINITION

GEOMIG1_5 indicates the major administrative unit in which the person resided five years prior to the survey. Only intra-national migrations are recorded; however, the variable incorporates geographies for every country that lists place of residence five years ago, to enable comparative analysis of subnational migration. Foreign migrants are coded 097 or 997. Codes for GEOMIG1_5 match the geographic codes in GEOLEV1 (current place of residence). For similar information for different time intervals since migration, see variables GEOMIG1_P, GEOMIG1_1, and GEOMIG1_10. More on migration and geography can be found [here](#).

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

HRSACTUAL1: Actual hours worked per week

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
000	0 hours
001	1 hour
002	2 hours
003	3
004	4
005	5
006	6
007	7
008	8
009	9
010	10
011	11
012	12
013	13
014	14
015	15
016	16
017	17
018	18
019	19
020	20
021	21
022	22
023	23
024	24
025	25
026	26
027	27
028	28
029	29
030	30
031	31

032	32
033	33
034	34
035	35
036	36
037	37
038	38
039	39
040	40
041	41
042	42
043	43
044	44
045	45
046	46
047	47
048	48
049	49
050	50
051	51
052	52
053	53
054	54
055	55
056	56
057	57
058	58
059	59
060	60
061	61
062	62
063	63
064	64
065	65
066	66
067	67
068	68
069	69
070	70

071	71
072	72
073	73
074	74
075	75
076	76
077	77
078	78
079	79
080	80
081	81
082	82
083	83
084	84
085	85
086	86
087	87
088	88
089	89
090	90
091	91
092	92
093	93
094	94
095	95
096	96
097	97
098	98
099	99
100	100
101	101
102	102
103	103
104	104
105	105
106	106
107	107
108	108
109	109

110	110
111	111
112	112
113	113
114	114
115	115
116	116
117	117
118	118
119	119
120	120
121	121
122	122
123	123
124	124
125	125
126	126
127	127
128	128
129	129
130	130
131	131
132	132
133	133
134	134
135	135
136	136
137	137
138	138
139	139
140	140+ hours
998	Unknown
999	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

HRSACTUAL1 indicates the actual number of hours the respondent worked per week at all jobs.ss

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

HRSACTUAL2: Actual hours worked per week, categorized

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	None
1	1 to 14 hours (except tt1980, tt1990, and tt2000)
2	15 to 29 hours (except ps2017, tt1980, tt1990, tt2000, and ve1971)
3	30 to 39 hours (except ps2017, tt1980, tt1990, tt2000, and ve1971)
4	40 to 48 hours (except tt1980, tt1990, and tt2000)
5	49 hours or more (except tt2000)
8	Unknown
9	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

HRSACTUAL2 indicates the actual number of hours the respondent worked per week at all jobs, categorized into intervals.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

INCTOT: Total income

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 7 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

INCTOT reports the person's total personal income from all sources in the previous month or year.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Income Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

INCTOT is a 7-digit numeric variable.

Codes9999998 = Unknown/missing.

9999999 = NIU (not in universe).

Top codes:Brazil 1991: 9,999,997+

Canada 1971: 50,000+ females in Atlantic region; 75,000+ for others

Canada 1981: 75,000+ all females, males in Atlantic region; 100,000+ males other regions

Canada 1991-2001: 200,000+

Dominican Republic 1981: 3,000+

Dominican Republic 2002: 500,000+

Indonesia 1976: 600,000+

Mexico 1970: 5,500,000+

Panama 2010: 10,000+

Puerto Rico 1980: 50,000+

South Africa 1996: 360,001+

South Africa 2001-2011: 2,457,601+

Trinidad and Tobago 1970: 1,200+

Trinidad and Tobago 2000: 13,000+

U.S.A. 1960: 25,000+

U.S.A. 1970: 50,000+

U.S.A. 1980: 75,000+

U.S.A. 1990: State median of values over 400,000

U.S.A. 2000: 999,998+

Bottom codes:Canada 1981-2001: -50,000

Puerto Rico 2005-2020: -19,998

U.S.A. 1960: -9,900

U.S.A. 1970: -9,900

U.S.A. 1980: -9,995

U.S.A. 1990, 2005-2020: -19,998

U.S.A. 2000: -20,000

MIG1_5_ZA: Province of residence 5 years ago, South Africa; consistent boundaries, GIS**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 6 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
710001	Western Cape
710004	Free State
710005	Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal
710007	Gauteng, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, North West, Northern Cape
710097	Foreign country
710098	Unknown
710099	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

MIG1_5_ZA indicates the person's province of residence five years prior to the census.

Click on the Source Variables tab for information on place of residence for each sample year. Source variables may contain more geographic unit detail but are not suitable for cross-temporal comparison.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: O-Z Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

MIGPLCZA: Same place 5 years ago, South Africa**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)

1	Yes
2	No
8	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

MIGPLCZA indicates whether the person lived in the same location five years prior to the census.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: O-Z Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

MIGRATE5: Migration status, 5 years

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	NIU (not in universe)
10	Same major administrative unit
11	Same major, same minor administrative unit
12	Same major, different minor administrative unit
20	Different major administrative unit
30	Abroad
99	Unknown/missing

description

DEFINITION

MIGRATE5 indicates the person's place of residence 5 years ago. The first digit records movement across major administrative divisions and countries. The second digit reports movement across minor administrative divisions, for samples in which that detail is available.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

MIGYRS2: Years residing in current dwelling**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	Less than 1 year
01	1 year
02	2 years
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22

23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30
31	31
32	32
33	33
34	34
35	35
36	36
37	37
38	38
39	39
40	40
41	41
42	42
43	43
44	44
45	45
46	46
47	47
48	48
49	49
50	50
51	51
52	52
53	53
54	54
55	55
56	56
57	57
58	58
59	59
60	60
61	61

62	62
63	63
64	64
65	65
66	66
67	67
68	68
69	69
70	70
71	71
72	72
73	73
74	74
75	75
76	76
77	77
78	78
79	79
80	80
81	81
82	82
83	83
84	84
85	85
86	86
87	87
88	88
89	89
90	90
91	91
92	92
93	93
94	94
95	95 or more
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

MIGYRS2 indicates the number of years that the respondent has lived in his/her current dwelling.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

WRKAVAIL: Available to work

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No
8	Unknown
9	NIU (Not in universe)

description

DEFINITION

WRKAVAIL indicates whether a person is available to work (readiness) within a short period of time.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

DISBLND: Blind or vision-impaired

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Yes
2	No
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

DISBLND indicates whether the person was blind or had limited vision.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

DISDEAF: Deaf or hearing-impaired

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Yes
2	No
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

DISDEAF indicates whether the person was deaf or had limited hearing.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

DISMNTL: Mental disability**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Yes
2	No
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

DISMNTL indicates whether the person suffered a mental disability in the form of diminished capacity.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

DISMUTE: Mute or speech impaired**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Yes
2	No
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

DISMUTE indicates if the person could not speak or had a significant speech impediment.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

DISPSYC: Psychological disability

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Yes
2	No
9	Unknown

description

DEFINITION

DISPSYC indicates whether the person was disabled due to mental illness.

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary

Disability Variables -- PERSON

IPUMS

ZA2001A_BMO: Month of birth**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405">P-02. Date of birth
<div class="i1">What is (the person's) date of birth and age in completed years? If date of birth not known give (the person's) age in completed years. If age not known give an estimate of age.
_____ Date of Birth
___ Age
Date of birth is recorded as DD/MM/YYYY. DD is for day / MM is for month and / YYYY is for year. For example, if the person was born on 7 September 1963, write [0] [7] for the day DD, [0] [9] for the month MM, and [1] [9] [6] [3] for the year YYYY.
For babies less than one year write [0] [0] [0] for the age, and for persons 7 years and 10 months old write [0] [0] [7] for age.</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A471">Question P-02 -- Date of birth and age

What is (the person's) date of birth and age in completed years?

First ask the person's date of birth. Then ask the age, and check together that it is consistent with the date of birth given. The reason we ask both is for cross-checking. Also, some people do not remember their age but

remember their date of birth.

Notice that the age must be given in completed years, i.e. age at last birthday.

Date of birth should be written in digits, with no words. The boxes are marked DD MM YYYY. Write 2 digits for the day in the boxes marked DD, 2 digits for the month in the boxes marked MM, and four digits for the year in the boxes marked YYYY.

e.g. September 7 1993 should be entered 07 09 1993.

Remember that some people mention the month first and some mention the day first, but always record the day first and the month second.

Age should be entered using three digits, e.g. 052 for 52. Again do not use words. If the respondent is 29 years old write "029" and not "29 yrs" or "29 years". In the case of a baby younger than 1 year write 000.

e.g. For a person who is 29 years old you write "029" and for a baby who is younger than 1 year you write "000".

[P. 36]

Give as much information as is known, i.e.:
<div class="i1">if the exact date of birth is not known, but the person knows the month and the year, or even just the year, fill that in.

if the age is not known at all, give an estimated age.</div>

Where neither the date of birth nor the age can be given, the person's age in years should be estimated as accurately as possible. The enumerator should try to elicit this estimate by probing. For example ask about a historical event at the time of the birth of the person, such as the end of World War I, or a significant local event. Lists of such events are found in Appendix 2.)

You must never leave this question without an answer.

Now copy each person's age onto the flap next to his or her name.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the month in which the person was born.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_BYR: Year of birth

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 4 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</svar></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405">P-02. Date of birth
<div class="i1">What is (the person's) date of birth and age in completed years? If date of birth not known give (the person's) age in completed years. If age not known give an estimate of age.
_____ Date of Birth
___ Age
Date of birth is recorded as DD/MM/YYYY. DD is for day / MM is for month and / YYYY is for year. For example, if the person was born on 7 September

1963, write [0] [7] for the day DD, [0] [9] for the month MM, and [1] [9] [6] [3] for the year YYYY.
For babies less than one year write [0] [0] [0] for the age, and for persons 7 years and 10 months old write [0] [0] [7] for age.</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1880	1880
1881	1881
1882	1882
1883	1883
1884	1884
1885	1885
1886	1886
1887	1887
1888	1888
1889	1889
1890	1890
1891	1891
1892	1892
1893	1893
1894	1894
1895	1895
1896	1896
1897	1897
1898	1898
1899	1899
1900	1900
1901	1901
1902	1902
1903	1903
1904	1904
1905	1905
1906	1906
1907	1907
1908	1908
1909	1909
1910	1910
1911	1911
1912	1912
1913	1913
1914	1914

1915	1915
1916	1916
1917	1917
1918	1918
1919	1919
1920	1920
1921	1921
1922	1922
1923	1923
1924	1924
1925	1925
1926	1926
1927	1927
1928	1928
1929	1929
1930	1930
1931	1931
1932	1932
1933	1933
1934	1934
1935	1935
1936	1936
1937	1937
1938	1938
1939	1939
1940	1940
1941	1941
1942	1942
1943	1943
1944	1944
1945	1945
1946	1946
1947	1947
1948	1948
1949	1949
1950	1950
1951	1951
1952	1952
1953	1953

1954	1954
1955	1955
1956	1956
1957	1957
1958	1958
1959	1959
1960	1960
1961	1961
1962	1962
1963	1963
1964	1964
1965	1965
1966	1966
1967	1967
1968	1968
1969	1969
1970	1970
1971	1971
1972	1972
1973	1973
1974	1974
1975	1975
1976	1976
1977	1977
1978	1978
1979	1979
1980	1980
1981	1981
1982	1982
1983	1983
1984	1984
1985	1985
1986	1986
1987	1987
1988	1988
1989	1989
1990	1990
1991	1991
1992	1992

1993	1993
1994	1994
1995	1995
1996	1996
1997	1997
1998	1998
1999	1999
2000	2000
2001	2001

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svar a="all" v="ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A471">Question P-02 -- Date of birth and age

What is (the person's) date of birth and age in completed years?

First ask the person's date of birth. Then ask the age, and check together that it is consistent with the date of birth given. The reason we ask both is for cross-checking. Also, some people do not remember their age but remember their date of birth.

Notice that the age must be given in completed years, i.e. age at last birthday.

Date of birth should be written in digits, with no words. The boxes are marked DD MM YYYY. Write 2 digits for the day in the boxes marked DD, 2 digits for the month in the boxes marked MM, and four digits for the year in the boxes marked YYYY.

e.g. September 7 1993 should be entered 07 09 1993.

Remember that some people mention the month first and some mention the day first, but always record the day first and the month second.

Age should be entered using three digits, e.g. 052 for 52. Again do not use words. If the respondent is 29 years old write "029" and not "29 yrs" or "29 years". In the case of a baby younger than 1 year write 000.

e.g. For a person who is 29 years old you write "029" and for a baby who is younger than 1 year you write "000".

[P. 36]

Give as much information as is known, i.e.:
<div class="i1">if the exact date of birth is not known, but the person knows the month and the year, or even just the year, fill that in.

if the age is not known at all, give an estimated age.</div>

Where neither the date of birth nor the age can be given, the person's age in years should be estimated as accurately as possible. The enumerator should try to elicit this estimate by probing. For example ask about a historical event at the time of the birth of the person, such as the end of World War I, or a significant local event. Lists of such events are found in Appendix 2.

You must never leave this question without an answer.

Now copy each person's age onto the flap next to his or her name.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the year in which the person was born.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_DWTYPE1P: Type of living quarters (comprehensive)

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Housing unit
02	Residential hotel
03	Student residence
04	Home for the aged
05	Worker hostel
11	Tourist hotel/motel
12	Hospital/medical facility/clinic/frail-care centre
13	Childcare institution/orphanage
14	Home for the disabled
15	Boarding school hostel
16	Initiation school
17	Convent/monastery/religious retreat
18	Defence force barracks/camp/ship in harbour
19	Prison/correctional institution/police cells
20	Community or church hall
21	Refugee camp/shelter for the homeless
22	Homeless

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates a person's type of living quarters.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Other Person Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_PERNUM: Person number (within household)

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	0
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person number (within the household).

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Person Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_PERNUMO: Person number

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 0 Width: 4 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409
ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420
ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431
ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478
ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485"><span class="h1">Section A: Information for persons in
the household -- ask of everyone</span><br />[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing
individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the
other nine.]<br /></sva></p>
```

```
<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A401 ZA01A485">P-01. Person no<br /><div class="i1">Assign row or person number to each
person starting from 01. For example, first person becomes [0] 1, the tenth person becomes [1] 0. The eleventh person
becomes [1] 1 in the second questionnaire (if used).<br />_ 1<br />_ 2<br />_ 3<br />_ 4<br />_ 5<br />_ 6<br />_ 7<br />_ 8<br />_ 9<br />_ 0<br />[In P-01 above, all 10 rows are listed because they are not exactly the same.]</div><br /></sva>
```

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<sva a="ZA01A401 ZA01A485" v="ZA01A401 ZA01A485 ZA01A409"><span class="em">Question P-01 -- Person
number</span><br /><br /><span class="em">"Assign row or person number to each person starting from
01."</span><br /><br />The numbers are not pre-printed, as we have to allow for households with more than ten people.
So you have to complete the person numbers by filling in the boxes to the left of the printed number. Make sure that you
write inside the box not next to it or outside it.<br /><br /><span class="em">If you are only using one
questionnaire</span>, i.e. for households with up to ten people, fill in "0" before the pre-printed number so the first person
gets the number 01, the second 02, etc. Write inside the boxes. If you use the last row, fill in "1" before the zero to make
number "10".<br /><br /><span class="em">If you are using a second questionnaire for the same household</span> (if
there are more than 10 people in the household), fill in "1" before the pre-printed number. Thus the first person on this
questionnaire gets the serial number 11, the second 12, etc. If you use the last row fill in "2" to make "20".<br /><br /><span class="em">If you are using a third questionnaire</span> (in rare cases where there are more than twenty people
in a household) the serial numbers will be 21, 22, 23, etc., up to 30.<br /><br />It is important that the row numbers are
correct when we get to questions about spouses and parents with children.<br /></sva>
```

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates a unique identification number for person within a household or institution.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Other Person Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

This is a 4-digit numeric variable with 0 implied decimal places

ZA2001A_AGE: Age

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405">P-02. Date of birth
<div class="i1">What is (the person's) date of birth and age in completed years? If date of birth not known give (the person's) age in completed years. If age not known give an estimate of age.
_____ Date of Birth
___ Age
Date of birth is recorded as DD/MM/YYYY. DD is for day / MM is for month and / YYYY is for year. For example, if the person was born on 7 September 1963, write [0] [7] for the day DD, [0] [9] for the month MM, and [1] [9] [6] [3] for the year YYYY.
For babies less than one year write [0] [0] [0] for the age, and for persons 7 years and 10 months old write [0] [0] [7] for age.</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
000	0
001	1

002	2
003	3
004	4
005	5
006	6
007	7
008	8
009	9
010	10
011	11
012	12
013	13
014	14
015	15
016	16
017	17
018	18
019	19
020	20
021	21
022	22
023	23
024	24
025	25
026	26
027	27
028	28
029	29
030	30
031	31
032	32
033	33
034	34
035	35
036	36
037	37
038	38
039	39
040	40

041	41
042	42
043	43
044	44
045	45
046	46
047	47
048	48
049	49
050	50
051	51
052	52
053	53
054	54
055	55
056	56
057	57
058	58
059	59
060	60
061	61
062	62
063	63
064	64
065	65
066	66
067	67
068	68
069	69
070	70
071	71
072	72
073	73
074	74
075	75
076	76
077	77
078	78
079	79

080	80
081	81
082	82
083	83
084	84
085	85
086	86
087	87
088	88
089	89
090	90
091	91
092	92
093	93
094	94
095	95
096	96
097	97
098	98
099	99
100	100
101	101
102	102
103	103
104	104
105	105
106	106
107	107
108	108
109	109
110	110
111	111
112	112
113	113
114	114
115	115
116	116
117	117
118	118

119	119
120	120

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A471">Question P-02 -- Date of birth and age

What is (the person's) date of birth and age in completed years?

First ask the person's date of birth. Then ask the age, and check together that it is consistent with the date of birth given. The reason we ask both is for cross-checking. Also, some people do not remember their age but remember their date of birth.

Notice that the age must be given in completed years, i.e. age at last birthday.

Date of birth should be written in digits, with no words. The boxes are marked DD MM YYYY. Write 2 digits for the day in the boxes marked DD, 2 digits for the month in the boxes marked MM, and four digits for the year in the boxes marked YYYY.

e.g. September 7 1993 should be entered 07 09 1993.

Remember that some people mention the month first and some mention the day first, but always record the day first and the month second.

Age should be entered using three digits, e.g. 052 for 52. Again do not use words. If the respondent is 29 years old write "029" and not "29 yrs" or "29 years". In the case of a baby younger than 1 year write 000.

e.g. For a person who is 29 years old you write "029" and for a baby who is younger than 1 year you write "000".

[P. 36]

Give as much information as is known, i.e.:
<div class="i1">if the exact date of birth is not known, but the person knows the month and the year, or even just the year, fill that in.

if the age is not known at all, give an estimated age.</div>

Where neither the date of birth nor the age can be given, the person's age in years should be estimated as accurately as possible. The enumerator should try to elicit this estimate by probing. For example ask about a historical event at the time of the birth of the person, such as the end of World War I, or a significant local event. Lists of such events are found in Appendix 2.)

You must never leave this question without an answer.

Now copy each person's age onto the flap next to his or her name.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's age at the time of enumeration.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_BORNSAF: Born in South Africa

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478

ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="all" v="ZA01A414">P-09. Born in SA?
<div class="i1">Was (the person) born in South Africa? Include former "homelands" as South Africa. Dot the appropriate box.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If no go to P-09b</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svar v="ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417">Questions P-09, P-09a and P-09b -- Place of birth

This question is divided into three parts -- 9, 9a and 9b. Each person must answer two parts i.e. 9 and 9a or 9 and 9b. First we ask if the person was born in South Africa. If they say "Yes", we then ask in which province. If they say no, we ask instead for the country where they were born.

If "Yes" to P-09, go to P-09a, and then to Question 10. If "No" to P-09, skip P-09a and go to P-09b, and then to Question 10.
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="all" v="ZA01A414">P-09 "Was (the person) born in South Africa?"

Persons who were born in the Transkei/Bophuthatswana/Venda/Ciskei (former TBVC states) or in any of the homelands are regarded as having been born in South Africa. If the person was born in South Africa, dot the Y box and if not dot the N box. Make sure that you dot in the middle of the box, not to the side or next to the box.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates if the person was born in South Africa.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_LANG: Language

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A411">P-07. Language
<div class="i1">__ Which language does (the person) speak most often in this household? Write only one code per person.
01 = Afrikaans
02 = English
03 = IsiNdebele
04 = IsiXhosa
05 = IsiZulu
06 = Sepedi
07 = Sesotho
08 = Setswana
09 = SiSwati
10 = Tshivenda
11 = Xitsonga
12 = Other (specify) _____</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Afrikaans
02	English
03	IsiNdebele
04	IsiXhosa
05	IsiZulu
06	Sepedi
07	Sesotho
08	Setswana
09	Siswati
10	Tshivenda
11	Xitsonga
12	Other

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A411">Question P-07 -- Language

 "Which language does (the person) speak most often in this household?"

 Give only one answer per person.

For babies, give the language of their parents. If the languages of the parents differ, give the mother's language, or the language of the person who takes care of the baby most.

Only the eleven official languages of South Africa are listed. There are many other languages spoken in South Africa. If the language is not in the pre-coded list, write code "12" in the box and the name of the language on the dotted line. Remember not to write near the boxes.

Note that this question is not asking mother tongue. It is asking the language most used by each person in the household. This may differ from the mother tongue, and from the language most used at work. For visitors you may ask them the language they speak most often in their usual household.

 National Bureau: You must write only one code per person. If the respondent has difficulty choosing, ask them to choose the one that they are more comfortable with.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's first language.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Ethnicity and Language Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_MARST: Marital status**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A408">P-05. Marital status
<div class="i1">_ What is (the person's) present marital status? Write only one code per person in the box. If both civil/religious and traditional marriage, indicate civil/religious.
1 = Married civil/religious
2 = Married traditional/customary
3 = Polygamous marriage
4 = Living together like married partners
5 = Never married
6 = Widower/widow
7 = Separated
8 = Divorced
If categories 5-8 go to (P-06).</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Married civil/religious
2	Married traditional/customary
3	Polygamous marriage
4	Living together as unmarried partners
5	Never married
6	Widower/widow
7	Separated
8	Divorced

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A408">Question P-05 -- Marital status

 "What is (the person's) PRESENT marital status?"

Only one code should be given. We are interested in the marital status on the census night.

If, for example, a widow remarried before the census night she is classified as married not widowed, but if she married after the census night she is classified as widowed. If however she was widowed, remarried and is now separated from her second husband, she is separated.

The number of times a person has been married is not captured.

Read out all the

categories from the questionnaire. The given classifications on marital status are sufficient, but sometimes you will have to probe. When a person is married you must ask how he or she is married (codes 1-3). If a person married under both traditional/customary and civil law, **civil** takes precedence. A man with more than one wife should indicate "polygamous" rather than civil or customary marriage. The wives indicate category 1 or 2, as they cannot have two husbands. More guidelines about how to treat polygamous households appear in Appendix 5. [P. 38] Couples who are not married to each other but live together as if they are married, belong to category 4. This category is for people who live in every respect as a married couple except that they have not undergone a marriage ceremony. Only male/female couples should indicate this category - the census does not collect data on gay couples. For children write 5 -- "Never married". If a person says "single" they must choose from categories 4-8. Now we get our first "skip". People who are not married or living together as married, i.e. all those who fall under categories 5-8, do not need to answer the next question, which is P-05a, so they skip Question P-05a and go to P-06.

Rules for marital status in relation to polygamy:

A. Women cannot have multiple husbands, and women can never have marital status 3 (polygamous).

B. In a polygamous marriage, the man declares his marital status as 3 (polygamous): each of his wives declares her marital status as either 1 (civil/religious marriage) or 2 (traditional/customary marriage). Note that wives in polygamous marriages cannot have marital status 4 (living together).

C. In a non-polygamous marriage, each partner can have marital status of 1 (civil/religious marriage) or 2 (traditional/customary marriage) or 4 (living together).

D. If a man has multiple wives, his marital status must be 3 (polygamous).

E. Each of a polygamous man's wives should make her spouse number person point to the man, and the man's spouse person number should point to the first of his wives.

F. It is possible to have a polygamous man with no spouses or with a single spouse in the household. In the situation where there is a compound ("kraal") consisting of several huts, each of which has its own separate cooking and eating areas, the people in each of these huts would be enumerated as separate households. For example, a man lives in his compound with his 3 wives and his son 's family (total of 4 huts). There would be 4 households here to enumerate, and 4 questionnaires filled out. The hut where the husband stayed on census night would have a head (him, marital status 3) and a spouse (the wife from that hut, marital status 1 or 2), and spouse person numbers pointing to each other; each of the other 2 wives' huts would just have a head (the wife, marital status 1 or 2) with spouse person number = 99 (spouse not present in the household), and other occupants (children, etc). The son 's family would also be its own household. None of these questionnaires should be linked (via barcode on the last page), since they are all separate households. Questionnaires linking /continuation only occurs when a single household has more than 10 people (or 20, or 30, etc.). When a man lives with his wives in the same household and they share the same cooking/eating facilities, then they would all be enumerated as one household, with one questionnaire. The man would have marital status 3; his spouse person number would point to the first wife. Each wife would have marital status 1 or 2, and her spouse person number would point to the man. This caters for polygamy while still adhering to the definition of a household, which is not based on financial support.

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's present marital status.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_RACE: Race/ethnicity

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A410" v="ZA01A041 ZA01A410">P-06. Population group
<div class="i1">_ How would (the person) describe him/herself in terms of population group?
1 = Black African
2 = Coloured
3 = Indian or Asian
4 = White
5 = Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Black African
2	Coloured
3	Indian or Asian
4	White

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A410 ZA01A041">Question P-06 -- Population group

 "How would (the person) describe him/herself in terms of population group?"

 Read the categories to the respondent.

 Ask for everybody even if the population group seems obvious. Remember also that persons of different population groups do sometimes form part of the same household, so you cannot assume the population group of any household member.

 There are also cases where the answer may not be not straightforward. Not everyone falls clearly into one of the four categories. The decision always rests with the respondent. Do not suggest anything. For example, the head of the household may be black African and the spouse may be white. They must decide whether or not to describe the children as coloured.

[P. 39]

 That is their choice. Under no circumstances may the response be queried; it should be accepted as a fact.

 The category "Other" is for people who do not see themselves as belonging to any of the four categories listed. In this case write the response in small capital letters (away from the boxes) on the dotted line, and write "5" in the box.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's race/ethnicity.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Ethnicity and Language Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_RELATE: Relationship to head of household**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A041 ZA01A407">P-04. Relationship
<div class="i1">__ What is (the person's) relationship to the head or acting head of the household? The head or acting head is the person listed in row 1 (of the first questionnaire, if more than one questionnaire has been completed for this household). See definition of head in column P-00. Write the appropriate code in the boxes.
01 = Head/acting head
02 = Husband/wife/partner
03 = Son/daughter
04 = Adopted child
05 = Stepchild
06 = Brother/sister
07 = Parent
08 = Parent-in-law
09 = Grand/greatgrand child
10 = Son/daughter-in-law
11 = Brother/sister-in-law
12 = Other relative
13 = Non related person</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Head/Acting head
02	Husband/wife/partner
03	Son/daughter
04	Adopted son/daughter
05	Stepson/stepdaughter
06	Brother/sister
07	Parent
08	Parent-in-law
09	Grandchild/great-grandchild
10	Son/daughter-in-law
11	Brother/sister-in-law
12	Other relative
13	Non-related person
99	Member of collective

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r v="ZA01A407">Household head
In the first instance, the head of household is the person that the household regards as such. If necessary, the head can be defined as the main decision-maker, or alternatively, the person who owns or rents the dwelling, or the person who is the main breadwinner. The head can be either male or female.

If two people are equal decision-makers, the older of the two should be named as head of the

household. In a household of totally unrelated persons, the oldest should be named as the household head. Only a person present in the household on census night or returning there the next day can be entered in the questionnaire as head of the household. Acting head of the household The person who assumes decision-making responsibility in the absence of the head of the household. If the person who would normally be considered the head of the household is away on census night and does not return the following day, another person must be designated as acting head of the household.

Question P-04 -- Relationship
 "What is (the person's) relationship to the head or acting head of the household?"
 In this question we are trying to find out if people are living together as families. However we will only capture relationships to the head of the household or acting head (listed in Row 01). Read all possible categories to the respondent. For people who are not related to the head of the household by blood or marriage put category 13.
 Partner of the head of the household belongs to the same category as "husband/wife" -- category 02. Partners are two people of opposite sex who live together in the same household like married couple but who are not married to each other. However, if gay couples choose this category record it without question.
 Note that there are four possible categories for children:
 Sons and daughters by birth = 03.
 Adopted children = 04.
 Step-children = 05. A step-child is a child of the spouse or partner of the household head by a previous marriage or relationship.
 Foster children = 12 or 13.
 Note that we are collecting data on biological relationships. If you interview using a language other than English, probe to be sure that you have the right information.
 National Bureau: In row 01 (for the head or acting head him/herself) you automatically put 01. If you are interviewing a single-person household you also do not need to ask the question, simply mark category 01.

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's relationship to the head or acting head of the household.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_RELIG1: Religion

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
 [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing

individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</svar></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A412 ZA01A413">P-08. Religion
<div class="i1">_____ What is (the person's) religion, denomination, or belief? Please write the complete name. For example, Apostolic Faith Mission, Dutch Reformed Church, Hinduism, Islam, Zion Christian Church. If no religion, write none. Use capital letters only.</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Dutch Reformed Churches
02	Reformed Churches
03	Nederduits Hervormde Kerk
04	Anglican Church
05	Church of England in Sa
06	International Fellowship of Christian Churches
07	Methodist Church of Sa
08	Presbyterian Churches
09	United Congregational Church of Sa
10	Lutheran Church of Southern Africa
11	Roman Catholic Church
12	Apostolic Faith Mission of Sa
13	Other Apostolic Churches
14	Baptist Churches of Southern Africa
15	Pinkster Protestante Kerk
16	Afrikaanse Protestante Kerk
17	Full Gospel Church of God in Southern Africa
18	Orthodox Churches
19	Church of Christ of Latter Day Saints
20	Pentecostal Churches
21	Salvation Army United Church
22	Seventh-Day Adventist Church
23	New Apostolic Church
24	Assemblies of God of Sa
25	St Engenas Zion Christian Church
26	Zion Christian Church
27	Bandla Lama Nazaretha
28	African Methodist Episcopal Church
29	St John's Apostolic Church
30	International Pentecost Church
31	Other African Independent Churches
32	Other Christian Churches

33	African Traditional Belief
34	Judaism
35	Buddhism
36	Taoist
37	Confucian
38	Hinduism
39	Islam
40	Bahais
41	Other Non-Christian Churched
42	Jehovah's Witnesses
43	Other Non-Christian Religions
44	Other Methodist Churches
45	Other Presbyterian Churches
46	Other Congregational Churches
47	Other Lutheran Churches
48	Other Catholic Churches
49	Other Baptist Churches
50	Other Pentecostal Churches
51	Other Orthodox Churches
52	Other (Seventh-Day) Adventist Churches
53	Other African Apostolic Churches
54	Other Assemblies
55	Other Zionist Churches
56	Church of the Nazarene
57	Christian Scientist
58	Christian Centres
59	Ethiopian type Churches
60	Ethnic Churches
61	Other Evangelical Churches
62	Other Charismatic Churches
63	No Religion
64	Refused
65	Other
98	Unknown

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A412 ZA01A413">Question P-08 -- Religion

 "What is (the person's) religion, denomination or belief?"

 For babies, write the religion/denomination/belief of their parents. If the parents belong to different religions, write the mother's religion.

 For the major faiths other than Christian simply write one of these terms: African Traditional, Jewish, Muslim, Hindu, Buddhist, Confucian, Taoist, Bahai, New Age. The census does not collect data on the sub-groups of these faiths.

[P. 40]

 If the respondent says he or she is a Christian, probe for denomination,

e.g. Roman Catholic, Baptist, Apostolic Faith Mission, Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk. (We do not want the name of the local parish, congregation or church building, such as "St. Alban's", "St. Paul's", "Bronberg Kerk", etc.)
 Try to be as precise as possible. Be sure to distinguish, for example, between "Church of England in South Africa" and "Church of the Province of South Africa".
 Write the answer in the boxes provided. These answers will be scanned and coded if possible. You have to be very careful in writing these answers. Use neat capital letters, keeping inside the boxes. Do not leave any spaces and do not use hyphens at the end of lines. If you run out of boxes do not worry. Just write as many letters as will fit.
 If the respondent's denomination is Zion Christian Church, you will write ZIONCHRISTIAN
 Do not use any abbreviations.
 If a person does not want to answer this question, do not persist but write "Refuses". If they say they have no religion, write "None".
 Do not confuse "refuses to answer" with "none". "None" means the person does not have any religion; "refuses" means the person chooses not to answer. He/she may have no religion, or may have a religion but does not want to disclose it.

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's religion.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Ethnicity and Language Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_RELIGGR: Religion (grouped)

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A412 ZA01A413">P-08. Religion
<div class="i1">_____ What is (the person's) religion, denomination, or belief? Please write the complete name. For example, Apostolic Faith Mission, Dutch Reformed Church, Hinduism, Islam, Zion Christian Church. If no religion, write none. Use capital letters only.</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
-------	----------

01	Dutch reformed churches
02	Zion Christian churches
03	Catholic churches
04	Methodist churches
05	Pentecostal/Charismatic churches
06	Anglican churches
07	Apostolic Faith Mission
08	Lutheran churches
09	Presbyterian churches
10	Bandla Lama Nazaretha
11	Baptist churches
12	Congregational churches
13	Orthodox churches
14	Other Apostolic churches
15	Other Zionist churches
16	Ethiopian-type churches
17	Other Reformed churches
18	Other African independent churches
19	Otehr Christian churches
20	African traditional belief
21	Judaism
22	Hinduism
23	Islam
24	Other non-Christian churches
25	No religion
98	Unknown

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A412 ZA01A413">Question P-08 -- Religion

 "What is (the person's) religion, denomination or belief?"

 For babies, write the religion/denomination/belief of their parents. If the parents belong to different religions, write the mother's religion.

 For the major faiths other than Christian simply write one of these terms: African Traditional, Jewish, Muslim, Hindu, Buddhist, Confucian, Taoist, Bahai, New Age. The census does not collect data on the sub-groups of these faiths.

[P. 40]

 If the respondent says he or she is a Christian, probe for denomination, e.g. Roman Catholic, Baptist, Apostolic Faith Mission, Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk. (We do not want the name of the local parish, congregation or church building, such as "St. Alban's", "St. Paul's", "Bronberg Kerk", etc.)

 Try to be as precise as possible. Be sure to distinguish, for example, between "Church of England in South Africa" and "Church of the Province of South Africa".

 Write the answer in the boxes provided. These answers will be scanned and coded if possible. You have to be very careful in writing these answers. Use neat capital letters, keeping inside the boxes. Do not leave any spaces and do not use hyphens at the end of lines. If you run out of boxes do not worry. Just write as many letters as will fit.

 If the respondent's denomination is Zion Christian Church, you will write

 ZIONCH

 RISTIA

 Do not use any abbreviations.

 If a person does not want to answer this question, do not persist but write "Refuses". If they say they have no religion, write "None".

 Do not confuse "refuses to answer" with "none". "None" means the person does not have any religion; "refuses" means the person chooses not to answer. He/she may have no religion, or may have a religion but does not want to disclose it.
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's religion within grouped religion categories.

This variable was created with the assistance of academics from the Unit for Religious Demographic Research (URDR) at the University of Stellenbosch. The variable groups certain religions, denominations or beliefs within a broader cluster or theological tradition and is recommended to users in preference to the full listing.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Ethnicity and Language Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_SEX: Sex

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A406">P-03. Sex
<div class="i1">Is (the person) male or female? Dot the appropriate box.
[] M = Male
[] F = Female</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Male
2	Female

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A406">Question P-03 -- Sex

"Is (the person) male or female?"

Dot the correct box -- M for male, F for female.

If the person is not present at the time of the interview do not use the name to decide whether the person is male or female. Ask.

You must never leave this question without an answer.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's gender.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Demographic Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_SPLOCO: Person number of spouse

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A409">P-05a. Spouse (If categories 1-4 in P-05)
<div class="i1">__ Who, in the household, is (the person's) spouse or partner?
Write the person number of the spouse or partner in the appropriate box. For example, if the spouse of the head of the household is the person listed in row 2 write [0] [2] in row 1. If a man has more than one wife, write the row number of the first wife. Write the row number of the husband for each of his wives. If spouse is not in the household write [9] [9].</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7

08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
36	36
98	The spouse is not in the household
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="ZA01A401 ZA01A485" v="ZA01A401 ZA01A485 ZA01A409">Question P-01 -- Person number

"Assign row or person number to each person starting from 01."

The numbers are not pre-printed, as we have to allow for households with more than ten people. So you have to complete the person numbers by filling in the boxes to the left of the printed number. Make sure that you write inside the box not next to it or outside it.

If you are only using one questionnaire, i.e. for households with up to ten people, fill in "0" before the pre-printed number so the first person gets the number 01, the second 02, etc. Write inside the boxes. If you use the last row, fill in "1" before the zero to make number "10".

If you are using a second questionnaire for the same household (if there are more than 10 people in the household), fill in "1" before the pre-printed number. Thus the first person on this questionnaire gets the serial number 11, the second 12, etc. If you use the last row fill in "2" to make "20".

If you are using a third questionnaire (in rare cases where there are more than twenty people in a household) the serial numbers will be 21, 22, 23, etc., up to 30.

It is important that the row numbers are correct when we get to questions about spouses and parents with children.
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A409">Question P-05a -- Spouse

Ask for everyone who answered married or living together as married partners in Question P-05 -- codes 1-4.

"Who, in the household, is (the person's) spouse or partner?"

National Bureau: spouse = husband or wife

 For example if the spouse of the household head (see row 01) is listed in row 02, write "02" in row 01, and then "01" in row 02. (Now we see one reason why numbers should be filled in before any other questions are asked.)

 If a polygamous man has more than one wife in the household, write the row number of the first wife. Write the row number of the husband for each of his wives. (See Appendix 5.)

 National Bureau: row number = person number

 If the spouse was not in the household on the census night write "99" (= lives elsewhere).
</sva></p>

<p><sva v="ZA01A408 ZA01A409">Rules for marital status in relation to polygamy:

A. Women cannot have multiple husbands, and women can never have marital status 3 (polygamous).

B. In a polygamous marriage, the man declares his marital status as 3 (polygamous): each of his wives declares her marital status as either 1 (civil/religious marriage) or 2 (traditional/customary marriage). Note that wives in polygamous marriages cannot have marital status 4 (living together).

C. In a non-polygamous marriage, each partner can have marital status of 1 (civil/religious marriage) or 2 (traditional/customary marriage) or 4 (living together).

D. If a man has multiple wives, his marital status must be 3 (polygamous).

E. Each of a polygamous man's wives should make her spouse number person point to the man, and the man's spouse person number should point to the first of

his wives.

F. It is possible to have a polygamous man with no spouses or with a single spouse in the household.

In the situation where there is a compound ("kraal") consisting of several huts, each of which has its own separate cooking and eating areas, the people in each of these huts would be enumerated as separate households.

For example, a man lives in his compound with his 3 wives and his son 's family (total of 4 huts). There would be 4 households here to enumerate, and 4 questionnaires filled out. The hut where the husband stayed on census night would have a head (him, marital status 3) and a spouse (the wife from that hut, marital status 1 or 2), and spouse person numbers pointing to each other; each of the other 2 wives' huts would just have a head (the wife, marital status 1 or 2) with spouse person number = 99 (spouse not present in the household), and other occupants (children, etc). The son 's family would also be its own household.

None of these questionnaires should be linked (via barcode on the last page), since they are all separate households. Questionnaires linking /continuation only occurs when a single household has more than 10 people (or 20, or 30, etc.).

When a man lives with his wives in the same household and they share the same cooking/eating facilities, then they would all be enumerated as one household, with one questionnaire. The man would have marital status 3; his spouse person number would point to the first wife. Each wife would have marital status 1 or 2, and her spouse person number would point to the man.

This caters for polygamy while still adhering to the definition of a household, which is not based on financial support.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates who in the household is the person's spouse or partner. This variable identifies the person number of the head of household's spouse or partner.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Married persons in private households and non-institutional collective living quarters [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_BPLCTRY: Country of birth

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svar v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="all" v="ZA01A416 ZA01A417">P-09b. Country of birth (If no to P-09)
<div class="i1">_____
_____ In which country was (the person) born? Write the present name of the country. Use capital letters only.</div>
</p>

/ > < / s v a r >

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
111	Lesotho
112	Namibia
113	Botswana
114	Zimbabwe
115	Mozambique
116	Swaziland
121	Angola
122	Democratic Republic Of The Congo (Zaire)
123	Malawi
124	Mauritius
125	Seychelles
126	Tanzania
127	Zambia
130	Algeria
131	Benin
132	Burkina Faso
133	Burundi
134	Cameroon
135	Cape Verde
136	Central African Republic
137	Chad
138	Comoros
139	Congo
140	Cote D'ivoire
141	Djibouti
142	Egypt
143	Equatorial Guinea
144	Eritrea
145	Ethiopia
146	Gabon
147	Gambia
148	Ghana
149	Guinea
150	Guinea-Bissau
151	Kenya
152	Liberia

153	Libyan Arab Jamahiriya
154	Madagascar
155	Mali
156	Mauritania
157	Morocco
158	Niger
159	Nigeria
160	Reunion
161	Rwanda
162	Saint Helena
163	Sao Tome And Principe
164	Senegal
165	Sierra Leone
166	Somalia
167	Sudan
168	Togo
169	Tunisia
170	Uganda
171	Western Sahara
199	Other Africa
201	United States
202	Anguilla
203	Antigua And Barbuda
204	Argentina
205	Aruba
206	Bahamas
207	Barbados
208	Belize
209	Bermuda
210	Bolivia
211	Brazil
212	British Virgin Islands
213	Canada
214	Caribbean
215	Cayman Islands
216	Chile
217	Colombia
218	Costa Rica
219	Cuba

220	Dominica
221	Dominican Republic
222	Ecuador
223	El Salvador
224	Falkland Islands (Malvinas)
225	French Guiana
226	Greenland
227	Grenada
228	Guadeloupe
229	Guatemala
230	Guyana
231	Haiti
232	Honduras
233	Jamaica
234	Latin America And The Caribbean
235	Martinique
236	Mexico
237	Montserrat
238	Netherlands Antilles
239	Nicaragua
240	Panama
241	Paraguay
242	Peru
243	Puerto Rico
244	Saint Kitts And Nevis
245	Saint Lucia
246	Saint Pierre And Miquelon
247	Saint Vincent And The Grenadines
248	Suriname
249	Trinidad And Tobago
250	Turks And Caicos Islands
251	United States Virgin Islands
252	Uruguay
253	Venezuela
299	Other North And South America
301	China
302	Afghanistan
303	Armenia
304	Azerbaijan

305	Bahrain
306	Bangladesh
307	Bhutan
308	Brunei Darussalam
309	Cambodia
310	Cyprus
311	Democratic People's Republic Of Korea
312	East Timor
313	Georgia
314	Hong Kong Special Administrative Region Of China
315	India
316	Indonesia
317	Iran (Islamic Republic Of)
318	Iraq
319	Israel
320	Japan
321	Jordan
322	Kazakhstan
323	Kuwait
324	Kyrgyzstan
325	Lao People's Democratic Republic
326	Lebanon
327	Macao Special Administrative Region Of China
328	Malaysia
329	Maldives
330	Mongolia
331	Myanmar
332	Nepal
333	Occupied Palestinian Territory
334	Oman
335	Pakistan
336	Philippines
337	Qatar
338	Republic Of Korea
339	Saudi Arabia
340	Singapore
341	Sri Lanka
342	Syrian Arab Republic
343	Taiwan Province Of China

344	Tajikistan
345	Thailand
346	Turkey
347	Turkmenistan
348	United Arab Emirates
349	Uzbekistan
350	Viet Nam
351	Yemen
399	Other Asia
401	United Kingdom/Great Britain
402	Albania
403	Andorra
404	Austria
405	Belarus
406	Belgium
407	Bosnia And Herzegovina
408	Bulgaria
409	Channel Islands
410	Croatia
411	Czech Republic
412	Denmark
413	Estonia
414	Faeroe Islands
415	Finland
416	France
417	Germany
418	Gibraltar
419	Greece
420	Holy See
421	Hungary
422	Iceland
423	Ireland
424	Isle Of Man
425	Italy
426	Latvia
427	Liechtenstein
428	Lithuania
429	Luxembourg
430	Malta

431	Monaco
432	Netherlands
433	Norway
434	Poland
435	Portugal
436	Republic Of Moldova
437	Romania
438	Russian Federation
439	San Marino
440	Slovakia
441	Slovenia
442	Southern Europe
443	Spain
444	Svalbard And Jan Mayen Islands
445	Sweden
446	Switzerland
447	The Former Yugoslav Republic Of Macedonia
448	Ukraine
449	Federal Republic Of Yugoslavia
499	Other Europe
501	Australia
502	American Samoa
503	Cook Islands
504	Fiji
505	French Polynesia
506	Guam
507	Kiribati
508	Marshall Islands
509	Melanesia
510	Micronesia
511	Micronesia (Federated States Of)
512	Nauru
513	New Caledonia
514	New Zealand
515	Niue
516	Norfolk Island
517	Northern Mariana Islands
518	Palau
519	Papua New Guinea

520	Pitcairn
521	Polynesia
522	Samoa
523	Solomon Islands
524	Tokelau
525	Tonga
526	Tuvalu
527	Vanuatu
528	Wallis and Futuna Islands
599	Other Oceania
999	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r v="ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417">Questions P-09, P-09a and P-09b -- Place of birth

This question is divided into three parts -- 9, 9a and 9b. Each person must answer two parts i.e. 9 and 9a or 9 and 9b. First we ask if the person was born in South Africa. If they say "Yes", we then ask in which province. If they say no, we ask instead for the country where they were born.

If "Yes" to P-09, go to P-09a, and then to Question 10. If "No" to P-09, skip P-09a and go to P-09b, and then to Question 10.
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="ZA01A416 ZA01A417" v="ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09b "In which country was (the person) born?"

Write the name of the country in the boxes provided. Use the name the country is presently known by. Do not add names of cities or provinces.

 Remember to use capital letters for the answers to 9a and 9b, and not to leave spaces between words.

 Some people are reluctant to tell you where they were born. If necessary, you can stress that the information is only used for statistical purposes and will never be released to the police or other government departments in an identifiable form, only as numerical totals.
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the country of birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons born outside of South Africa [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_BPLCTRY2: Country of birth (grouped)

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A416 ZA01A417">P-09b. Country of birth (If no to P-09)
<div class="i1">_____ In which country was (the person) born? Write the present name of the country. Use capital letters only.</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	South Africa
2	SADC countries
3	Rest of Africa
4	Europe
5	Asia
6	North America
7	Central and South America
8	Australia and New Zealand

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r v="ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417">Questions P-09, P-09a and P-09b -- Place of birth

This question is divided into three parts -- 9, 9a and 9b. Each person must answer two parts i.e. 9 and 9a or 9 and 9b. First we ask if the person was born in South Africa. If they say "Yes", we then ask in which province. If they say no, we ask instead for the country where they were born.

If "Yes" to P-09, go to P-09a, and then to Question 10. If "No" to P-09, skip P-09a and go to P-09b, and then to Question 10.
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="ZA01A416 ZA01A417" v="ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09b "In which country was (the person) born?"

Write the name of the country in the boxes provided. Use the name the country is presently known by. Do not add names of cities or provinces.

Remember to use capital letters for the answers to 9a and 9b, and not to leave spaces between words.

Some people are reluctant to tell you where they were born. If necessary, you can stress that the information is only used for statistical purposes and will never be released to the police or other government departments in an identifiable form, only as numerical totals.
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's country of birth within grouped country categories.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_BPLPROV: Province of birth**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="ZA01A415 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483" v="ZA01A415 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09a. Place of birth (If yes to P-09)
<div class="i1">_ In which province was (the person) born?
1 = Western Cape
2 = Eastern Cape
3 = Northern Cape
4 = Free State
5 = KwaZulu-Natal
6 = North West
7 = Gauteng
8 = Mpumalanga
9 = Northern Province
Go to P-10</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Western Cape
2	Eastern Cape
3	Northern Cape
4	Free State
5	KwaZulu-Natal
6	North West
7	Gauteng
8	Mpumalanga
9	Limpopo

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r v="ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417">Questions P-09, P-09a and P-09b -- Place of birth

This question is divided into three parts -- 9, 9a and 9b. Each person must answer two parts i.e. 9 and 9a or 9 and 9b. First we ask if the person was born in South Africa. If they say "Yes", we

then ask in which province. If they say no, we ask instead for the country where they were born.

If "Yes" to P-09, go to P-09a, and then to Question 10. If "No" to P-09, skip P-09a and go to P-09b, and then to Question 10.
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="all" v="ZA01A415 ZA01A477">P-09a "In which province was (the person) born?"

The nine provinces are pre-coded, so you write the correct code in the box. We have to capture the information according to the new provinces, not according to the old divisions, e.g. Gauteng, which is 7 on the list, or Northern Province, which is 9 on the list, and NOT Transvaal, which is not on the pre-coded list.

For elderly persons it might be difficult to define the place according to the present provincial division. Ask for the name of the place where the person was born and then locate that place in one of the present provinces. E.g. if born in Kimberley, write 3 = Northern Cape.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's province of birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons born in South Africa [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_CITIZ: Citizenship

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svar v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="ZA01A418 ZA01A419" v="ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A479">Citizenship
<div class="i1">P-10. Is (the person) a South African citizen? Dot the appropriate box.</div>
<div class="i2">[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes go to P-11</div>
<div class="i1">P-10a. _____ If no, what is the name of the country of citizenship?</div>
<div class="i2">Use capital letters only.</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
-------	----------

111	Lesotho
112	Namibia
113	Botswana
114	Zimbabwe
115	Mozambique
116	Swaziland
121	Angola
122	Democratic Republic Of The Congo (Zaire)
123	Malawi
124	Mauritius
125	Seychelles
126	Tanzania
127	Zambia
130	Algeria
131	Benin
132	Burkina Faso
133	Burundi
134	Cameroon
135	Cape Verde
136	Central African Republic
137	Chad
138	Comoros
139	Congo
140	Cote D'ivoire
141	Djibouti
142	Egypt
143	Equatorial Guinea
144	Eritrea
145	Ethiopia
146	Gabon
147	Gambia
148	Ghana
149	Guinea
150	Guinea-Bissau
151	Kenya
152	Liberia
153	Libyan Arab Jamahiriya
154	Madagascar
155	Mali

156	Mauritania
157	Morocco
158	Niger
159	Nigeria
160	Reunion
161	Rwanda
162	Saint Helena
163	Sao Tome And Principe
164	Senegal
165	Sierra Leone
166	Somalia
167	Sudan
168	Togo
169	Tunisia
170	Uganda
171	Western Sahara
199	Other Africa
201	United States
202	Anguilla
203	Antigua And Barbuda
204	Argentina
205	Aruba
206	Bahamas
207	Barbados
208	Belize
209	Bermuda
210	Bolivia
211	Brazil
212	British Virgin Islands
213	Canada
214	Caribbean
215	Cayman Islands
216	Chile
217	Colombia
218	Costa Rica
219	Cuba
220	Dominica
221	Dominican Republic
222	Ecuador

223	El Salvador
224	Falkland Islands (Malvinas)
225	French Guiana
226	Greenland
227	Grenada
228	Guadeloupe
229	Guatemala
230	Guyana
231	Haiti
232	Honduras
233	Jamaica
234	Latin America And The Caribbean
235	Martinique
236	Mexico
237	Montserrat
238	Netherlands Antilles
239	Nicaragua
240	Panama
241	Paraguay
242	Peru
243	Puerto Rico
244	Saint Kitts And Nevis
245	Saint Lucia
246	Saint Pierre And Miquelon
247	Saint Vincent And The Grenadines
248	Suriname
249	Trinidad And Tobago
250	Turks And Caicos Islands
251	United States Virgin Islands
252	Uruguay
253	Venezuela
299	Other North And South America
301	China
302	Afghanistan
303	Armenia
304	Azerbaijan
305	Bahrain
306	Bangladesh
307	Bhutan

308	Brunei Darussalam
309	Cambodia
310	Cyprus
311	Democratic People's Republic Of Korea
312	East Timor
313	Georgia
314	Hong Kong Special Administrative Region Of China
315	India
316	Indonesia
317	Iran (Islamic Republic Of)
318	Iraq
319	Israel
320	Japan
321	Jordan
322	Kazakhstan
323	Kuwait
324	Kyrgyzstan
325	Lao People's Democratic Republic
326	Lebanon
327	Macao Special Administrative Region Of China
328	Malaysia
329	Maldives
330	Mongolia
331	Myanmar
332	Nepal
333	Occupied Palestinian Territory
334	Oman
335	Pakistan
336	Philippines
337	Qatar
338	Republic Of Korea
339	Saudi Arabia
340	Singapore
341	Sri Lanka
342	Syrian Arab Republic
343	Taiwan Province Of China
344	Tajikistan
345	Thailand
346	Turkey

347	Turkmenistan
348	United Arab Emirates
349	Uzbekistan
350	Viet Nam
351	Yemen
399	Other Asia
401	United Kingdom/Great Britain
402	Albania
403	Andorra
404	Austria
405	Belarus
406	Belgium
407	Bosnia And Herzegovina
408	Bulgaria
409	Channel Islands
410	Croatia
411	Czech Republic
412	Denmark
413	Estonia
414	Faeroe Islands
415	Finland
416	France
417	Germany
418	Gibraltar
419	Greece
420	Holy See
421	Hungary
422	Iceland
423	Ireland
424	Isle Of Man
425	Italy
426	Latvia
427	Liechtenstein
428	Lithuania
429	Luxembourg
430	Malta
431	Monaco
432	Netherlands
433	Norway

434	Poland
435	Portugal
436	Republic Of Moldova
437	Romania
438	Russian Federation
439	San Marino
440	Slovakia
441	Slovenia
442	Southern Europe
443	Spain
444	Svalbard And Jan Mayen Islands
445	Sweden
446	Switzerland
447	The Former Yugoslav Republic Of Macedonia
448	Ukraine
449	Federal Republic Of Yugoslavia
499	Other Europe
501	Australia
502	American Samoa
503	Cook Islands
504	Fiji
505	French Polynesia
506	Guam
507	Kiribati
508	Marshall Islands
509	Melanesia
510	Micronesia
511	Micronesia (Federated States Of)
512	Nauru
513	New Caledonia
514	New Zealand
515	Niue
516	Norfolk Island
517	Northern Mariana Islands
518	Palau
519	Papua New Guinea
520	Pitcairn
521	Polynesia
522	Samoa

523	Solomon Islands
524	Tokelau
525	Tonga
526	Tuvalu
527	Vanuatu
528	Wallis and Futuna Islands
599	Other Oceania
600	South Africa

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A479">Question P-10 and P-10a -- Citizenship

This question has two parts, P-10 and P-10a. The second part only applies to people who answer "No" to the first part. So people who answer "Yes" to the first part will "skip" P-10a and go to Question 11.

P-10 "Is (the person) a South African citizen?"

 Remember that people who were not born in South Africa can be citizens of South Africa. The reverse is also sometimes true. That is why we need this question as well as the last question.

 Accept the respondent's answer. You do not need to ask for proof. However, if immigrants hesitate to tell the truth, remind them that the information is for statistical use only, and will not be disclosed to any other authority or organisation or private person because the Statistics Act restricts the use of census data to statistics only.

 Dot the correct box, i.e. Y or N box.

If Yes go to P-11. In other words, if Yes to P-10, skip P-10a and go to P-11. If No to P-10, write the name of the country of citizenship in P-10a.

P-10a "What is the name of the country of citizenship?"

 Write one letter per box. Use capital letters only. Do not leave any spaces between words. Write as many letters as you have spaces for.
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's citizenship status, in other words, of which country they are a citizen.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_CITIZGR: Citizenship (grouped)

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A418 ZA01A419" v="ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A479">Citizenship
<div class="i1">P-10. Is (the person) a South African citizen? Dot the appropriate box.</div>
<div class="i2">[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes go to P-11</div>
<div class="i1">P-10a. _____ If no, what is the name of the country of citizenship?</div>
<div class="i2">Use capital letters only.</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	South Africa
2	SADC countries
3	Rest of Africa
4	Europe
5	Asia
6	North America
7	Central and South America
8	Australia and New Zealand

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A479">Question P-10 and P-10a -- Citizenship

This question has two parts, P-10 and P-10a. The second part only applies to people who answer "No" to the first part. So people who answer "Yes" to the first part will "skip" P-10a and go to Question 11.

P-10 "Is (the person) a South African citizen?"

 Remember that people who were not born in South Africa can be citizens of South Africa. The reverse is also sometimes true. That is why we need this question as well as the last question.

 Accept the respondent's answer. You do not need to ask for proof. However, if immigrants hesitate to tell the truth, remind them that the information is for statistical use only, and will not be disclosed to any other authority or organisation or private person because the Statistics Act restricts the use of census data to statistics only.

 Dot the correct box, i.e. Y or N box.

If Yes go to P-11. In other words, if Yes to P-10, skip P-10a and go to P-11. If No to P-10, write the name of the country of citizenship in P-10a.

P-10a "What is the name of the country of citizenship?"

 Write one letter per box. Use capital letters only. Do not leave any spaces between words. Write as many letters as you have spaces for.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's citizenship status based on grouped country categories.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
-------------------	------------

Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON

IPUMS

ZA2001A_MOVED: Living in same place five years ago**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svr v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</svr></p>

<p><svr a=" ZA01A423" v="ZA01A423 ZA01A425 ZA01A426">P-12. Five years ago
<div class="i1">Five years ago (at the time of Census '96), was (the person) living in this place (i.e. this suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement)? Dot the appropriate box.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
[] B = Born after October 1996
If Y or B go to P-13</div>
</svr>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No
3	Born after October 1996

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svr v="ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426">Question 12, 12a and 12b -- Five years ago

Question 12 has three parts i.e. 12, 12a, 12b. Everyone answers the first part. Those who answer "No" must answer the other two parts as well. Everyone else goes to Question 13.
</svr></p>

<p><svr a="ZA01A423 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A483" v="ZA01A423 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">P-12 "Five years ago (at the time of Census '96), was (the person) living in this place (i.e. this suburb, ward, township, village, farm, informal settlement)?"

If the answer is "Yes" dot the Y box, if "No" dot the N box. Dot the box marked B for people who were not alive at the time of the last census (B = born after October 1996).

[P. 44]

The main issue here is, what counts as a move? Again the question refers to a very small area -- the sub-place. If the person lived in the same dwelling 5 years ago the answer is "Yes". If the respondent has moved within the same "sub-place" from one house to another, the answer should also be "Yes" because we do not count short-distance residential moves for this question. If the person was living in a different sub-place from the one on the front of the 09 book, the answer is "No".

If "Yes" or born after October 96 skip P-12a and P-12b and go to Question P-13.

If "No" go to Questions P-12a and P-12b.
</svr>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person was living in this (enumeration) place five years ago.

UNIVERSE
South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_PRVPROV: Province five years ago

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a=" ZA01A423" v="ZA01A423 ZA01A425 ZA01A426">P-12. Five years ago
<div class="i1">Five years ago (at the time of Census '96), was (the person) living in this place (i.e. this suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement)? Dot the appropriate box.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
[] B = Born after October 1996
If Y or B go to P-13</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Western Cape
02	Eastern Cape
03	Northern Cape
04	Free State
05	KwaZulu-Natal
06	North West
07	Gauteng
08	Mpumalanga
09	Limpopo
10	Foreign country
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r v="ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426">Question 12, 12a and 12b -- Five years ago

Question 12 has three parts i.e. 12, 12a, 12b. Everyone answers the first part. Those who answer "No" must answer the other two parts as well. Everyone else goes to Question 13.
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A425 ZA01A426">P-12a "Where did (the person) move from?"

If more than one move, give details of the last move.

Write the name of the main place and the sub-place from which the person moved in the boxes provided, e.g. Pretoria, Arcadia; or Kutama, Tshikwarane. The main place might be the same as the one you are in, even though the sub-place has changed -- e.g. Pretoria, Sunnyside (from Pretoria, Arcadia). Or it might be a different main place. Either way, be sure to give a main place name and a sub place name. One place name is not sufficient for coding purposes. The combination of the two names, together with the province code, should identify the place.

If the respondent lived in another country five years ago, write the name of the country (not the province or town/city) in the main place row and leave the province boxes and the sub-place boxes empty.
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's province of residence 5 years ago.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons age 5+ whose residence differs from 5 years ago and whose previous residence was not a foreign country [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_USLPROV: Province of usual residence

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A011 ZA01A014 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422">For office use
</sva r><div class="i1">_ _ _ _ _
_ EA number
_ _ _ Record number
_ _ Household number
_ _ Institution number
<sva r a="ZA01A014" v="ZA01A014 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422">_ _ Province
</sva r>
<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A011">_ _ Name of local munic.
</sva r>
<sva r v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422">_ _ Main place
_ _ Sub-place
</sva r>

_ _ Physical address
_ _ Postal code
_ _ Telephone no
_ _ How many questionnaires were completed for this household?
_ _ If more than one questionnaire, what is the number of this questionnaire?
_ _ Number of people:
_ _ Total
_ _ Male
_ _ Female</div><p>This Questionnaire should be completed for all households living in housing units and collective living quarters including those located in institutions (for example, boarding schools, prisons, hospitals, etc.)</p>

<div class="i1">Who completed this questionnaire? Use a dot.
[] An enumerator through an interview
[] A household member through self-completion</div><sva r v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415

ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426
 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437
 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483
 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone

 />[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the
 household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A482" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421
 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A480 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">Usually live
<div class="i1">P-11. Does
 (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</div>
<div class="i2">Dot the appropriate
 box.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes go to P-12</div>
<div class="i1">P-11a. If no, where does (the
 person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of</div>
<div class="i2">enumeration, dot the S box.
[]
 S
If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-
 place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes
 below. Use capital letters only.
__ Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-
 space</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Western Cape
02	Eastern Cape
03	Northern Cape
04	Free State
05	KwaZulu-Natal
06	North West
07	Gauteng
08	Mpumalanga
09	Limpopo
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svar a="all" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A480 ZA01A482">Question P-11 and
 11a -- Usually live

This question also has two parts i.e. P-11 and P-11a.The first part asks if the person
 usually lives in this household. People who answer "Yes" can move straight on to Question 12. People who say "No" must
 answer the second part of the question, P-11a.

P-11 "Does (the person) usually live in this
 household for at least four nights a week?"

If "Yes" skip P-11a and go to P-12, if "No" ask Question
 P-11a.

P-11a "Where does (the person) usually live?"

The purpose of
 this question is to identify visitors and exclude them from data about total household income, or data about the number of
 people who live in a particular place.

If the person does not usually live in this dwelling but lives in the same
 sub-place, dot the S box (S = Same).

[P. 43]

If the person usually lives
 in a different place, write the name of the main place and the name of the sub-place in the spaces provided, e.g. Pretoria,
 Arcadia; or Kutama, Tshikwarane. One place name is not sufficient for coding purposes.

<div class="i1"><span
 class="em">Main place and sub-place
This is the first question that brings in the concepts of main place and
 sub-place. So far we have only needed province or country. Now we have to write sufficient information to pinpoint local
 places.

A main place is a city, town, township, tribal authority or administrative area.

A sub-place is
 a suburb, section of a township, smallholding, village, subvillage, ward or informal settlement.

On the front of
 the questionnaire for sub-place we wrote the most local name used by the household. For this question, and other questions
 asking for main place and sub-place, we must be a little more careful, as some local names can occur more than once within
 a main place.

For more details, see Appendix 6, which also give examples within the new metros.</div>

 There are also two boxes for the abbreviation of the province, as some place names occur in more than one
 province. Use the following two-letter abbreviations: EC, FS, GP, KN, MP, NC, NP, NW, WC.

 National Bureau: Write the main place in the main place row and the sub-place in the sub-place row. Do not
 continue writing the main place in the sub-place row if the name is too long. Just write as many letters as will fit, as we did
 for religion.

If the person usually lives abroad, ask for the name of the <span

class="em">country and write it in the space provided. Write the name of the country, not of the city or the province.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's providence of usual residence.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons enumerated in a household or institution that is not their usual residence [discrepancies: type I trace; type II none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_USLRES: Usually live here

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A011 ZA01A014 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422">For office use
</svar><div class="i1">_ _ _ _ _
 _ EA number
_ _ _ Record number
_ _ Household number
_ _ Institution number
<sva r a="ZA01A014"
 v="ZA01A014 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422">_ _ Province
</svar>
<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A011">
 _ _ _ _ _ Name of local munic.
</svar>
<sva r v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422">
 _ _ _ _ _ Main place
_ _ _ _ _ Sub-place
</svar>

_ _ Physical address

 _ _ Postal code
_ _ Telephone no
_ _ How many questionnaires were completed for this household?

_ _ If more than one questionnaire, what is the number of this questionnaire?
Number of people:

_ _ Total
_ _ Male
_ _ Female</div><p>This Questionnaire should be completed for all households living in housing units and collective living quarters including those located in institutions (for example, boarding schools, prisons, hospitals, etc.)</p>
 <div class="i1">Who completed this questionnaire? Use a dot.
[] An enumerator through an interview
[] A household member through self-completion</div><sva r v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone

 >[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</svar></p>

<p><sva r a="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A482" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A480 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">Usually live
<div class="i1">P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</div>
<div class="i2">Dot the appropriate box.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes go to P-12</div>
<div class="i1">P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of</div>
<div class="i2">enumeration, dot the S box.
[]

S
If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only.
__ Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-space</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svar a="all" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A480 ZA01A482">Question P-11 and 11a -- Usually live

This question also has two parts i.e. P-11 and P-11a. The first part asks if the person usually lives in this household. People who answer "Yes" can move straight on to Question 12. People who say "No" must answer the second part of the question, P-11a.

P-11 "Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?"

If "Yes" skip P-11a and go to P-12, if "No" ask Question P-11a.

P-11a "Where does (the person) usually live?"

The purpose of this question is to identify visitors and exclude them from data about total household income, or data about the number of people who live in a particular place.

If the person does not usually live in this dwelling but lives in the same sub-place, dot the S box (S = Same).

[P. 43]

If the person usually lives in a different place, write the name of the main place and the name of the sub-place in the spaces provided, e.g. Pretoria, Arcadia; or Kutama, Tshikwarane. One place name is not sufficient for coding purposes.

<div class="i1">Main place and sub-place
This is the first question that brings in the concepts of main place and sub-place. So far we have only needed province or country. Now we have to write sufficient information to pinpoint local places.

A main place is a city, town, township, tribal authority or administrative area.

A sub-place is a suburb, section of a township, smallholding, village, subvillage, ward or informal settlement.

On the front of the questionnaire for sub-place we wrote the most local name used by the household. For this question, and other questions asking for main place and sub-place, we must be a little more careful, as some local names can occur more than once within a main place.

For more details, see Appendix 6, which also give examples within the new metros.</div>

There are also two boxes for the abbreviation of the province, as some place names occur in more than one province. Use the following two-letter abbreviations: EC, FS, GP, KN, MP, NC, NP, NW, WC.

National Bureau: Write the main place in the main place row and the sub-place in the sub-place row. Do not continue writing the main place in the sub-place row if the name is too long. Just write as many letters as will fit, as we did for religion.

If the person usually lives abroad, ask for the name of the country and write it in the space provided. Write the name of the country, not of the city or the province.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person usually lives at the residence where the enumeration is taking place, meaning they stay there at least 4 nights a week or more.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_YRMOVED: Year moved**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A424">P-12b. In which year (If no to P-12)
<div class="i1">_ In which year did (the person) move to this place? If more than one move, write the code for the year of the last move.
1 = 1996
2 = 1997
3 = 1998
4 = 1999
5 = 2000
6 = 2001</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	1996
2	1997
3	1998
4	1999
5	2000
6	2001
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva v="ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426">Question 12, 12a and 12b -- Five years ago

Question 12 has three parts i.e. 12, 12a, 12b. Everyone answers the first part. Those who answer "No" must answer the other two parts as well. Everyone else goes to Question 13.
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A424">P-12b "In which year did (the person) move to this place?"

If the person has moved more than once indicate the year of the last move.

 Because this question only applies to people who moved in the last five years, alternatives are only given for the years 1996 to 2001. Write the code for the correct year in the boxes provided.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the year in which the person moved to the residence where the enumeration took place.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons who five years ago were not living in the residence where the enumeration took place [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_DISAB: Type of disability**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409
ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420
ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431
ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478
ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485"><span class="h1">Section A: Information for persons in
the household -- ask of everyone</span><br />[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing
individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the
other nine.]<br /></sva></p>
```

```
<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433">P-13. Disability<br
/><div class="i1">Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such
as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes.<br />[] 0 = None<br />[] 1 = Sight
(blind/severe visual limitation)<br />[] 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)<br />[] 3 = Communication (speech
impairment)<br />[] 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations)<br />[] 5 =
Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)<br />[] 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</div><br /></sva>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	None
1	Sight (blind/severe visual limitation)
2	Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
3	Communication (speech impairment)
4	Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prostheses; limb or hand usage limitations)
5	Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
6	Emotional (behavioural, psychological)
7	Multiple (combination of two or more of the above)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<sva a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433"><span
class="em">Question P-13 -- Disability</span><br /><br /><span class="em">"Does (the person) have any serious
disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)?" </span><br /><br
/>Disability is a limitation or lack of ability that prevents a person from performing an activity within the range considered
normal, or from behaving in a manner considered normal.<br /><br />Read out the categories and dot the appropriate
```

boxes. For this question you may have to dot more than one box. Encourage the respondent to name all serious disabilities a person has, e.g. if deaf and wheelchair-bound, dot 2 and 4. Note that if 1 bad sight is corrected with glasses or 2 bad hearing with a hearing aid, it is not considered a disability for the census.

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person has a disability by disability type.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_DISEMOT: Disability - emotional

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svr v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485"> Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
 [Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
 </svr>

<p> <svr a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433"> P-13. Disability
 <div class="i1"> Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes.
 [0 = None
 [1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation)
 [2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
 [3 = Communication (speech impairment)
 [4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations)
 [5 = Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
 [6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological) </div>
 </svr>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433">Question P-13 -- Disability

"Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)?"

Disability is a limitation or lack of ability that prevents a person from performing an activity within the range considered normal, or from behaving in a manner considered normal.

Read out the categories and dot the appropriate boxes. For this question you may have to dot more than one box. Encourage the respondent to name all serious disabilities a person has, e.g. if deaf and wheelchair-bound, dot 2 and 4.

Note that if 1 bad sight is corrected with glasses or 2 bad hearing with a hearing aid, it is not considered a disability for the census.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person has an emotional (behavioral, psychological) disability.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_DISMENT: Disability - intellectual

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433">P-13. Disability
<div class="i1">Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes.
[] 0 = None
[] 1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation)
[] 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 = Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations)
[] 5 = Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
-------	----------

1	Yes
2	No

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433">Question P-13 -- Disability

"Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)?"

Disability is a limitation or lack of ability that prevents a person from performing an activity within the range considered normal, or from behaving in a manner considered normal.

Read out the categories and dot the appropriate boxes. For this question you may have to dot more than one box. Encourage the respondent to name all serious disabilities a person has, e.g. if deaf and wheelchair-bound, dot 2 and 4.

Note that if 1 bad sight is corrected with glasses or 2 bad hearing with a hearing aid, it is not considered a disability for the census.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person has an intellectual disability, such as serious difficulties in learning.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_DSCOMM: Disability - communication

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433">P-13. Disability
<div class="i1">Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes.
[] 0 = None
[] 1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation)
[] 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 = Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations)
[] 5 =

Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433">Question P-13 -- Disability

"Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)?"

Disability is a limitation or lack of ability that prevents a person from performing an activity within the range considered normal, or from behaving in a manner considered normal.

Read out the categories and dot the appropriate boxes. For this question you may have to dot more than one box. Encourage the respondent to name all serious disabilities a person has, e.g. if deaf and wheelchair-bound, dot 2 and 4.

Note that if 1 bad sight is corrected with glasses or 2 bad hearing with a hearing aid, it is not considered a disability for the census.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person has a communication disability, such as a speech impediment.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_DSHEAR: Disability - hearing

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433">P-13. Disability
<div class="i1">Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes.
[] 0 = None
[] 1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation)
[] 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 = Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations)
[] 5 = Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</div>
</sva r >

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433">Question P-13 -- Disability

"Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)?"

Disability is a limitation or lack of ability that prevents a person from performing an activity within the range considered normal, or from behaving in a manner considered normal.

Read out the categories and dot the appropriate boxes. For this question you may have to dot more than one box. Encourage the respondent to name all serious disabilities a person has, e.g. if deaf and wheelchair-bound, dot 2 and 4.

Note that if 1 bad sight is corrected with glasses or 2 bad hearing with a hearing aid, it is not considered a disability for the census.
</sva r >

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person has a hearing disability. Bad hearing corrected with a hearing aid was not considered a disability.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_DSPHYS: Disability - physical

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431

ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433">P-13. Disability
<div class="i1">Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes.
[] 0 = None
[] 1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation)
[] 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 = Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations)
[] 5 = Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svar a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433">Question P-13 -- Disability

"Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)?"

Disability is a limitation or lack of ability that prevents a person from performing an activity within the range considered normal, or from behaving in a manner considered normal.

Read out the categories and dot the appropriate boxes. For this question you may have to dot more than one box. Encourage the respondent to name all serious disabilities a person has, e.g. if deaf and wheelchair-bound, dot 2 and 4.

Note that if 1 bad sight is corrected with glasses or 2 bad hearing with a hearing aid, it is not considered a disability for the census.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person has a physical disability, such as needing a wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis, or limb or hand usage limitations.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_DSSIGHT: Disability - sight

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433">P-13. Disability
<div class="i1">Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)? Mark any that apply. Dot the appropriate boxes.
[] 0 = None
[] 1 = Sight (blind/severe visual limitation)
[] 2 = Hearing (deaf, profoundly hard of hearing)
[] 3 = Communication (speech impairment)
[] 4 = Physical (e.g. needs wheelchair, crutches or prosthesis; limb, hand usage limitations)
[] 5 = Intellectual (serious difficulties in learning)
[] 6 = Emotional (behavioural, psychological)</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433">Question P-13 -- Disability

"Does (the person) have any serious disability that prevents his/her full participation in life activities (such as education, work, social life)?"

Disability is a limitation or lack of ability that prevents a person from performing an activity within the range considered normal, or from behaving in a manner considered normal.

Read out the categories and dot the appropriate boxes. For this question you may have to dot more than one box. Encourage the respondent to name all serious disabilities a person has, e.g. if deaf and wheelchair-bound, dot 2 and 4.

Note that if 1 bad sight is corrected with glasses or 2 bad hearing with a hearing aid, it is not considered a disability for the census.
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person has a sight disability. Bad sight corrected with spectacles was not considered a disability.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Disability Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_FATHLIV: Father alive**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A436 ZA01A437">Father alive
<div class="i1">P-15. Is (the person's) own biological father still alive?</div>
<div class="i2">[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
[] D = Do not know</div>
<div class="i1">P-15a. __ (Person no.) If yes, who in this household is (the person's) father? For</div>
<div class="i2">example, if the father is the person listed in row 2, write [0] [2]. If the father does
not live in this household, write [9] [9] in the appropriate boxes.</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A436 ZA01A437">Question P-15 -- Father alive

This question works in exactly in the same way as the previous question.

P-15 "Is (the person's) own biological father still alive?"

Again we do not mean stepfather or father by adoption.

Dot one alternative -- "Yes", "No" or "Don't know". Answer "Don't know" only if nobody in the household can help you to find the correct answer.

If "No" or "Don't know" skip P-15a and go to P-16. If "Yes" go to Question P-15a.

P-15a "Who in this household is (the person's) father?"
[P. 46]

If the person's father is a member of this household, give the row number of the father in the appropriate space.

If the person's father does not live in the household write "99".
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person's father was still alive.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_MOTHLIV: Mother alive**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<sva r v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409
ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420
ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431
ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478
ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485"><span class="h1">Section A: Information for persons in
the household -- ask of everyone</span><br />[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing
individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the
other nine.]<br /></sva r></p>
```

```
<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A434 ZA01A435">Mother alive<br /><div class="i1">P-14. Is (the person's) own biological
mother still alive? Dot the appropriate box.</div><br /><div class="i2">[ ] Y = Yes<br />[ ] N = No<br />[ ] D = Do not
know</div><br /><div class="i1">P-14a. __ (Person no.) If yes, who in this household is (the person's) mother?
For</div><br /><div class="i2">example, if the mother is the person listed in row 2, write [0] [2]. If the mother<br />does
not live in this household, write [9] [9] in the appropriate boxes.</div><br /></sva r>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A434 ZA01A435"><span class="em">Question P-14 -- Mother alive</span><br /><br />Question
14 has two parts, P-14 and P-14a. Everyone answers the first part. Those who answer "Yes" must answer the second part as
well.<br /><br /><span class="em">P-14 "Is (the person's) own biological mother still alive?</span><br /><br />
Biological mother means not a stepmother, or mother by adoption.<br /><br /> Dot one alternative:<br /><br /><div
class="i1">Y = Yes<br />N = No<br />D = Don't know</div><br /><br /> Answer "don't know" only if nobody in the
household can help you with the correct answer.<br /><br /> If "No" or "Don't know" skip P-14a and go to P-15.<br /><br />
If "Yes" go to Question P-14a.<br /><br /><span class="em">P-14a "Who in this household is (the person's)
mother?</span><br /><br />If the person's mother is a member of this household, give the row number of the mother in
the boxes. For example, if the person's mother is the household head, write "01". Or maybe the person's mother has been
listed in row 14 on questionnaire 2, so you will write "14".<br /><br />If the person's mother does not live in the same
household write "99".<br /></sva r>
```

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person's mother was alive.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_MOTHLOC: Mother's person number in household**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A434 ZA01A435">Mother alive
<div class="i1">P-14. Is (the person's) own biological mother still alive? Dot the appropriate box.</div>
<div class="i2">[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
[] D = Do not know</div>
<div class="i1">P-14a. __ (Person no.) If yes, who in this household is (the person's) mother? For</div>
<div class="i2">example, if the mother is the person listed in row 2, write [0] [2]. If the mother
does not live in this household, write [9] [9] in the appropriate boxes.</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13

14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
26	26
32	32
36	36
39	39
40	40
58	58
97	Mother does not live in household
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A434 ZA01A435">Question P-14 -- Mother alive

Question 14 has two parts, P-14 and P-14a. Everyone answers the first part. Those who answer "Yes" must answer the second part as well.

P-14 "Is (the person's) own biological mother still alive?

Biological mother means not a stepmother, or mother by adoption.

Dot one alternative:

<div class="i1">Y = Yes
N = No
D = Don't know</div>

 Answer "don't know" only if nobody in the household can help you with the correct answer.

 If "No" or "Don't know" skip P-14a and go to P-15.

 If "Yes" go to Question P-14a.

P-14a "Who in this household is (the person's) mother?

If the person's mother is a member of this household, give the row number of the mother in the boxes. For example, if the person's mother is the household head, write "01". Or maybe the person's mother has been listed in row 14 on questionnaire 2, so you will write "14".

If the person's mother does not live in the same household write "99".
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the individual person number of the mother of the person answering the question.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons for whom it is known that the mother is alive [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
--------------------------	-------------------

Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON

IPUMS

ZA2001A_EDATTAN: Level of education**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<svr v="ZA01A440 ZA01A441"><span class="h2">[Ask of] ALL aged 5 years or more</span><br /></svr></p>
```

```
<p><svr a="all" v="ZA01A440 ZA01A441">P-17. Level of education<br /><div class="i1">__ What is the highest level of
education that (the person) has completed?<br />99 = No schooling<br />00 = Grade 0<br />01 = Grade 1/Sub A<br />02
= Grade 2/Sub B<br />03 = Grade 3/Standard 1<br />04 = Grade 4/Standard 2<br />05 = Grade 5/Standard 3<br />06 =
Grade 6/Standard 4<br />07 = Grade 7/Standard 5<br />08 = Grade8/Standard 6/Form 1<br />09 = Grade9/Standard
7/Form 2<br />10 = Grade 10/Standard 8/Form 3/NTCI<br />11 = Grade 11/Standard 9/Form 4/NTCII<br />12 = Grade
12/Standard10/Form 5/Matric./NTCIII<br />13 = Certificate with less than Grade 12<br />14 = Diploma with less than Grade
12<br />15 = Certificate with Grade 12<br />16 = Diploma with Grade 12<br />17 = Bachelors Degree<br />18 =
Bachelors Degree and Diploma<br />19 = Honours degree<br />20 = Higher Degree (Masters, Doctorate)<br />21 =
Other<br />22 = Don't know<br />If categories 99 or 00-12 go to P-18</div><br /></svr>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	No schooling
01	Grade 1 / Sub A
02	Grade 2 / Sub B
03	Grade 3 / Standard 1
04	Grade 4 / Standard 2
05	Grade 5 / Standard 3
06	Grade 6 / Standard 4
07	Grade 7 / Standard 5
08	Grade 8 / Standard 6 / Form 1
09	Grade 9 / Standard 7 / Form 2
10	Grade 10 / Standard 8 / Form 3 / NTC1
11	Grade 11 / Standard 9 / Form 4 / NTC11
12	Grade 12 / Standard 10 / Form 5 / Matric / NTC111
13	Certificate with less than Grade 12
14	Diploma with less than Grade 12
15	Certificate with Grade 12
16	Diploma with Grade 12
17	Bachelor's Degree
18	Bachelor's Degree and Diploma

19	Honours degree
20	Higher Degree (Master's, Doctorate)
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

`<sva a="all" v="ZA01A440 ZA01A441">Question P-17 -- Level of education
Ask for all persons aged 5 years and over.

Question 17 has two parts, 17 and 17a. Only those people who indicate that they have a post-school qualification in Question 17 will answer 17a.

P-17 "What is the highest level of education that (the person) has completed?"

Read the categories to the respondent.

In this question we are interested in the highest level of education that the person has completed, not the level they are currently studying. Thus a pupil at school who is in Grade 9 has completed Grade 8.

Note that formal schooling starts from Grade 1, while Grade 0 means the year just before Grade 1, that is, the last year of pre-school. If currently in Grade 0, write "99". For a child currently in Grade 1, write "00" or "99", depending on whether the child attended Grade 0 or not.

If the person has not attended school, this should also be recorded as "99".

Diplomas and certificates must be at least six months full-time study or equivalent. NTC 1 stands for the National Technical Certificate on first year level. Probe about post-school diplomas/certificates. If a person say that he/she has completed a certificate or diploma, like MCSE, computer or secretarial courses, or a course in typing, welding, etc, ask how long it took to complete.

The next question, 17a, concerns the field of post-school education so some people will skip this question:
<div class="i1">If the respondent chose one of the codes in the first column skip P-17a and go to P-18.
If the respondent chose one of the codes in the second column, other than 21 or 22, go to P-17a.</div>
</sva>`

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the highest level of education the person has completed.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons age 5+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_EDATTAN2: Level of education (grouped)

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

`<sva v="ZA01A440 ZA01A441">[Ask of] ALL aged 5 years or more
</sva></p>`

`<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A440 ZA01A441">P-17. Level of education
<div class="i1">__ What is the highest level of education that (the person) has completed?
99 = No schooling
00 = Grade 0
01 = Grade 1/Sub A
02 = Grade 2/Sub B
03 = Grade 3/Standard 1
04 = Grade 4/Standard 2
05 = Grade 5/Standard 3
06 =`

Grade 6/Standard 4
07 = Grade 7/Standard 5
08 = Grade8/Standard 6/Form 1
09 = Grade9/Standard 7/Form 2
10 = Grade 10/Standard 8/Form 3/NTCI
11 = Grade 11/Standard 9/Form 4/NTCII
12 = Grade 12/Standard10/Form 5/Matric./NTCIII
13 = Certificate with less than Grade 12
14 = Diploma with less than Grade 12
15 = Certificate with Grade 12
16 = Diploma with Grade 12
17 = Bachelors Degree
18 = Bachelors Degree and Diploma
19 = Honours degree
20 = Higher Degree (Masters, Doctorate)
21 = Other
22 = Don't know
If categories 99 or 00-12 go to P-18</div></svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	No schooling
2	Some primary
3	Complete primary
4	Some secondary
5	Grade 12 / Std 10
6	Higher
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A440 ZA01A441">Question P-17 -- Level of education
Ask for all persons aged 5 years and over.

Question 17 has two parts, 17 and 17a. Only those people who indicate that they have a post-school qualification in Question 17 will answer 17a.

P-17 "What is the highest level of education that (the person) has completed?"

Read the categories to the respondent.

In this question we are interested in the highest level of education that the person has completed, not the level they are currently studying. Thus a pupil at school who is in Grade 9 has completed Grade 8.

Note that formal schooling starts from Grade 1, while Grade 0 means the year just before Grade 1, that is, the last year of pre-school. If currently in Grade 0, write "99". For a child currently in Grade 1, write "00" or "99", depending on whether the child attended Grade 0 or not.

If the person has not attended school, this should also be recorded as "99".

Diplomas and certificates must be at least six months full-time study or equivalent. NTC 1 stands for the National Technical Certificate on first year level. Probe about post-school diplomas/certificates. If a person say that he/she has completed a certificate or diploma, like MCSE, computer or secretarial courses, or a course in typing, welding, etc, ask how long it took to complete.

The next question, 17a, concerns the field of post-school education so some people will skip this question:
<div class="i1">If the respondent chose one of the codes in the first column skip P-17a and go to P-18.
If the respondent chose one of the codes in the second column, other than 21 or 22, go to P-17a.</div></svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the highest level of education the person has completed. Level of education is grouped into general categories.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons age 5+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_EDFIELD: Field of education**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<svr v="ZA01A442"><span class="h2">[Ask of] all persons with post-school qualifications</span><br /></svr></p>
```

```
<p><svr a="all" v="ZA01A442">P-17a. Field of education (If categories 13-20 in P-17)<br /><div class="i1">__ In which field is (the person's) highest post-school qualification?<br />01 = Agriculture or Renewable Natural Resources<br />02 = Architecture or Environmental Design<br />03 = Arts, Visual or Performing<br />04 = Business, Commerce or Management Sciences<br />05 = Communication<br />06 = Computer Science or Data Processing<br />07 = Education, Training or Development<br />08 = Engineering or Engineering Technology<br />09 = Health Care or Health Sciences<br />10 = Home Economics<br />11 = Industrial Arts, Trades or Technology<br />12 = Languages, Linguistics or Literature<br />13 = Law<br />14 = Libraries or Museums<br />15 = Life Sciences or Physical Sciences<br />16 = Mathematical Sciences<br />17 = Military Sciences<br />18 = Philosophy, Religion or Theology<br />19 = Physical Education or Leisure<br />20 = Psychology<br />21 = Public Administration or Social Services<br />22 = Social Sciences or Social Studies<br />23 = Other (Specify) _____</div><br /></svr>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Agriculture or renewable energy resources
02	Architecture or environment design
03	Arts (visual or performing)
04	Business, commerce or management sciences
05	Communication
06	Computer science or data processing
07	Education, training or development
08	Engineering or engineering technology
09	Health care or health sciences
10	Home economics
11	Industrial arts, trades or technology
12	Languages, linguistics or literature
13	Law
14	Libraries or museums
15	Life sciences or physical sciences
16	Mathematical sciences
17	Military sciences
18	Philosophy, religion or theology
19	Physical education or leisure
20	Psychology
21	Public administration or social services

22	Social sciences or social studies
23	Other
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A442">Question P-17a -- Field of education
Ask for all persons with a post-school qualification.

"In which field is (the person's) highest post-school qualification?"

The respondent may not know have the exact qualifications of some members of the household. You may have to probe to decide on a field of study.

You can show the prompt card at the back of the 09 book to the respondent so that s/he can look for the correct field. The prompt card is useful for this question because there are so many categories to read out and remember.

If the person wants to indicate more than one field of study, ask him or her to indicate the field in which he or she has the highest level of education. If he or she has several fields of the same level, ask him or her to choose the field that is most related to his or her work (now or previously).
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's field of education.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons age 5+ with at least a certificate or diploma with less than Grade 12 [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_FATHLOC: Father's person number in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A436 ZA01A437">Father alive
<div class="i1">P-15. Is (the person's) own biological father still alive?</div>
<div class="i2">[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
[] D = Do not know</div>
<div class="i1">P-15a. __ (Person no.) If yes, who in this household is (the person's) father? For</div>
<div class="i2">example, if the father is the person listed in row 2, write [0] [2]. If the father does
not live in this

household, write [9] [9] in the appropriate boxes.</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
30	30
34	34
97	Father does not live in household
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A436 ZA01A437">Question P-15 -- Father alive

This question works in exactly in the same way as the previous question.

P-15 "Is (the person's own biological father still alive?"

Again we do not mean stepfather or father by adoption.

Dot one alternative -- "Yes", "No" or "Don't know". Answer "Don't know" only if nobody in the household can help you to find the correct answer.

If "No" or "Don't know" skip P-15a and go to P-16. If "Yes" go to Question P-15a.

P-15a "Who in this household is (the person's father?"
[P. 46]

If the person's father is a member of this household, give the row number of the father in the appropriate space.

If the person's father does not live in the household write "99".
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the individual person number of the father of the person answering the question.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons for whom it is known that the father is alive [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Constructed Family Interrelationship Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_SCHOOL: Present school attendance

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409
ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420
ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431
ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478
ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485"><span class="h1">Section A: Information for persons in
the household -- ask of everyone</span><br />[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing
individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the
other nine.]<br /></sva></p>
```

```
<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A438 ZA01A439">Present school attendance<br /><div class="i1">P-16. _ Does (the person)
presently attend an educational institution? Please include</div><br /><div class="i2">studies by correspondence/
distance education.<br />1 = No (Go to P-17)<br />2 = Yes: Pre-school<br />3 = Yes: School<br />4 = Yes: College<br />5
= Yes: Technikon<br />6 = Yes: University<br />7 = Yes: Adult education centre<br />8 = Yes: Other (specify) _ _ _ _ _
_</div><br /><div class="i1">P-16a. _ If yes, is this institution public or private?</div><br /><div class="i2">1 = public
(government)<br />2 = private<br />3 = don't know</div><br /></sva>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	No
2	Pre-school
3	School
4	College
5	Technikon
6	University

7	Adult education centre
8	Other

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva v="ZA01A438 ZA01A439">Question P-16 and 16a -- Present school attendance

 Question 16 has two parts, P-16, and P-16a. Only those who answer "Yes" to P-16 have to answer 16a. Those who answer "No" go straight to P-17, as 16a will not apply to them.
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A438">P-16 "Does (the person) presently attend an educational institution?"

Please include studies by correspondence/ distance education.

If the answer is "Yes", read out the options so that you can enter the correct code 2--8 in the box in the column headed "Institution".

If the person is attending an educational institution that is not listed, write code 8 in the box and specify under the box. Be careful not to write near the boxes.

If a learner is not attending school for a number of days because of illness, s/he is still regarded as attending school.

This question must be answered for all persons, regardless of age.

If "No", skip P-16a and go to Question P-17. If "Yes", ask the next question.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person was currently attending pre-school, school, college, technikon, university or an adult education center.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_SCHTYPE: Type of educational institution

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A438 ZA01A439">Present school attendance
<div class="i1">P-16. _ Does (the person)

presently attend an educational institution? Please include studies by correspondence/ distance education.
1 = No (Go to P-17)
2 = Yes: Pre-school
3 = Yes: School
4 = Yes: College
5 = Yes: Technikon
6 = Yes: University
7 = Yes: Adult education centre
8 = Yes: Other (specify) _____

<div class="i1">P-16a. _ If yes, is this institution public or private?</div>
<div class="i2">1 = public (government)
2 = private
3 = don't know</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Public (government)
2	Private
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva v="ZA01A438 ZA01A439">Question P-16 and 16a -- Present school attendance

 Question 16 has two parts, P-16, and P-16a. Only those who answer "Yes" to P-16 have to answer 16a. Those who answer "No" go straight to P-17, as 16a will not apply to them.
</svar></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A439">P-16a "Is this institution public or private?"

1 = public, 2 = private, 3 = don't know.

Write the answer in the box in the column headed "Type". Write 3 = don't know only if no-one in the household knows the type.

[P. 47]

Note: A public school means a government school, i.e. a school directly under the provincial department of education. Former white schools known as ex-Model C schools are government schools, even if they are fee-paying.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the the educational institution the person was attending was public or private.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons attending an educational institution [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Education Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_WRKAVAIL: Availability

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</svar></p>

<p><sva v="ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">Did not have any work
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A446" v="ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18c. Availability (If NO to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ If offered work, how soon could (the person) start?
1 = Within one week
2 = More than 1 week, up to 2 weeks
3 = More than 2 weeks, up to 4 weeks
4 = Some time after 4 weeks
5 = Does not choose to work
Go to P-20</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Within one week
2	More than 1 week, up to 4 weeks
3	More than 2 weeks, up to 4 weeks
4	Some time after 4 weeks
5	Does not choose to work
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446">Question P-18 -- Any work in the 7 days before 10 October
Ask for all persons aged 10 years and over, that is, born before 10 October 1991

Question 18 has four parts i.e. P-18, P-18a, P-18b and P-18c. Only those who are working continue with the rest of Question 18. Those who are not working go to Question 19.
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A446">Question P-18c -- Availability

"If offered work, how soon could (the person) start?"

We want to know how soon the person can start work. The answer "within one week" means s/he may belong to the "labour force" according to the narrow definition. For labour force policy this question is very important. If the person cannot tell you when s/he could start work, the correct choice may be 5 = "Does not choose to work". However, as for the last question, answers that apparently contradict the answer to Question 18a are acceptable. Dot the correct box.

 National Bureau: Some respondents may think that you are offering them employment. Be sure to make it clear that you are not offering any work.

For all these people who have been answering P-18a, P-18b and P-18c on unemployment, skip the whole of P-19 and go to P-20.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates how soon the person could start if he/she were offered work.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons without work in the seven days before October 10 [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_WRKREASN: Reason why not working

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</sva></p>

<p><sva v="ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">Did not have any work
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A444" v="ZA01A444 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18a. Reason why not working (If no to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ What is the main reason why (the person) did not have work in the seven days before 10 October? If more than one reason, write the code of the main (most important) reason.
1 = Scholar or student
2 = Home-maker or housewife
3 = Pensioner or retired person/ too old to work
4 = Unable to work due to illness or disability
5 = Seasonal worker not working presently
6 = Does not choose to work
7 = Could not find work</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Scholar or student
2	Homemaker or housewife
3	Pensioner or retired person/too old to work
4	Unable to work due to illness or disability
5	Seasonal worker not working presently
6	Does not choose to work
7	Could not find work
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446">Question P-18 -- Any work in the 7 days before 10 October
Ask for all persons aged 10 years and over, that is, born before 10 October 1991

Question 18 has four parts i.e. P-18, P-18a, P-18b and P-18c. Only those who are working continue with the rest of Question 18. Those who are not working go to Question 19.
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A444">Question P-18a -- Reason why not working
Ask of all persons ages 10 years and older who said they did not have work.

"What is the main reason why (the person) did not have work in the seven days before 10 October."

If there is more than one reason, write the MAIN (most important) reason. The person must decide this for him/herself. Give him or her time to come up with a reason.

If the person (or proxy) does not know, try to find one applicable category. For children aged 10-15 the most likely answer will be 1 = scholar or student. For other young persons it might be "6 = does not choose to work" or "7 = could not find work". Normally, people find a suitable category after some discussion.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the reason why the person did not have any work in the seven days prior to October 10.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons without work in the seven days before October 10 [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_WRKSEEK: Taking active steps to find a job**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r v="ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">Did not have any work
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="ZA01A445" v="ZA01A445 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18b. Active steps (If no to P-18)
<div class="i1">In the past four weeks before 10 October has (the person) taken active steps to find employment? For example, (the person) went to visit factories or other employment places, placed or answered advertisements, looked for land or a building or equipment to start own business or farm.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446">Question P-18 -- Any work in the 7 days before 10 October
Ask for all persons aged 10 years and over, that is, born before 10 October 1991

Question 18 has four parts i.e. P-18, P-18a, P-18b and P-18c. Only those who are working continue with the rest of Question 18. Those who are not working go to Question 19.
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A445">Question P-18b -- Active steps

"In the past four weeks before 10 October has (the person) taken active steps to find employment?"

Active steps = E.g. if the person went to visit factories or other employment places, placed or answered advertisements, OR looked for land or a building or equipment to start his or her own business or farm. Read the example to the first person in the household.

There are only two alternatives, "Yes" or "No". Focus on the examples of activity to find employment or to start own business.

[P. 50]

If the person cannot mention any active steps, choose "No". Just reading newspapers is not an active step. The person should also answer advertisements.

Most people who chose categories 1--6 in answer to Question 18a should answer "No". However do not query the response even if it appears to contradict the answer to Question 18a. This is intended to pick up people of ambiguous labour force status.
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person is taking active steps to find employment. Examples of active steps include: going to visit factories or other employment places, placing or answering advertisements, or looking for land or building equipment to start one's own business or farm. Simply reading newspapers was not regarded as an active step but if a person had replied to advertisements, this qualified as an active step.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons without work in the seven days before October 10 [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_WRKWEEK: Any work in the seven days before 10 October

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svr v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</svr></p>

<p><svr a="all" v="ZA01A443 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18. Any work in the 7 days before 10 October
<div class="i1">_ In the seven days before 10 October did (the person) do any work for PAY (in cash or in kind profit or family gain, for one hour or more?
1 = Yes: formal registered (non-farming)
2 = Yes: informal unregistered (non-farming)
3 = Yes: farming
4 = Yes: has work but was temporarily absent
5 = No: did not have work
If yes go to P-19</div>
</svr>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes: formal registered (non-farming)
2	Yes: informal unregistered (non-farming)
3	Yes: farming
4	Yes: has work but was temporarily absent
5	No: did not have work
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svr v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446">Question P-18 -- Any work in the 7 days before 10 October
Ask for all persons aged 10 years and over, that is, born before 10 October 1991
</svr>

Question 18 has four parts i.e. P-18, P-18a, P-18b and P-18c. Only those who are working continue with the rest of Question 18. Those who are not working go to Question 19.

P-18 "In the seven days before 10 October did (the person) do any work for pay (in cash or in kind), profit, or family gain, for at least one hour?"

Payment in kind = e.g. when an employer buys a domestic worker clothes and pays for her medical expenses, or when people working on a farm get part of the crops in return.

Family gain = e.g. when a member of the family looks after the cattle.

Read all the categories to the respondent.

Work includes formal or informal work, farming, food production or food gathering, seasonal work (e.g. farm workers or other people who only work during a specific season), casual or piece work/job, selling vegetables or running a spaza.

[P. 49]

Classifying work as formal or informal

Formal work is work that takes place in a business or organisation registered in any way, or in the public sector, or in a non-governmental organisation. There are several ways to register a business, such as registration at a Registrar of Companies, Commissioner of Unemployment, South African Medical and Dental Council or Commissioner of Worker's Compensation. Businesses registered to pay VAT or registered as a close corporation are formal.

A private enterprise that is not registered in any way is classified as informal.

If a person had more than one activity among codes 1-3, indicate the one on which s/he spent the most time.

We are talking here about the week prior to census night. The answer is "Yes" (codes 1-4) if the person worked for at least one hour on any one day during the reference week. Note that temporary absence, e.g. on annual/sick/study leave, counts as having work for the purposes of this question.

For persons who say they worked (codes 1-3) or were temporarily absent from work, (code 4) skip P-18a, P-18b and P-18c and go to Question P-19.

For persons who say they did not have work (code 5), continue with Questions P-18a, P-18b and P-18c. These questions are about unemployment.

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person had any work in the seven days before October 10.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons age 10+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_CLASSWK: Class of worker

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)

<p><sva v="ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Had work
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A450">P-19. Work status (If YES to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ How can one best describe (the person's) main activity or work status?
1 = Paid employee
2 = Paid family worker
3 = Self-employed
4 = Employer
5 = Unpaid family worker
6 = Other (specify) _____</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Paid employee
2	Paid family worker
3	Self-employed
4	Employer
5	Unpaid family worker
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450">Question P-19 -- Work status

"How can one best describe (the person's) main activities or work status?"

Remember to focus on the seven days before the census.

If a person has two occupations ask for the occupation worked most at.

There are five possibilities. Read out the categories to the first respondent.

<div class="i1">1 = "paid employee". This means a person who works for someone else or a company for a wage or salary, or for commissions from sales or bonuses, or for payment in kind such as food, housing or training.

2 = "paid family workers", e.g. in shops or on farms. They get a normal salary or wages.

3 = "self-employed". This means a person who has his or her own business or enterprise but does not employ other persons except for unpaid family workers.

4 = "employer". This means a person who works for him/herself and employs others in his or her business.

5 = "unpaid family worker". This means someone that works in a family business or on a family farm without receiving a monetary payment.

6.="Other, specify". Write "6" in the box and write the details on the dotted line.</div>
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's main activity or work status.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Employed or economically active persons age 10+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_EMPSTAT: Employment status (official definition)

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A443 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18. Any work in the 7 days before 10 October
<div class="i1">_ In the seven days before 10 October did (the person) do any work for PAY (in cash or in kind profit or family gain, for one hour or more?
1 = Yes: formal registered (non-farming)
2 = Yes: informal unregistered (non-farming)
3 = Yes: farming
4 = Yes: has work but was temporarily absent
5 = No: did not have work
If yes go to P-19</div>
</sva></p>

<p><sva v="ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">Did not have any work
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A444" v="ZA01A444 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18a. Reason why not working (If no to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ What is the main reason why (the person) did not have work in the seven days before 10 October? If more than one reason, write the code of the main (most important) reason.
1 = Scholar or student
2 = Home-maker or housewife
3 = Pensioner or retired person/ too old to work
4 = Unable to work due to illness or disability
5 = Seasonal worker not working presently
6 = Does not choose to work
7 = Could not find work</div>
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A445" v="ZA01A445 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18b. Active steps (If no to P-18)
<div class="i1">In the past four weeks before 10 October has (the person) taken active steps to find employment? For example, (the person) went to visit factories or other employment places, placed or answered advertisements, looked for land or a building or equipment to start own business or farm.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No</div>
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A446" v="ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18c. Availability (If NO to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ If offered work, how soon could (the person) start?
1 = Within one week
2 = More than 1 week, up to 2 weeks
3 = More than 2 weeks, up to 4 weeks
4 = Some time after 4 weeks
5 = Does not choose to work
Go to P-20</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Employed
2	Unemployed
3	Not economically active
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450">Question P-19 -- Work status

"How can one best describe (the person's) main activities or work status?"

Remember to focus on the seven days before the census.

If a person has two occupations ask for the occupation worked most at.

There are five possibilities. Read out the categories to the first respondent.

<div class="i1">1 = "paid employee". This means a person who works for someone else or a company for a wage or salary, or for commissions from sales or bonuses, or for payment in kind such as food, housing or training.

2 = "paid family workers", e.g. in shops or on farms. They get a normal salary or wages.

3 = "self-employed". This means a person who has his or her own business or enterprise but does not employ other persons except for unpaid family workers.

4 = "employer". This means a person who works for him/herself and employs others in his or her business.

5 = "unpaid family worker". This means someone that works in a family business or on a family farm without receiving a monetary payment.

6 = "Other, specify". Write "6" in the box and write the details on the dotted line.</div>
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's employment status using the official or strict definition of unemployment. This definition classifies as unemployed those people within the economically active population who did not work during the seven days prior to census night, wanted to work and were available to start work within a week of census night, and had taken active steps to look for work or to start some form of self-employment in the four weeks prior to census night. The economically active population consists of those people who are employed and those who are unemployed.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons age 15 to 65 [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_EMPSTAT2: Employment status (expanded definition)

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A443 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18. Any work in the 7 days before 10 October
<div class="i1">_ In the seven days before 10 October did (the person) do any work for PAY (in cash or in kind profit or family gain, for one hour or more?
1 = Yes: formal registered (non-farming)
2 = Yes: informal unregistered (non-farming)
3 = Yes: farming
4 = Yes: has work but was temporarily absent
5 = No: did not have work
If yes go to P-19</div>
</sva></p>

<p><sva v="ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">Did not have any work
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A444" v="ZA01A444 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18a. Reason why not working (If no to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ What is the main reason why (the person) did not have work in the seven days before 10 October? If more than one reason, write the code of the main (most important) reason.
1 = Scholar or student
2 = Home-maker or housewife
3 = Pensioner or retired person/ too old to work
4 = Unable to work due to illness or disability
5 = Seasonal worker not working presently
6 = Does not choose to work
7 = Could not find work</div>
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A445" v="ZA01A445 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18b. Active steps (If no to P-18)
<div class="i1">In the past four weeks before 10 October has (the person) taken active steps to find employment? For example, (the person) went to visit factories or other employment places, placed or answered advertisements, looked for land or a building or equipment to start own business or farm.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No</div>
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A446" v="ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18c. Availability (If NO to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ If offered work, how soon could (the person) start?
1 = Within one week
2 = More than 1 week, up to 2 weeks
3 = More than 2 weeks, up to 4 weeks
4 = Some time after 4 weeks
5 = Does not choose to work
Go to P-20</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Employed
2	Unemployed
3	Not economically active
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450">Question P-19 -- Work status

"How can one best describe (the person's) main activities or work status?"

Remember to focus on the seven days before the census.

If a person has two occupations ask for the occupation worked most at.

There are five possibilities. Read out the categories to the first respondent.

<div class="i1">1 = "paid employee". This means a person who works for someone else or a company for a wage or salary, or for commissions from sales or bonuses, or for payment in kind such as food, housing or training.

2 = "paid family workers", e.g. in shops or on farms. They get a normal salary or wages.

3 = "self-employed". This means a person who has his or her own business or enterprise but does not employ other persons except for unpaid family workers.

4 = "employer". This means a person who works for him/herself and employs others in his or her business.

5 = "unpaid family worker". This means someone that works in a family business or on a family farm without receiving a monetary payment.

6.="Other, specify". Write "6" in the box and write the details on the dotted line.</div>
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's employment status using the expanded definition of unemployment. This definition classifies as unemployed those people within the economically active population who did not work during the seven days prior to census night, and wanted to work and were available to start work at some time in the future. The economically active population consists of those people who are employed and those who are unemployed.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons age 15 to 65 [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_EMPSTAT3: Employment status (derived)

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A443 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18. Any work in the 7 days before 10 October
<div class="i1">_ In the seven days before 10 October did (the person) do any work for PAY (in cash or in kind profit or family gain, for one hour or more?
1 = Yes: formal registered (non-farming)
2 = Yes: informal unregistered (non-farming)
3 = Yes: farming
4 = Yes: has work but was temporarily absent
5 = No: did not have work
If yes go to P-19</div>
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r v="ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">Did not have any work
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="ZA01A444" v="ZA01A444 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18a. Reason why not working (If no to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ What is the main reason why (the person) did not have work in the seven days before 10 October? If more than one reason, write the code of the main (most important) reason.
1 = Scholar or student
2 = Home-maker or housewife
3 = Pensioner or retired person/ too old to work
4 = Unable to work due to illness or disability
5 = Seasonal worker not working presently
6 = Does not choose to work
7 = Could not find work</div>
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="ZA01A445" v="ZA01A445 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18b. Active steps (If no to P-18)
<div class="i1">In the past four weeks before 10 October has (the person) taken active steps to find employment? For example, (the person) went to visit factories or other employment places, placed or answered advertisements, looked for land or a building or equipment to start own business or farm.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No</div>
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="ZA01A446" v="ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449">P-18c. Availability (If NO to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ If offered work, how soon could (the person) start?
1 = Within one week
2 = More than 1 week, up to 2 weeks
3 = More than 2 weeks, up to 4 weeks
4 = Some time after 4 weeks
5 = Does not choose to work
Go to P-20</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Employed
2	Unemployed
3	Scholar or student
4	Home-maker or housewife
5	Pensioner or retired person/too old to work
6	Unable to work due to illness or disability
7	Seasonal worker not working presently
8	Does not choose to work
9	Could not find work

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450">Question P-19 -- Work status

"How can one best describe (the person's) main activities or work status?"

Remember to focus on the seven days before the census.

If a person has two occupations ask for the occupation worked most at.

There are five possibilities. Read out the categories to the first respondent.

<div class="i1">1 = "paid employee". This means a person who works for someone else or a company for a wage or salary, or for commissions from sales or bonuses, or for payment in kind such as food, housing or training.

2 = "paid family workers", e.g. in shops or on

farms. They get a normal salary or wages.

3 = "self-employed". This means a person who has his or her own business or enterprise but does not employ other persons except for unpaid family workers.

4 = "employer". This means a person who works for him/herself and employs others in his or her business.

5 = "unpaid family worker". This means someone that works in a family business or on a family farm without receiving a monetary payment.

6="Other, specify". Write "6" in the box and write the details on the dotted line.</div>
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates a person's employment status using the official or strict definition of unemployment, and sub-categories of the classification 'not economically active'. This is also referred to as the 'Detailed Employment Status'.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons age 15 to 65 [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_IND1: Industry, 1 digit

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r v="ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Had work
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453">P-19a. Business/company name (If yes to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ _ _ _ _ What is the full name of the business/company or organization for whom (the person) works?
If the person works for him/herself, and the business does not have a name, write self in the appropriate row. If doing paid domestic work in a private household, write domestic service. Use capital letters only.</div>
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r v="ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453">P-19b. Company/business activity (If yes to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ _ _ _ _ What does the business do (main economic activity)?
Write the main industry, economic activity, product or service of (the person's) employer or company. For example, gold mining, road construction, supermarket, police service, healthcare, hairdressing, banking. Or, write the activity of the person if self-employed, for example, subsistence farming. If doing paid domestic work in a private household, write domestic service. Use capital letters only.</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	Private households with employed persons, extraterritorial organisations, and representatives of foreign governments
01	Agriculture; hunting; forestry and fishing
02	Mining and quarrying
03	Manufacturing
04	Electricity; gas and water supply
05	Construction
06	Wholesale and retail trade
07	Transport; storage and communication
08	Financial; insurance; real estate and business services
09	Community; social and personal services
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453">Question P-19a -- Business or company name

"What is the FULL name of the business/company or organisation for whom (the person) works?"

If the person works for him/herself (self-employed or employer), and the business does not have a name, write self.

If the person performs paid domestic work in a private household, enter "domestic service".

National Bureau: Write the response in the boxes provided and make sure that you write inside the boxes not outside. Do not leave empty boxes in between words. Make sure that you start at the top left corner and write only as much as will fit.

Question P-19b -- Company or business activity

"What does the business do (main economic activity)?"

Here we are interested in the main economic activity of the local unit of the organisation for whom the person works.

This may differ from the type of work the person performs, which is asked in the next question. For example, someone may be an accountant in a gold-mining organisation, or a messenger in a bank. In the first example, the main activity of the organisation is gold mining, while in the second, it is banking. Describe the activity in as much detail as possible.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the economic sector in which the person works by one-digit level.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Employed or economically active persons age 10+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work: Industry Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_IND2: Industry, 2 digit

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r v="ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Had work
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453">P-19a. Business/company name (If yes to P-18)
<div class="i1">_____ What is the full name of the business/company or organization for whom (the person) works?
If the person works for him/herself, and the business does not have a name, write self in the appropriate row. If doing paid domestic work in a private household, write domestic service. Use capital letters only.</div>
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r v="ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453">P-19b. Company/business activity (If yes to P-18)
<div class="i1">_____ What does the business do (main economic activity)?
Write the main industry, economic activity, product or service of (the person's) employer or company. For example, gold mining, road construction, supermarket, police service, healthcare, hairdressing, banking. Or, write the activity of the person if self-employed, for example, subsistence farming. If doing paid domestic work in a private household, write domestic service. Use capital letters only.</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Private households with employed persons
02	Exterritorial organisations
03	Representatives of foreign governments
09	Other activities not adequately defined
11	Agriculture and hunting
12	Forestry and logging
13	Fishing; operation of fish farms
21	Mining of coal and lignite
22	Extraction of crude petroleum and natural gas
23	Mining of gold and uranium ore
24	Mining of metal ores
25	Other mining and quarrying
29	Service activities incidental to mining
30	Manufacture of food; beverages and tobacco products
31	Manufacture of textiles; clothing and leather goods
32	Manufacture of footwear
33	Manufacture of fuel; petroleum; chemical and rubber products
34	Manufacture of other non-metallic mineral products
35	Manufacture of metal products; machinery and household appliances

36	Manufacture of electrical machinery and apparatus
37	Manufacture of electronic, sound/vision; medical and other appliances
38	Manufacture of transport equipment
39	Manufacture of furniture and other items NEC and recycling
41	Electricity; gas; steam and hot water supply
42	Collection; purification and distribution of water
50	Construction
61	Wholesale and commission trade
62	Retail trade and repairs of goods
63	Sale and repairs of motor vehicles; sale of fuel
64	Hotels and restaurants
71	Land transport
72	Water transport
73	Air transport
74	Supporting transport activities (inc. storage)
75	Post and telecommunication
81	Financial intermediation
82	Insurance and pension funding
83	Activities auxiliary to financial intermediation
84	Real estate activities
85	Renting of machinery and equipment
86	Computer and related activities
87	Research and development
88	Other business activities
91	Public administration and defence activities
92	Education
93	Health and social work
94	Other community; social and personal service activities
95	Activities of membership organisations
96	Recreational; cultural and sporting activities
97	Other service activities
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453">Question P-19a -- Business or company name

"What is the FULL name of the business/company or organisation for whom (the person) works?"

If the person works for him/herself (self-employed or employer), and the business does not have a name, write self.

If the person performs paid domestic work in a private household, enter "domestic service".

National Bureau: Write the response in the boxes provided and make sure that you write inside the boxes not outside. Do not leave empty boxes in between words. Make sure that you start at the top left corner and write only as much as will fit.

Question P-19b -- Company or business activity

"What does the business do (main economic

activity)?"

Here we are interested in the main economic activity of the local unit of the organisation for whom the person works.

This may differ from the type of work the person performs, which is asked in the next question. For example, someone may be an accountant in a gold-mining organisation, or a messenger in a bank. In the first example, the main activity of the organisation is gold mining, while in the second, it is banking. Describe the activity in as much detail as possible.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the economic sector in which the person works by two-digit level.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Employed or economically active persons age 10+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work: Industry Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_IND3: Industry, 3 digit

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svar v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</svar></p>

<p><svar v="ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Had work
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="all" v="ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453">P-19a. Business/company name (If yes to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ _ _ _ _ What is the full name of the business/company or organization for whom (the person) works?
If the person works for him/herself, and the business does not have a name, write self in the appropriate row. If doing paid domestic work in a private household, write domestic service. Use capital letters only.</div>
</svar></p>

<p><svar v="ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453">P-19b. Company/business activity (If yes to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ _ _ _ _ What does the business do (main economic activity)?
Write the main industry, economic activity, product or service of (the person's) employer or company. For example, gold mining, road construction, supermarket, police service, healthcare, hairdressing, banking. Or, write the activity of the person if self-employed, for example, subsistence farming. If doing paid domestic work in a private household, write domestic service. Use capital letters only.</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
-------	----------

010	Private households with employed persons
020	Exterritorial organizations
030	Representatives of foreign governments
100	Agriculture, hunting and related services
111	Growing of crops, market gardening, horticulture
112	Farming of animals
113	Growing of crops combined with farming of animals
114	Agricultural and animal husbandry services
115	Hunting, trapping and game propagation
116	Production of organic fertilizer
120	Forestry, logging and related services
121	Forestry and related services
122	Logging and related services
130	Fishing, operational of fish hatcheries and fish farms
131	Ocean and coastal fishing
132	Fish hatcheries and fish farms
210	Mining of coal and lignite
221	Extraction of crude petroleum and natural gas
230	Mining of gold and uranium ore
240	Mining of metal ores
241	Mining of iron ore
242	Mining of non-ferrous metal ores
250	Other mining and quarrying
251	Stone quarrying, clay and sandpits
252	Mining of diamonds (including-ding alluvial diamonds)
253	Mining and quarrying n.e.c.
290	Service activities incidental to mining of minerals
300	Manufacture of food products and beverages
301	Production, processing and preservation of meat
302	Manufacture of dairy products
303	Manufacture of grain mill products and starches
304	Manufacture of other food products
305	Manufacture of beverages
306	Manufacture of tobacco products
310	Manufacture of textiles, clothing and leather goods
311	Spinning, weaving and finishing of textiles
312	Manufacture of other textiles
313	Manufacture of knitted and crocheted fabrics
314	Manufacture of wearing apparel, except fur apparel

315	Dressing and dyeing of fur; manufacture of articles
316	Tanning and dressing of leather
317	Manufacture of footwear
320	Manufacture of wood and products of wood
321	Saw milling and planing of wood
322	Manufacture of products of wood, cork, straw
323	Manufacture of paper and paper products
324	Publishing
325	Printing and service activities related to printing
326	Reproduction of recorded media
330	Manufacture of coke, refined petroleum products
331	Manufacture of coke oven products
332	Petroleum refineries / synthesizers
333	Processing of nuclear fuel
334	Manufacture of basic chemicals
335	Manufacture of other chemical products
336	Manufacture of man-made fibres
337	Manufacture of rubber products
338	Manufacture of plastic products
340	Manufacture of other non-metallic mineral products
341	Manufacture of glass and glass products
342	Manufacture of non-metallic mineral products n.e.c
350	Manufacture of basic metals, fabricated metal products
351	Manufacture of basic iron and steel
352	Manufacture of basic precious and non-ferrous metals
353	Casting of metals
354	Manufacture of structural metal products, tanks
355	Manufacture of other fabricated metal products
356	Manufacture of general purpose machinery
357	Manufacture of special purpose machinery
358	Manufacture of household appliances n.e.c.
359	Manufacture of office, accounting and computing
360	Manufacture of electrical machinery and apparatus
361	Manufacture of electric motors, generators
362	Manufacture of electricity distribution and control
363	Manufacture of insulated wire and cable
364	Manufacture of accumulators, primary cells
365	Manufacture of electric lamps and lighting equipment
366	Manufacture of other electrical equipment n.e.c.

370	Manufacture of radio, television and communication
371	Manufacture of electronic valves and tubes and other
372	Manufacture of television and radio transmitters
373	Manufacture of television and radio receivers
374	Manufacture of medical appliances and instruments
375	Manufacture of optical instruments and photographic instruments
376	Manufacture of watches and clocks
380	Manufacture of transport equipment
381	Manufacture of motor vehicles
382	Manufacture of bodies (coachwork) for motor vehicles
383	Manufacture of parts and accessories for motor
384	Building and repairing of ships and boats
385	Manufacture of railway and tramway locomotives
386	Manufacture of aircraft and spacecraft
387	Manufacture of transport equipment n.e.c.
390	Manufacture of furniture; manufacturing n.e.c.
391	Manufacture of furniture
392	Manufacturing n.e.c.
395	Recycling n.e.c.
410	Electricity, gas, steam and hot water supply
411	Production, collection and distribution of electricity
412	Manufacture of gas; distribution of gaseous fuels
413	Steam and hot water supply
420	Collection, purification and distribution of water
500	Construction
501	Site preparation
502	Building of complete constructions or parts thereof
503	Building installation
504	Building completion
505	Renting of construction of demolition equipment
610	Wholesale and commission trade, except of motor
611	Wholesale trade on a fee or contract basis
612	Wholesale trade in agricultural raw materials
613	Wholesale trade in house-hold goods
614	Wholesale trade in non-agricultural intermediate
615	Wholesale trade in machinery, equipment and supplies
619	Other wholesale trade
620	Retail trade, except of motor vehicles and motor cycles
621	Non-specialized retail trade in stores

622	Retail trade in food, beverages and tobacco
623	Other retail trade in new goods in specialized stores
624	Retail trade in second-hand goods in stores
625	Retail trade not in stores
626	Repair of personal and house-hold goods
630	Sale, maintenance and repair of motor vehicles
631	Sale of motor vehicles
632	Maintenance and re-pair of motor vehicles
633	Sale of motor vehicle parts and accessories
634	Sale, maintenance and repair of motor cycles
635	Retail sale of automotive fuel
640	Hotels and restaurants
641	Hotels, camping sites and other provision of short stay
642	Restaurants, bars and can-teens
710	Land transport; transport via pipe-lines
711	Railway transport
712	Other land transport
713	Transport via pipelines
720	Water transport
721	Sea and coastal water transport
722	Inland water transport
730	Air transport
741	Supporting and auxiliary transport activities
750	Post and telecommunication
751	Postal and related courier activities
752	Telecommunication
810	Financial intermediation, except insurance and pension
811	Monetary intermediation
819	Other financial intermediation n.e.c.
820	Insurance and pension funding, except compulsory
821	Insurance and pension funding, except compulsory
830	Activities auxiliary to financial intermediation
831	Activities auxiliary to financial intermediation, except
832	Activities auxiliary to insurance and pension funding
840	Real estate activities
841	Real estate activities with own or leased property
842	Real estate activities on a fee or contract basis
850	Renting of machinery and equipment, without operator
851	Renting of transport equipment

852	Renting of other machinery and equipment
853	Renting of personal and household goods n.e.c.
860	Computer and related activities
861	Hardware consultancy
862	Software consultancy and supply
863	Data processing
864	Data base activities
865	Maintenance and repair of office, accounting
869	Other computer related activities
870	Research and development
871	Research and experimental development on natural activities
872	Research and experimental development on social activities
880	Other business activities
881	Legal, accounting, bookkeeping and auditing activities;
882	Architectural, engineering and other technical activities
883	Advertising
889	Business activities n.e.c.
910	Public administration and defense activities
911	Central government activities
912	Regional services council activities
913	Local authority activities
914	Provincial administrations
915	S A defense force
916	S A police service
917	Correctional service
920	Education
930	Health and social work
931	Human health activities
932	Veterinary activities
933	Social work activities
940	Other community, social and personal service activities
950	Activities of membership organizations n.e.c.
951	Activities of business, employers and professional
952	Activities of trade unions
959	Activities of other membership organizations
960	Recreational, cultural and sporting activities
961	Motion picture, radio, television and other entertainment
962	News agency activities
963	Library, archives, museums and other cultural activities

964	Sporting and other recreational activities
990	Other service activities
998	Unknown
999	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453">Question P-19a -- Business or company name

"What is the FULL name of the business/company or organisation for whom (the person) works?"

If the person works for him/herself (self-employed or employer), and the business does not have a name, write self.

If the person performs paid domestic work in a private household, enter "domestic service".

National Bureau: Write the response in the boxes provided and make sure that you write inside the boxes not outside. Do not leave empty boxes in between words. Make sure that you start at the top left corner and write only as much as will fit.

Question P-19b -- Company or business activity

"What does the business do (main economic activity)?"

Here we are interested in the main economic activity of the local unit of the organisation for whom the person works.

This may differ from the type of work the person performs, which is asked in the next question. For example, someone may be an accountant in a gold-mining organisation, or a messenger in a bank. In the first example, the main activity of the organisation is gold mining, while in the second, it is banking. Describe the activity in as much detail as possible.
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the economic sector in which the person works (three-digit level).

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Employed or economically active persons age 10+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work: Industry Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_OCC: Occupation, 3 digit

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 3 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r v="ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Had work
</sva r></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456">P-19c. Occupation (If yes to P-18)
<div class="i1"> _____
 _____ What is the main occupation of (the person) in this workplace?
Occupation refers to the type of work (the person) performed in the seven days before 10 October. Use two or more words. For example, street trader, cattle farmer, primary school teacher, domestic worker, fruit vendor, truck driver, warehouse manager, filing clerk, etc. Use capital letters only.</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
111	Legislators
112	Senior government officers
113	Traditional chiefs and heads of villages
114	Senior officers of special-interest organizations
119	Legislators and senior officers not elsewhere classified
121	Directors and chief executives
122	Production and operations managers/department managers
123	Other managers/department managers
129	Corporate managers not elsewhere classified
131	General managers
139	General managers not elsewhere classified
211	Physicists; chemists and related professionals
212	Mathematicians; statisticians and related professionals
213	Computing professionals
214	Architects; engineers and related professionals
215	Physical sciences technologists
219	Physical; mathematical and engineering science professionals not elsewhere classified
221	Life science professionals
222	Health professionals (except nursing)
223	Nursing and midwifery professionals
229	Life science and health professionals not elsewhere classified
231	College; university and higher education institutions teaching professionals
232	Secondary education institutions teaching professionals
233	Primary and pre-primary education institutions teaching professionals
234	Special education institutions teaching professionals
235	Other teaching institutions professionals
239	Other education professionals not elsewhere classified
241	Business professionals
242	Legal professionals
243	Archivists; librarians and related information professionals
244	Social science and related professionals
245	Writers and creative or performing artists
246	Religious professionals

249	Other professionals not elsewhere classified
311	Natural and engineering science technicians
312	Computer associate professionals
313	Optical and electronic equipment operators
314	Ship and aircraft controllers and technicians
315	Safety and quality inspectors
321	Life science technicians and related associate professionals
322	Modern health associate professionals (except nursing)
323	Nursing and midwifery associate professionals
324	Traditional medicine practitioners and faith healers
329	Life science and health associate professionals not elsewhere classified
331	Primary education teaching associate professionals
332	Pre-primary education teaching associate professionals
333	Special education teaching associate professionals
334	Other teaching associate professionals
339	Teaching associate professionals not elsewhere classified
341	Finance and sales associate professionals
342	Business services agents and trade brokers
343	Administrative associate professionals
344	Customs; tax and related government associate professionals
345	Police inspectors and detectives
346	Social work associate professionals
347	Artistic; entertainment and sports associate professionals
348	Religious associate professionals
349	Other associate professionals not elsewhere classified
411	Secretaries and keyboard-operating clerks
412	Numerical clerks
413	Material-recording and transport clerks
414	Library; mail and related clerks
419	Other office clerks and clerks not elsewhere classified (except customer services clerks)
421	Cashiers; tellers and related clerks
422	Client information clerks
429	Customer services clerks not elsewhere classified
511	Travel attendants and related workers
512	Housekeeping and restaurant services workers
513	Personal care and related workers
514	Other personal services workers
515	Astrologers; fortune-tellers and related workers
516	Protective services workers

519	Personal and protective services workers not elsewhere classified
521	Fashion and other models
522	Shop salespersons and demonstrators
523	Stall and market salespersons
611	Market gardeners and crop growers
612	Market-oriented animal producers and related workers
613	Market-oriented crop and animal producers
614	Forestry and related workers
615	Fishery workers; hunters and trappers
619	Market-oriented skilled agricultural and fishery workers not elsewhere classified
621	Subsistence agricultural and fishery workers
711	Miners; shot-firers; stone cutters and carvers
712	Building frame and related trades workers
713	Building finishers and related trades workers
714	Painters; building structure cleaners and related trades workers
719	Extraction and building trades workers not elsewhere classified
721	Metal molders; welders; sheet-metal workers; structural metal preparers and related trades work
722	Blacksmiths; tool-makers and related trades workers (excluding apprentices/trainees)
723	Machinery mechanics and fitters
724	Electrical and electronic equipment mechanics and fitters
729	Metal; machinery and related trades workers not elsewhere classified
731	Precision workers in metal and related materials
732	Potters; glass-makers and related trades workers
733	Handicraft workers in wood; textile; leather and related materials
734	Printing and related trades workers
739	Precision; handicraft; printing and related trades workers not elsewhere classified
741	Food processing and related trades workers
742	Wood treaters; cabinetmakers and related trades workers
743	Textile; garment and related trades workers
744	Pelt; leather and shoemaking trades workers
749	Other craft and related trades workers not elsewhere classified
811	Mining and mineral processing plant operators
812	Metal-processing plant operators
813	Glass; ceramics and related plant operators
814	Wood-processing and papermaking plant operators
815	Chemical-processing plant operators
816	Power-production and related plant operators
817	Automated assembly-line and industrial-robot operators
819	Stationary-plant and related operators not elsewhere classified

821	Metal and mineral-products machine operators
822	Chemical-products machine operators
823	Rubber and plastic products machine operators
824	Wood products machine operators
825	Printing; binding and paper products machine operators
826	Textile; fur and leather products machine operators
827	Food and related products machine operators
828	Assemblers
829	Other machine operators and assemblers not elsewhere classified
831	Locomotive-engine drivers and related workers
832	Motor vehicle drivers and related workers
833	Agricultural and other mobile plant operators
834	Ships' deck crews and related workers
839	Drivers and mobile plant operators not elsewhere classified
911	Street vendors and related workers
912	Shoe-cleaning and other elementary street services occupations
913	Domestic and related helpers; cleaners and laundress
914	Building caretakers and window and related cleaners
915	Messengers; porters; doorkeepers and related workers
916	Garbage collectors and related labourers
919	Elementary sales and services occupations not elsewhere classified
921	Agricultural; fishery and related labourers
929	Agricultural; fishery and related labourers not elsewhere classified
931	Mining and construction labourers
932	Manufacturing labourers
933	Transport labourers and freight handlers
939	Labourers in mining; construction; manufacturing and transport not elsewhere classified
997	Non-identifiable occupations
998	Unknown
999	NIU (under 10 years, not employed or economically inactive)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456">Question P-19c -- Occupation

"What is the main occupation of (the person) in this workplace?"

Occupation refers to the type of work the person performed in the seven days before the census. Use at least two words. Read the examples from the questionnaire to the first respondent.

Write down the current job title of the person, using two or three words, for example, primary school teacher, private gardener, cattle farmer, domestic worker, bus driver, communication technician, senior demographer, car sales person, office cleaner.

Do not accept only "teacher", "driver", "technician". Use two or three words for the description, otherwise it will be difficult to know what type of work they are doing.

Do not use academic titles like MA or PhD, or titles of honour.

National Bureau: Write the response in the boxes provided and make sure that you write inside the boxes not outside. Do not leave empty boxes between words. Start in the top left box.

Answers to questions P-19a, 19b and 19c should be related, in that they should all refer to the same job. If a person has more than one job, they should answer these questions in relation to their main job. If the answer to the occupation question appears inconsistent,

probe.

[P. 52]

The table in Appendix 3 contains several examples of name of business, industrial sector, and occupation that could go together. The table illustrates two things.
 <div class="i1">It shows the difference between industrial sector and occupation. It can be clearly seen that in some cases the occupation is directly related to the industrial sector, but in other cases it is not. Jobs such as driver, labourer, clerk, human relations officer, accountant, can be done in any industrial sector.

The examples show appropriate wording and level of detail for industrial sector and for occupation.</div>

You should study this table in your own time and make sure you understand the concepts.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the type of work the person performed in the seven days before 10 October 2001 by a three-digit level. Respondents were asked to describe their occupation in two or more words, for example, street trader, cattle farmer, primary school teacher, etc. Coding was done on the basis of the second edition of the South African Standard Classification of Occupations (SASCO), which is, in turn, based on the United Nations' International Standard Classification of Occupations (ISCO --1988).

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Employed or economically active persons age 10+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work: Occupation Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_OCC1: Occupation, 1 digit

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svar v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</svar></p>

<p><svar v="ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Had work
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="all" v="ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456">P-19c. Occupation (If yes to P-18)
<div class="i1">_ _ _ _ _
_ _ _ _ _ What is the main occupation of (the person) in this workplace?
Occupation refers to the type of work (the person) performed in the seven days before 10 October. Use two or more words. For example, street trader, cattle farmer, primary school teacher, domestic worker, fruit vendor, truck driver, warehouse manager, filing clerk, etc. Use capital letters only.</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	NIU (not in universe)

01	Legislators; senior officials and managers
02	Professionals
03	Technicians and associate professionals
04	Clerks
05	Service workers; shop and market sales workers
06	Skilled agricultural and fishery workers
07	Craft and related trades workers
08	Plant and machine operators and assemblers
09	Elementary occupations and unknown
98	Unknown

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

Question P-19c -- Occupation
"What is the main occupation of (the person) in this workplace?"
Occupation refers to the type of work the person performed in the seven days before the census. Use at least two words. Read the examples from the questionnaire to the first respondent.
Write down the current job title of the person, using two or three words, for example, primary school teacher, private gardener, cattle farmer, domestic worker, bus driver, communication technician, senior demographer, car sales person, office cleaner.
Do not accept only "teacher", "driver", "technician". Use two or three words for the description, otherwise it will be difficult to know what type of work they are doing.
Do not use academic titles like MA or PhD, or titles of honour.
National Bureau: Write the response in the boxes provided and make sure that you write inside the boxes not outside. Do not leave empty boxes between words. Start in the top left box.
Answers to questions P-19a, 19b and 19c should be related, in that they should all refer to the same job. If a person has more than one job, they should answer these questions in relation to their main job. If the answer to the occupation question appears inconsistent, probe.
[P. 52]
The table in Appendix 3 contains several examples of name of business, industrial sector, and occupation that could go together. The table illustrates two things.

It shows the difference between industrial sector and occupation. It can be clearly seen that in some cases the occupation is directly related to the industrial sector, but in other cases it is not. Jobs such as driver, labourer, clerk, human relations officer, accountant, can be done in any industrial sector.

The examples show appropriate wording and level of detail for industrial sector and for occupation.
You should study this table in your own time and make sure you understand the concepts.

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the type of work the person performed in the seven days before 10 October 2001 by a one-digit level. Respondents were asked to describe their occupation in two or more words, for example, street trader, cattle farmer, primary school teacher, etc. Coding was done on the basis of the second edition of the South African Standard Classification of Occupations (SASCO), which is, in turn, based on the United Nations' International Standard Classification of Occupations (ISCO --1988).

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Employed or economically active persons age 10+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work: Occupation Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_OCC2: Occupation, 2 digit**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svr v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</svr></p>

<p><svr v="ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Had work
</svr></p>

<p><svr a="all" v="ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456">P-19c. Occupation (If yes to P-18)
<div class="i1">_____ What is the main occupation of (the person) in this workplace?
Occupation refers to the type of work (the person) performed in the seven days before 10 October. Use two or more words. For example, street trader, cattle farmer, primary school teacher, domestic worker, fruit vendor, truck driver, warehouse manager, filing clerk, etc. Use capital letters only.</div>
</svr>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
11	Legislators and Senior Officials
12	Corporate Managers
13	General Managers
21	Physical; Mathematical and Engineering Science Professionals
22	Life Science and Health Professionals
23	Teaching Professionals
24	Other Professionals
31	Natural and Engineering Science Associate Professionals
32	Life science and Health Associate Professionals
33	Teaching Associate Professionals
34	Other Associate Professionals
41	Office Clerks
42	Customer Service Clerks
51	Personal and Protective Services Workers
52	Models; Salespersons and Demonstrators
61	Market-oriented skilled Agricultural and Fishery Workers
62	Subsistence Agricultural and Fishery Workers
71	Extraction and Building Trade Workers
72	Metal; Machinery and related Trade Workers
73	Handicraft; Printing and related Trade Workers
74	Other Craft and related Trade Workers

81	Stationary-Plant and related Operators
82	Machine Operators and Assemblers
83	Drivers and Mobile-Plant Operators
91	Sales and Services Elementary Occupations
92	Agricultural; Fishery and related Labourers
93	Mining; Construction; Manufacturing and Transport Labourers
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456">Question P-19c -- Occupation

"What is the main occupation of (the person) in this workplace?"

Occupation refers to the type of work the person performed in the seven days before the census. Use at least two words. Read the examples from the questionnaire to the first respondent.

Write down the current job title of the person, using two or three words, for example, primary school teacher, private gardener, cattle farmer, domestic worker, bus driver, communication technician, senior demographer, car sales person, office cleaner.

Do not accept only "teacher", "driver", "technician". Use two or three words for the description, otherwise it will be difficult to know what type of work they are doing.

Do not use academic titles like MA or PhD, or titles of honour.

National Bureau: Write the response in the boxes provided and make sure that you write inside the boxes not outside. Do not leave empty boxes between words. Start in the top left box.

Answers to questions P-19a, 19b and 19c should be related, in that they should all refer to the same job. If a person has more than one job, they should answer these questions in relation to their main job. If the answer to the occupation question appears inconsistent, probe.

[P. 52]

The table in Appendix 3 contains several examples of name of business, industrial sector, and occupation that could go together. The table illustrates two things.
 <div class="i1">It shows the difference between industrial sector and occupation. It can be clearly seen that in some cases the occupation is directly related to the industrial sector, but in other cases it is not. Jobs such as driver, labourer, clerk, human relations officer, accountant, can be done in any industrial sector.

The examples show appropriate wording and level of detail for industrial sector and for occupation.</div>

You should study this table in your own time and make sure you understand the concepts.
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the type of work the person performed in the seven days before 10 October 2001 by a two-digit level. Respondents were asked to describe their occupation in two or more words, for example, street trader, cattle farmer, primary school teacher, etc. Coding was done on the basis of the second edition of the South African Standard Classification of Occupations (SASCO), which is, in turn, based on the United Nations' International Standard Classification of Occupations (ISCO --1988).

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Employed or economically active persons age 10+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work: Occupation Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_BORNFEM: Female births

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463 ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466 ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989)
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463">P-20. Total births
<div class="i1">If none write [0] [0] and go to P-21. Include ALL her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead).
[Example given of total children: 03 for total, 02 for boys and 01 for girls.]
__ How many [total] children, if any, has (the person) ever had, that were born alive?
__ How many of these were boys?
__ How many of these were girls?</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	0
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva r a="all" v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463">Question P-20 -- Total births

"How many children, if any, has (the person) ever had that were born alive?"

Start by asking for the total number of children born alive. Include all her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. (The next question will record how many are still alive.) However do not count still births or adopted babies.

If the respondent says that she has 1 child, but that child is 'late' (passed away) you write 01 in the box for "Total" and ask:

"Was it a boy or a girl?" Then write 01 in the relevant box.

[P. 54]

 If she has more than 1 child ask:

"How many of these were boys?" and write the answer in the box, e.g. 02.

"How many of these were girls?" and write the answer in the box, e.g. 01.

Then you confirm the total, e.g. in this case: 03 children who were born alive.

If there is a discrepancy, e.g. total number is 4 but the woman says 2 girls and 1 boy, probe. Ask if the total includes children who have died or are living somewhere else.

If the woman has had no children, enter 00 in the boxes for total, boys and girls and ask no more questions of this woman. Skip P-21a and P-21b and go to the household questions.

National Bureau: Note that you must write 00 in all the boxes for women who qualify for this question and have had no children, not just the total boxes. (But do not write 00 in these boxes for men or young girls or older women. For these people we do not fill in this question at all.)
</sva r>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates how many girls, if any, the person has ever had that were born alive.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Females ages 12 to 50 [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_BORNMAL: Male births

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463 ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466 ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989)
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463">P-20. Total births
<div class="i1">If none write [0] [0] and go to P-21. Include ALL her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead).
[Example given of total children: 03 for total, 02 for boys and 01 for girls.]
__ How many [total] children, if any, has (the person) ever had, that were born alive?
__ How many of these were boys?
__ How many of these were girls?</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	0
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463">Question P-20 -- Total births

"How many children, if any, has (the person) ever had that were born alive?"

Start by asking for the total number of children born alive. Include all her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. (The next question will record how many are still alive.) However do not count still births or adopted babies.

If the respondent says that she has 1 child, but that child is 'late' (passed away) you write 01 in the box for "Total" and ask:

"Was it a boy or a girl?" Then write 01 in the relevant box.

[P. 54]

 If she has more than 1 child ask:

"How many of these were boys?" and write the answer in the box, e.g. 02.

"How many of these were girls?" and write the answer in the box, e.g. 01.

Then you confirm the total, e.g. in this case: 03 children who were born alive.

If there is a discrepancy, e.g. total number is 4 but the woman says 2 girls and 1 boy, probe. Ask if the total includes children who have died or are living somewhere else.

If the woman has had no children, enter 00 in the boxes for total, boys and girls and ask no more questions of this woman. Skip P-21a and P-21b and go to the household questions.

National Bureau: Note that you must write 00 in all the boxes for women who qualify for this question and have had no children, not just the total boxes. (But do not write 00 in these boxes for men or young girls or older women. For these people we do not fill in this

question at all.)
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates how many boys, if any, the person has ever had that were born alive.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Females ages 12 to 50 [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_CHBORN: Total births

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463 ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466 ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989)
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463">P-20. Total births
<div class="i1">If none write [0] [0] and go to P-21. Include ALL her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead).
[Example given of total children: 03 for total, 02 for boys and 01 for girls.]
__ How many [total] children, if any, has (the person) ever had, that were born alive?
__ How many of these were boys?
__ How many of these were girls?</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	0
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8

09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463">Question P-20 -- Total births

"How many children, if any, has (the person) ever had that were born alive?"

Start by asking for the total number of children born alive. Include all her children, i.e. those who are still living, whether or not they live in this household, and those who are dead. (The next question will record how many are still alive.) However do not count still births or adopted babies.

If the respondent says that she has 1 child, but that child is 'late' (passed away) you write 01 in the box for "Total" and ask:

"Was it a boy or a girl?" Then write 01 in the relevant box.

[P. 54]

 If she has more than 1 child ask:

"How many of these were boys?" and write the answer in the box, e.g. 02.

"How many of these were girls?" and write the answer in the box, e.g. 01.

Then you confirm the total, e.g. in this case: 03 children who were born alive.

If there is a discrepancy, e.g. total number is 4 but the woman says 2 girls and 1 boy, probe. Ask if the total includes children who have died or are living somewhere else.

If the woman has had no children, enter 00 in the boxes for total, boys and girls and ask no more questions of this woman. Skip P-21a and P-21b and go to the household questions.

National Bureau: Note that you must write 00 in all the boxes for women who qualify for this question and have had no children, not just the total boxes. (But do not write 00 in these boxes for men or young girls or older women. For these people we do not fill in this question at all.)
</sva>

description**DEFINITION**

This variable indicates how many children, if any, the person has ever had that were born alive.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Females ages 12 to 50 [discrepancies: none]

concept**CONCEPT**

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_CHSURV: Total children still living

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463 ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466 ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989)
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="all" v="ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466">P-20a. Still living
<div class="i1">If the person has ever given live birth:
__ How many [total] children, are still alive?
__ How many boys are still alive?
__ How many girls are still alive?
For example, if 2 children of the 3 given in P-20 are still alive, 1 boy and 1 girl, write:
[Example shows 02 for total, 01 for boys and 01 for girls.]</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	0
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19

20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466">Question P-20a -- Children still living
Ask this question of all women who answered "1 or more" to Question P-20, i.e. who have ever given birth to live babies.

Adjust your questions according to the answers given in Question P-20. E.g., if the woman has only had boys there is no need to ask about girls here. Just write 00 in the girls boxes.

If boys:
"How many boys are still alive (were still alive on the census night, i.e. 10 Oct)?"

If girls:
"How many girls are still alive (were still alive on the census night, i.e. 10 Oct)?"

Write the answers in the boxes for boys and girls. Add the two together for the total, then ask the respondent if this number of children is still alive.

The total here cannot be greater than the total for children ever born alive in P-21. If the total is greater, probe. The answers to these questions must be consistent.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates how many children were still alive.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Females ages 12 to 50 [discrepancies:none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_HRSWRK: Hours worked during the 7 days before October 10

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</sva></p>

<p><sva v="ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Had work
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A457">P-19d. Hours worked (If yes to P-18)
<div class="i1">__ How many hours did (the

person) work in the seven days before 10 October? If (the person) was absent from work those seven days, but usually works, write the number of hours s/he usually works.</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30
31	31
32	32
33	33
34	34
35	35

36	36
37	37
38	38
39	39
40	40
41	41
42	42
43	43
44	44
45	45
46	46
47	47
48	48
49	49
50	50
51	51
52	52
53	53
54	54
55	55
56	56
57	57
58	58
59	59
60	60
61	61
62	62
63	63
64	64
65	65
66	66
67	67
68	68
69	69
70	70
71	71
72	72
73	73
74	74

75	75
76	76
77	77
78	78
79	79
80	80
81	81
82	82
83	83
84	84
85	85
86	86
87	87
88	88
89	89
90	90
91	91
92	92
93	93
94	94
95	95
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

`<sva a="all" v="ZA01A457">Question P-19d -- Hours worked

"How many hours did (the person) work in the seven days before 10 October?"

Remember to include overtime and to add hours worked at a secondary place of work, if any.

If the person was absent from work those seven days, but usually works, indicate the number of hours s/he usually works, including overtime.

Write two digits. Nine hours = 09, 30 hours = 30.

If the respondent says the number of hours he/she works, ask if it is per day or per week. If it is per day multiply the number of hours by the number of days worked during that week.

If a person reports 70 hours per week or more, probe. A normal working week is 5 x 8 hours = 40 hours, or thereabouts. Even including the weekend 7 x 8 would be 56 hours.
</sva>`

description**DEFINITION**

This variable indicates how many hours the person worked in the seven days before October 10.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Employed or economically active persons age 10+ [discrepancies: none]

concept**CONCEPT**

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
--------------------------	-------------------

Work Variables -- PERSON

IPUMS

ZA2001A_LSTMO: Date of last birth - month**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<svr v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463 ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466 ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470
ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473"><span class="h2">Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951
and 1989)</span><br /></svr></p>
```

```
<p><svr a="all" v="ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">P-20b. Last child
born<br /><div class="i1">Write the day, month and year of the last live birth and dot the appropriate box of the sex. If
multiple birth, indicate only the last child. Dot the appropriate box whether the child is still alive on Census night 9 -- 10
October. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead).<br />If (the person) has ever given live birth: When was (the person's)
last child born?<br />_____ Date of birth (DD/MM/YYYY)<br />What is the sex of that child?<br />[] M = Male<br />[]
F = Female<br />Is that child alive or dead?<br />[] A = Alive<br />[] D = Dead</div><br /></svr>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	January
02	February
03	March
04	April
05	May
06	June
07	July
08	August
09	September
10	October
11	November
12	December
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<svr a=" ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A472 ZA01A473" v="ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469
ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473"><span class="em">Question P-20b -- Last child born</span><br />Ask this
question of all women who answered "1 or more" to Question P-20, i.e. who have ever given birth to live babies.<br /><br />
<span class="em">"When was (the person's) last child born?"</span><br /><br />Give date of birth: DD/ MM / YYYY<br />
<br />Write in the correct boxes, i.e. day in the DD boxes, month in the MM boxes and year in the YYYY boxes.<br /><br />
<br />Give sex. Dot the correct boxes, i.e. M for male and F for female<br /><br /><span class="em">"Is that child alive or
dead?"</span> Dot the correct boxes, i.e. A for alive and D for dead.<br /><br /><span class="pg">[P. 55]</span><br />
<br /><br />There remain two more questions for everyone - travel and income. Fill in the boxes for all household members.<br />
</svr>
```

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the month of this person's last birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Females ages 12 to 50 who have given birth [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_SURVFEM: Female children still living

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463 ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466 ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989)
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466">P-20a. Still living
<div class="i1">If the person has ever given live birth:
__ How many [total] children, are still alive?
__ How many boys are still alive?
__ How many girls are still alive?
For example, if 2 children of the 3 given in P-20 are still alive, 1 boy and 1 girl, write:
[Example shows 02 for total, 01 for boys and 01 for girls.]</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	0
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10

11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466">Question P-20a -- Children still living
Ask this question of all women who answered "1 or more" to Question P-20, i.e. who have ever given birth to live babies.

Adjust your questions according to the answers given in Question P-20. E.g., if the woman has only had boys there is no need to ask about girls here. Just write 00 in the girls boxes.

If boys:
"How many boys are still alive (were still alive on the census night, i.e. 10 Oct)?"

If girls:
"How many girls are still alive (were still alive on the census night, i.e. 10 Oct)?"

Write the answers in the boxes for boys and girls. Add the two together for the total, then ask the respondent if this number of children is still alive.

The total here cannot be greater than the total for children ever born alive in P-21. If the total is greater, probe. The answers to these questions must be consistent.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates how many girl children were still alive.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Females ages 12 to 50 [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_SURVMAL: Male children still living

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<svar v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463 ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466 ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470
ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473"><span class="h2">Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951
and 1989)</span><br /></svar></p>
```

```
<p><svar a="all" v="ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466">P-20a. Still living<br /><div class="i1">If the person has ever
given live birth:<br />__ How many [total] children, are still alive?<br />__ How many boys are still alive?<br />__ How
many girls are still alive?<br />For example, if 2 children of the 3 given in P-20 are still alive, 1 boy and 1 girl, write:<br
/>[Example shows 02 for total, 01 for boys and 01 for girls.]</div><br /></svar>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	0
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466">Question P-20a -- Children still living
Ask this question of all women who answered "1 or more" to Question P-20, i.e. who have ever given birth to live babies.

Adjust your questions according to the answers given in Question P-20. E.g., if the woman has only had boys there is no need to ask about girls here. Just write 00 in the girls boxes.

If boys:
"How many boys are still alive (were still alive on the census night, i.e. 10 Oct)?"

If girls:
"How many girls are still alive (were still alive on the census night, i.e. 10 Oct)?"

Write the answers in the boxes for boys and girls. Add the two together for the total, then ask the respondent if this number of children is still alive.

The total here cannot be greater than the total for children ever born alive in P-21. If the total is greater, probe. The answers to these questions must be consistent.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates how many boy children were still alive.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Females ages 12 to 50 [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_WRKHERE: Place of work same as sub-place where usually lives

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</sva></p>

<p><sva v="ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Had work
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A458">Place of work (If yes to P-18)
<div class="i1">(P-19e) Does (the person) work in the same sub-place in which s/he usually lives? Dot</div>
<div class="i2">the appropriate box.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Yes
2	No
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A458">Question P-19e and P-19f -- Place of work

P-19e "Does (the person) work in the same sub-place in which s/he usually lives?"

Dot Y for "Yes" or N for "No".

We are interested in people who commute between different places from home to work.

If the person lives and works in the same suburb, ward, farm or informal settlement, etc. s/he answers "Yes".

Farmers and persons who have their businesses at home or in a home-based office, e.g. lawyers, dressmakers, dentists, or people with a spaza shop or shebeen in their home, do not have to travel to the place of work. For them dot Y = "Yes".

Sales representatives and truck drivers and other persons with a mobile place of work indicate the place where they normally start their travelling or where they get their orders.

If "Yes", skip P-19f and go to Question P-20 on children ever born.

If "No" continue with Question P-19f regarding place of work.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person works in the same sub-place in which he/she usually lives.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Employed or economically active persons age 10+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_WRKPROV: Province of work

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A443 ZA01A444 ZA01A445 ZA01A446 ZA01A447 ZA01A448 ZA01A449 ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Ask for all persons aged 10 years and older (born before 10 October 1991)
</sva></p>

<p><sva v="ZA01A450 ZA01A451 ZA01A452 ZA01A453 ZA01A454 ZA01A455 ZA01A456 ZA01A457 ZA01A458 ZA01A459 ZA01A460">Had work
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A459 ZA01A460"><div class="i1">(P-19f) If no, where is this place of work? If not the same place, write province [P] [R],</div>
<div class="i2">main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below.
__ Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-place</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Western Cape

02	Eastern Cape
03	Northern Cape
04	Free State
05	KwaZulu-Natal
06	North West
07	Gauteng
08	Mpumalanga
09	Limpopo
97	Foreign place of work
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A459 ZA01A460">P-19f "If No, where is this place of work?"

For persons who do not work in the same place as where they live, give their place of work. Write the name of the main place and the name of the sub-place. E.g. Pretoria, Arcadia; or Kutama, Tshikwarane. Add the province abbreviation.

If the person works abroad, write the name of the country in the space provided, and not that of the city or the province.

National Bureau: Write the main place in the main place row and the sub place in the sub-place row. Do not continue writing the main place in the sub-place row if the name is too long.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's province of work.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Employed or economically active persons age 10+ who work in a sub-place different from their usual living place [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Work Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_ENUM96: Place of enumeration and 1996 residence

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409

ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420
 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431
 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478
 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in
 the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing
 individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the
 other nine.]
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A482" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421
 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A480 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">Usually live
<div class="i1">P-11. Does
 (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</div>
<div class="i2">Dot the appropriate
 box.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes go to P-12</div>
<div class="i1">P-11a. If no, where does (the
 person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of</div>
<div class="i2">enumeration, dot the S box.
[]
 S
If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-
 place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes
 below. Use capital letters only.
__ Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-
 space</div>
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="ZA01A425 ZA01A426" v="ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">P-12a. From
 where moved (If no to P-12)
<div class="i1">Where did (the person) move from? If more than one move, give details
 of the last move. Write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb,
 ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country. Use capital letters only.
__
 Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-place</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Same place
2	Different places, same province
3	Different provinces
4	Foreign 1996 residence
8	Unknown
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svar a="ZA01A423 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A483" v="ZA01A423 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483"><span
 class="em">P-12 "Five years ago (at the time of Census '96), was (the person) living in this place (i.e. this suburb, ward,
 township, village, farm, informal settlement)?"

If the answer is "Yes" dot the Y box, if "No" dot the N
 box. Dot the box marked B for people who were not alive at the time of the last census (B = born after October 1996).

 />
[P. 44]

The main issue here is, what counts as a move? Again the question
 refers to a very small area -- the sub-place. If the person lived in the same dwelling 5 years ago the answer is "Yes". If the
 respondent has moved within the same "sub-place" from one house to another, the answer
 should also be "Yes" because we do not count short-distance residential moves for this question. If the person was living in a
 different sub-place from the one on the front of the 09 book, the answer is "No".

If "Yes" or born after October
 96 skip P-12a and P-12b and go to Question P-13.

If "No" go to Questions P-12a and P-12b.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person's place of enumeration is the same place of residence in 1996.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons age 5+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_ENUMPLAC: Place of enumeration and place of usual residence**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A482" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A480 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">Usually live
<div class="i1">P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</div>
<div class="i2">Dot the appropriate box.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes go to P-12</div>
<div class="i1">P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of</div>
<div class="i2">enumeration, dot the S box.
[] S
If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only.
__ Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-space</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Same place
2	Different places, same province
3	Different provinces
4	Foreign usual residence
8	Unknown

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A480 ZA01A482">Question P-11 and 11a -- Usually live

This question also has two parts i.e. P-11 and P-11a. The first part asks if the person usually lives in this household. People who answer "Yes" can move straight on to Question 12. People who say "No" must answer the second part of the question, P-11a.

P-11 "Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?"

If "Yes" skip P-11a and go to P-12, if "No" ask Question P-11a.

P-11a "Where does (the person) usually live?"

The purpose of this question is to identify visitors and exclude them from data about total household income, or data about the number of

people who live in a particular place. If the person does not usually live in this dwelling but lives in the same sub-place, dot the S box (S = Same). [P. 43] If the person usually lives in a different place, write the name of the main place and the name of the sub-place in the spaces provided, e.g. Pretoria, Arcadia; or Kutama, Tshikwarane. One place name is not sufficient for coding purposes. Main place and sub-place This is the first question that brings in the concepts of main place and sub-place. So far we have only needed province or country. Now we have to write sufficient information to pinpoint local places. A main place is a city, town, township, tribal authority or administrative area. A sub-place is a suburb, section of a township, smallholding, village, subvillage, ward or informal settlement. On the front of the questionnaire for sub-place we wrote the most local name used by the household. For this question, and other questions asking for main place and sub-place, we must be a little more careful, as some local names can occur more than once within a main place. For more details, see Appendix 6, which also give examples within the new metros. There are also two boxes for the abbreviation of the province, as some place names occur in more than one province. Use the following two-letter abbreviations: EC, FS, GP, KN, MP, NC, NP, NW, WC. National Bureau: Write the main place in the main place row and the sub-place in the sub-place row. Do not continue writing the main place in the sub-place row if the name is too long. Just write as many letters as will fit, as we did for religion. If the person usually lives abroad, ask for the name of the country and write it in the space provided. Write the name of the country, not of the city or the province.

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person's place of enumeration is their usual place of residence.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_ENUMPROV: Place of enumeration and birth place

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A415 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483" v="ZA01A415 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480

ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09a. Place of birth (If yes to P-09)
<div class="i1">_ In which province was (the person) born?
1 = Western Cape
2 = Eastern Cape
3 = Northern Cape
4 = Free State
5 = KwaZulu-Natal
6 = North West
7 = Gauteng
8 = Mpumalanga
9 = Northern Province
Go to P-10</div>
</svar></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A482" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A480 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">Usually live
<div class="i1">P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</div>
<div class="i2">Dot the appropriate box.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes go to P-12</div>
<div class="i1">P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of</div>
<div class="i2">enumeration, dot the S box.
[] S
If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only.
__ Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-space</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Same province
2	Different provinces
3	Foreign birth place

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A415 ZA01A477">P-09a "In which province was (the person) born?"

The nine provinces are pre-coded, so you write the correct code in the box. We have to capture the information according to the new provinces, not according to the old divisions, e.g. Gauteng, which is 7 on the list, or Northern Province, which is 9 on the list, and NOT Transvaal, which is not on the pre-coded list.

For elderly persons it might be difficult to define the place according to the present provincial division. Ask for the name of the place where the person was born and then locate that place in one of the present provinces. E.g. if born in Kimberley, write 3 = Northern Cape.
</svar></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A416 ZA01A417" v="ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09b "In which country was (the person) born?"

Write the name of the country in the boxes provided. Use the name the country is presently known by. Do not add names of cities or provinces.

Remember to use capital letters for the answers to 9a and 9b, and not to leave spaces between words.

Some people are reluctant to tell you where they were born. If necessary, you can stress that the information is only used for statistical purposes and will never be released to the police or other government departments in an identifiable form, only as numerical totals.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person's place of enumeration is the same province as their birth place.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_INCOME: Income (annual)**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<svr v="ZA01A042 ZA01A474 ZA01A475"><span class="h2">Ask of everyone</span><br /></svr></p>
```

```
<p><svr a="all" v="ZA01A042 ZA01A475">P-22. Income category<br /><div class="i1">__ What is the income category that best describes the gross income of (this person) before tax? Choose from the table below the code that corresponds to the income level. A monthly income of R1 500 is code 04 and an annual income of R25 000 is code 05.<br />Monthly<br />01 = No income<br />02 = R 1 -- R 400<br />03 = R 401 -- R 800<br />04 = R 801 -- R 1 600<br />05 = R 1 601 -- R 3 200<br />06 = R 3 201 -- R 6 400<br />07 = R 6 401 -- R 12 800<br />08 = R 12 801 -- R 25 600<br />09 = R 25 601 -- R 51 200<br />10 = R 51 201 -- R 102 400<br />11 = R 102 401 -- R 204 800<br />12 = R 204 801 or more<br />Annual<br />01 = No income<br />02 = R 1 -- R 4 800<br />03 = R 4 801 -- R 9 600<br />04 = R 9 601 -- R 19 200<br />05 = R 19 201 -- R 38 400<br />06 = R 38 401 -- R 76 800<br />07 = R 76 801 -- R 153 600<br />08 = R 153 601 -- R 307 200<br />09 = R 307 201 -- R 614 400<br />10 = R 614 401 -- R 1 228 800<br />11 = R 1 228 801 -- R 2 457 600<br />12 = R 2 457 601 or more</div><br /></svr>
```

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	no income
02	R 1 - R 4 800
03	R 4 801 - R 9 600
04	R 9 601- R 19 200
05	R 19 201- R 38 400
06	R 38 401 - R 76 800
07	R 76 801 - R 153 600
08	R 153 601 - R 307 200
09	R 307 201- R 614 400
10	R 614 401 - R 1 228 800
11	R 1 228 801 - R 2 457 600
12	R 2 457 601 or more

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<svr a="all" v="ZA01A475 ZA01A042"><span class="em">Question P-22 -- Income category</span><br /><br />"What is the income category that best describes the gross income of (the person) before tax?"<br /><br />Read the categories out to the first respondent.<br /><br />Identify the income from one of the two tables, and enter the code. Both tables are provided so that people can answer in terms of monthly or annual income. The resulting code will be the same, e.g:<br /><div class="i1">an <span class="em">annual</span> income level of R20 000 is category 05.<br />a <span class="em">monthly</span> income of R3000 is also category 05.</div><br /><br />The reference period for annual income is 1 October 2000 until 31 September 2001, and for monthly income September 2001.<br /><br />Gross income means income before tax or deductions.<br /><br />Income from investments, private business, etc. should be included. Income from the sale of <span class="em">home-grown produce or home-brewed beer or cattle</span> should also be included. If any of these activities have brought in income for the household as a whole rather than for a particular person, simply add the amount to the income of someone in the household.<br /><br />If the household has received <span class="em">remittances</span> or payments e.g. from a person working or living elsewhere, add this income to the total of someone, e.g. the head of the household.<br /><br /><span class="pg">[P. 56]</span><br /><br />Even a small child
```

can have an income in the form of a child maintenance grant.

It is not necessary to be very exact because the income categories are relatively broad. If the income varies during the year, take the average.

You can show the prompt card on the back of the 09 book to help the respondent to identify the total income. The prompt card is useful when people do not want to say their income aloud in front of other household members.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's income.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Income Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_LSTAGE: Age of mother at last birth

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svar v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463 ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466 ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989)
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="all" v="ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">P-20b. Last child born
<div class="i1">Write the day, month and year of the last live birth and dot the appropriate box of the sex. If multiple birth, indicate only the last child. Dot the appropriate box whether the child is still alive on Census night 9 -- 10 October. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead).
If (the person) has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born?
_ _ _ _ _ Date of birth (DD/MM/YYYY)
What is the sex of that child?
[] M = Male
[] F = Female
Is that child alive or dead?
[] A = Alive
[] D = Dead</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17

18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30
31	31
32	32
33	33
34	34
35	35
36	36
37	37
38	38
39	39
40	40
41	41
42	42
43	43
44	44
45	45
46	46
47	47
48	48
49	49
50	50
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A471">Question P-02 -- Date of birth and age

What is (the person's) date of birth and age in completed years?

First ask the person's date of birth. Then ask the age, and check together that it is consistent with the date of birth given. The reason we ask both is for cross-checking. Also, some people do not remember their age but remember their date of birth.

Notice that the age must be given in completed years, i.e. age at last birthday.

Date of birth should be written in digits, with no words. The boxes are marked DD MM YYYY. Write 2

digits for the day in the boxes marked DD, 2 digits for the month in the boxes marked MM, and four digits for the year in the boxes marked YYYY.

e.g. September 7 1993 should be entered 07 09 1993.

Remember that some people mention the month first and some mention the day first, but always record the day first and the month second.

Age should be entered using three digits, e.g. 052 for 52. Again do not use words. If the respondent is 29 years old write "029" and not "29 yrs" or "29 years". In the case of a baby younger than 1 year write 000.

e.g. For a person who is 29 years old you write "029" and for a baby who is younger than 1 year you write "000".

[P. 36]

Give as much information as is known, i.e.:
<div class="i1">if the exact date of birth is not known, but the person knows the month and the year, or even just the year, fill that in.

if the age is not known at all, give an estimated age.</div>

Where neither the date of birth nor the age can be given, the person's age in years should be estimated as accurately as possible. The enumerator should try to elicit this estimate by probing. For example ask about a historical event at the time of the birth of the person, such as the end of World War I, or a significant local event. Lists of such events are found in Appendix 2.)

You must never leave this question without an answer.

Now copy each person's age onto the flap next to his or her name.
</svar></p>

<p><svar a=" ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A472 ZA01A473" v="ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">Question P-20b -- Last child born
Ask this question of all women who answered "1 or more" to Question P-20, i.e. who have ever given birth to live babies.

"When was (the person's) last child born?"

Give date of birth: DD/ MM / YYYY

Write in the correct boxes, i.e. day in the DD boxes, month in the MM boxes and year in the YYYY boxes.

Give sex. Dot the correct boxes, i.e. M for male and F for female

"Is that child alive or dead?" Dot the correct boxes, i.e. A for alive and D for dead.

[P. 55]

There remain two more questions for everyone - travel and income. Fill in the boxes for all household members.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the age of the person at last birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Females ages 12 to 50 who have given birth [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_LSTLIVE: Last child still alive

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svar v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463 ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466 ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989)
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="all" v="ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">P-20b. Last child

born
<div class="i1">Write the day, month and year of the last live birth and dot the appropriate box of the sex. If multiple birth, indicate only the last child. Dot the appropriate box whether the child is still alive on Census night 9 -- 10 October. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead).
If (the person) has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born?
_____ Date of birth (DD/MM/YYYY)
What is the sex of that child?
[] M = Male
[] F = Female
Is that child alive or dead?
[] A = Alive
[] D = Dead</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Alive
2	Dead
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<svar a=" ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A472 ZA01A473" v="ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469
ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473"><span class="em">Question P-20b -- Last child born</span><br />Ask this
question of all women who answered "1 or more" to Question P-20, i.e. who have ever given birth to live babies.<br /><br />
</span>"When was (the person's) last child born?"</span><br /><br />Give date of birth: DD/ MM / YYYY<br />
<br />Write in the correct boxes, i.e. day in the DD boxes, month in the MM boxes and year in the YYYY boxes.<br /><br />
<br />Give sex. Dot the correct boxes, i.e. M for male and F for female<br /><br /><span class="em">"Is that child alive or
dead?"</span> Dot the correct boxes, i.e. A for alive and D for dead.<br /><br /><span class="pg">[P. 55]</span><br />
<br />There remain two more questions for everyone - travel and income. Fill in the boxes for all household members.<br />
</svar>
```

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates whether the person's last born child is still alive or dead.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Females ages 12 to 50 who have given birth [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_LSTSEX: Sex of last child born

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<svar v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463 ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466 ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470
ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473"><span class="h2">Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951
and 1989)</span><br /></svar></p>
```

<p><svar a="all" v="ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">P-20b. Last child born
<div class="i1">Write the day, month and year of the last live birth and dot the appropriate box of the sex. If multiple birth, indicate only the last child. Dot the appropriate box whether the child is still alive on Census night 9 -- 10 October. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead).
If (the person) has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born?
_____ Date of birth (DD/MM/YYYY)
What is the sex of that child?
[] M = Male
[] F = Female
Is that child alive or dead?
[] A = Alive
[] D = Dead</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Male
2	Female
9	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<svar a=" ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A472 ZA01A473" v="ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">Question P-20b -- Last child born
Ask this question of all women who answered "1 or more" to Question P-20, i.e. who have ever given birth to live babies.

"When was (the person's) last child born?"

Give date of birth: DD/ MM / YYYY

Write in the correct boxes, i.e. day in the DD boxes, month in the MM boxes and year in the YYYY boxes.

Give sex. Dot the correct boxes, i.e. M for male and F for female

"Is that child alive or dead?" Dot the correct boxes, i.e. A for alive and D for dead.

[P. 55]

There remain two more questions for everyone - travel and income. Fill in the boxes for all household members.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the gender of the person's last child born.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Females ages 12 to 50 who have given birth [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_LSTTIME: Years since last birth

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svar v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463 ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466 ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951 and 1989)
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="all" v="ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">P-20b. Last child born
<div class="i1">Write the day, month and year of the last live birth and dot the appropriate box of the sex. If multiple birth, indicate only the last child. Dot the appropriate box whether the child is still alive on Census night 9 -- 10 October. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead).
If (the person) has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born?
_____ Date of birth (DD/MM/YYYY)
What is the sex of that child?
[] M = Male
[] F = Female
Is that child alive or dead?
[] A = Alive
[] D = Dead</div></svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
00	0
01	1
02	2
03	3
04	4
05	5
06	6
07	7
08	8
09	9
10	10
11	11
12	12
13	13
14	14
15	15
16	16
17	17
18	18
19	19
20	20
21	21
22	22
23	23
24	24
25	25
26	26
27	27
28	28
29	29
30	30
31	31
32	32

33	33
34	34
35	35
36	36
37	37
38	38
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<sva a=" ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A472 ZA01A473" v="ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469
ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473"><span class="em">Question P-20b -- Last child born</span><br />Ask this
question of all women who answered "1 or more" to Question P-20, i.e. who have ever given birth to live babies.<br /><br
/><span class="em">"When was (the person's) last child born?"</span><br /><br />Give date of birth: DD/ MM / YYYY<br
/><br />Write in the correct boxes, i.e. day in the DD boxes, month in the MM boxes and year in the YYYY boxes.<br /><br
/>Give sex. Dot the correct boxes, i.e. M for male and F for female<br /><br /><span class="em">"Is that child alive or
dead?"</span> Dot the correct boxes, i.e. A for alive and D for dead.<br /><br /><span class="pg">[P. 55]</span><br
/><br />There remain two more questions for everyone - travel and income. Fill in the boxes for all household members.<br
/></sva>
```

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the number of years that had elapsed since giving birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Females ages 12 to 50 who have given birth [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_LSTYR: Date of last birth - year

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 4 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<sva v="ZA01A461 ZA01A462 ZA01A463 ZA01A464 ZA01A465 ZA01A466 ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470
ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473"><span class="h2">Ask of women aged between 12 and 50 years (born between 1951
and 1989)</span><br /></sva></p>
```

```
<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473">P-20b. Last child
born<br /><div class="i1">Write the day, month and year of the last live birth and dot the appropriate box of the sex. If
```

multiple birth, indicate only the last child. Dot the appropriate box whether the child is still alive on Census night 9 -- 10 October. Do not count stillbirths (children born dead).
If (the person) has ever given live birth: When was (the person's) last child born?
_____ Date of birth (DD/MM/YYYY)
What is the sex of that child?
[] M = Male
[] F = Female
Is that child alive or dead?
[] A = Alive
[] D = Dead</div></div>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1962	1962
1963	1963
1964	1964
1965	1965
1966	1966
1967	1967
1968	1968
1969	1969
1970	1970
1971	1971
1972	1972
1973	1973
1974	1974
1975	1975
1976	1976
1977	1977
1978	1978
1979	1979
1980	1980
1981	1981
1982	1982
1983	1983
1984	1984
1985	1985
1986	1986
1987	1987
1988	1988
1989	1989
1990	1990
1991	1991
1992	1992
1993	1993
1994	1994
1995	1995

1996	1996
1997	1997
1998	1998
1999	1999
2000	2000
2001	2001
9999	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

```
<sva a=" ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469 ZA01A470 ZA01A472 ZA01A473" v="ZA01A467 ZA01A468 ZA01A469
ZA01A470 ZA01A471 ZA01A472 ZA01A473"><span class="em">Question P-20b -- Last child born</span><br />Ask this
question of all women who answered "1 or more" to Question P-20, i.e. who have ever given birth to live babies.<br /><br />
</span class="em">"When was (the person's) last child born?"</span><br /><br />Give date of birth: DD/ MM / YYYY<br />
<br />Write in the correct boxes, i.e. day in the DD boxes, month in the MM boxes and year in the YYYY boxes.<br /><br />
<br />Give sex. Dot the correct boxes, i.e. M for male and F for female<br /><br /><span class="em">"Is that child alive or
dead?"</span> Dot the correct boxes, i.e. A for alive and D for dead.<br /><br /><span class="pg">[P. 55]</span><br />
<br />There remain two more questions for everyone - travel and income. Fill in the boxes for all household members.<br />
</sva>
```

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the year of this person's last birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Females ages 12 to 50 who have given birth [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Fertility and Mortality Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_TRAVWRK: Method of transportation to school or place of work

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

```
<sva v="ZA01A042 ZA01A474 ZA01A475"><span class="h2">Ask of everyone</span><br /></sva></p>
```

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A474">P-21. Travel to school or place of work
<div class="i1">_ How does (the person) usually travel to school or to his/her place of work? Indicate the main mode of travel even if s/he was temporarily absent that week. If more than one mode of travel, write the code of the mode that covers the longest distance.
0 = Not applicable
1 = On foot
2 = By bicycle
3 = By motorcycle
4 = By car as a driver
5 = By car as a

passenger
6 = By minibus/ taxi
7 = By bus
8 = By train
9 = Other</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	Not applicable - not working and not attending school
1	On foot
2	By bicycle
3	By motorcycle
4	By car as a driver
5	By car as a passenger
6	By minibus/taxi
7	By bus
8	By train
9	Other

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A474">Question P-21 -- Travel to school or place of work

"How does (the person) usually travel to school or to his/her place of work?"

If more than one mode of travel, indicate the mode that covers the longest distance.

If the person uses different modes during the week, e.g. some days gets a lift and some days goes by minibus (also called "taxi"), s/he indicates the one that is most frequent or is related to the longest distance in the week.

If the mode of travel is not listed, code 9 for "Other" should be used, e.g. horses, donkey carts. If a truck driver takes the truck home, this counts as "Other".

The category 0 = "not applicable" is for people who do not work and are not at any educational institution. People who work at home, and live-in domestic workers, should therefore choose 1 = "on foot", because this category is for those people who work or go to school but do not use any form of transport.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's means of travel to school or work.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Other Person Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_BPL96EN: Place of birth, place of residence in 1996, and place of enumeration

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva r v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="ZA01A415 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483" v="ZA01A415 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09a. Place of birth (If yes to P-09)
<div class="i1">_ In which province was (the person) born?
1 = Western Cape
2 = Eastern Cape
3 = Northern Cape
4 = Free State
5 = KwaZulu-Natal
6 = North West
7 = Gauteng
8 = Mpumalanga
9 = Northern Province
Go to P-10</div>
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A482" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A480 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">Usually live
<div class="i1">P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</div>
<div class="i2">Dot the appropriate box.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes go to P-12</div>
<div class="i1">P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of</div>
<div class="i2">enumeration, dot the S box.
[] S
If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only.
__ Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-space</div>
</sva r></p>

<p><sva r a="ZA01A425 ZA01A426" v="ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">P-12a. From where moved (If no to P-12)
<div class="i1">Where did (the person) move from? If more than one move, give details of the last move. Write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country. Use capital letters only.
__ Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-place</div>
</sva r>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Birth province same as 1996 residence province, birth province same as enumeration province, 1996 residence province same as enumeration province
2	Birth province same as 1996 residence province, birth province same as enumeration province, 1996 residence province not same as enumeration province
3	Birth province same as 1996 residence province, birth province not same as enumeration province, 1996 residence province same as enumeration province
4	Birth province same as 1996 residence province, birth province not same as enumeration province, 1996 residence province not same as enumeration province
5	Birth province not same as 1996 residence province, birth province same as enumeration province, 1996 residence province same as enumeration province
6	Birth province not same as 1996 residence province, birth province same as enumeration province, 1996 residence province not same as enumeration province
7	Birth province not same as 1996 residence province, birth province not same as enumeration province, 1996 residence province same as enumeration province
8	Birth province not same as 1996 residence province, birth province not same as enumeration province, 1996 residence province not same as enumeration province
9	Unknown

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="ZA01A416 ZA01A417" v="ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09b "In which country was (the person) born?"

Write the name of the country in the boxes provided. Use the name the country is presently known by. Do not add names of cities or provinces.

 Remember to use capital letters for the answers to 9a and 9b, and not to leave spaces between words.

 Some people are reluctant to tell you where they were born. If necessary, you can stress that the information is only used for statistical purposes and will never be released to the police or other government departments in an identifiable form, only as numerical totals.
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A423 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A483" v="ZA01A423 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">P-12 "Five years ago (at the time of Census '96), was (the person) living in this place (i.e. this suburb, ward, township, village, farm, informal settlement)?"

If the answer is "Yes" dot the Y box, if "No" dot the N box. Dot the box marked B for people who were not alive at the time of the last census (B = born after October 1996).

[P. 44]

The main issue here is, what counts as a move? Again the question refers to a very small area -- the sub-place. If the person lived in the same dwelling 5 years ago the answer is "Yes". If the respondent has moved within the same "sub-place" from one house to another, the answer should also be "Yes" because we do not count short-distance residential moves for this question. If the person was living in a different sub-place from the one on the front of the 09 book, the answer is "No".

If "Yes" or born after October 96 skip P-12a and P-12b and go to Question P-13.

If "No" go to Questions P-12a and P-12b.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the relationship between place of birth, place of 1996 residence, and place of enumeration.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons born on or before 1996 in South Africa and living in a residence in South Africa in 1996 [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_BPLCITIZ: Place of birth and citizenship

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the

other nine.]
</svar></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A415 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483" v="ZA01A415 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09a. Place of birth (If yes to P-09)
<div class="i1">_ In which province was (the person) born?
1 = Western Cape
2 = Eastern Cape
3 = Northern Cape
4 = Free State
5 = KwaZulu-Natal
6 = North West
7 = Gauteng
8 = Mpumalanga
9 = Northern Province
Go to P-10</div>
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A418 ZA01A419" v="ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A479">Citizenship
<div class="i1">P-10. Is (the person) a South African citizen? Dot the appropriate box.</div>
<div class="i2">[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes go to P-11</div>
<div class="i1">P-10a. _____ If no, what is the name of the country of citizenship?</div>
<div class="i2">Use capital letters only.</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
1	Foreign place of birth, not SA citizen
2	Foreign place of birth, SA citizen
3	Born in SA, not SA citizen
4	Born in SA, SA citizen

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="ZA01A416 ZA01A417" v="ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09b "In which country was (the person) born?"

Write the name of the country in the boxes provided. Use the name the country is presently known by. Do not add names of cities or provinces.

Remember to use capital letters for the answers to 9a and 9b, and not to leave spaces between words.

Some people are reluctant to tell you where they were born. If necessary, you can stress that the information is only used for statistical purposes and will never be released to the police or other government departments in an identifiable form, only as numerical totals.
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A479">Question P-10 and P-10a -- Citizenship

This question has two parts, P-10 and P-10a. The second part only applies to people who answer "No" to the first part. So people who answer "Yes" to the first part will "skip" P-10a and go to Question 11.

P-10 "Is (the person) a South African citizen?"

Remember that people who were not born in South Africa can be citizens of South Africa. The reverse is also sometimes true. That is why we need this question as well as the last question.

Accept the respondent's answer. You do not need to ask for proof. However, if immigrants hesitate to tell the truth, remind them that the information is for statistical use only, and will not be disclosed to any other authority or organisation or private person because the Statistics Act restricts the use of census data to statistics only.

Dot the correct box, i.e. Y or N box.

If Yes go to P-11. In other words, if Yes to P-10, skip P-10a and go to P-11. If No to P-10, write the name of the country of citizenship in P-10a.

P-10a "What is the name of the country of citizenship?"

Write one letter per box. Use capital letters only. Do not leave any spaces between words. Write as many letters as you have spaces for.
</sva>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the relationship between the person's place of birth and their citizenship.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
-------------------	------------

Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON

IPUMS

ZA2001A_BPLRES96: Place of birth and place of residence in 1996**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A415 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483" v="ZA01A415 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09a. Place of birth (If yes to P-09)
<div class="i1">_ In which province was (the person) born?
1 = Western Cape
2 = Eastern Cape
3 = Northern Cape
4 = Free State
5 = KwaZulu-Natal
6 = North West
7 = Gauteng
8 = Mpumalanga
9 = Northern Province
Go to P-10</div>
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A425 ZA01A426" v="ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">P-12a. From where moved (If no to P-12)
<div class="i1">Where did (the person) move from? If more than one move, give details of the last move. Write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country. Use capital letters only.
__ Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-place</div>
</sva>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Birth province same as enumeration province, 1996 residence same as enumeration place and province
2	Birth province same as enumeration province, 1996 residence different place within enumeration province
3	Birth province same as enumeration province, 1996 residence different province
4	Birth province same as enumeration province, foreign 1996 residence
5	Birth province different from enumeration province, 1996 residence same as enumeration place and province
6	Birth province different from enumeration province, 1996 residence different place within enumeration province
7	Birth province different from enumeration province, 1996 residence different province
8	Birth province different from enumeration province, foreign 1996 residence
9	Unknown

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="ZA01A416 ZA01A417" v="ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09b "In which country was (the person) born?"

Write the name of the country in the boxes provided. Use the name the country is presently known by. Do not add names of cities or provinces.

Remember to use capital letters for the answers to 9a and 9b, and not to leave spaces

between words.

 Some people are reluctant to tell you where they were born. If necessary, you can stress that the information is only used for statistical purposes and will never be released to the police or other government departments in an identifiable form, only as numerical totals.
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="ZA01A423 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A483" v="ZA01A423 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">P-12 "Five years ago (at the time of Census '96), was (the person) living in this place (i.e. this suburb, ward, township, village, farm, informal settlement)?"

If the answer is "Yes" dot the Y box, if "No" dot the N box. Dot the box marked B for people who were not alive at the time of the last census (B = born after October 1996).

[P. 44]

The main issue here is, what counts as a move? Again the question refers to a very small area -- the sub-place. If the person lived in the same dwelling 5 years ago the answer is "Yes". If the respondent has moved within the same "sub-place" from one house to another, the answer should also be "Yes" because we do not count short-distance residential moves for this question. If the person was living in a different sub-place from the one on the front of the 09 book, the answer is "No".

If "Yes" or born after October 96 skip P-12a and P-12b and go to Question P-13.

If "No" go to Questions P-12a and P-12b.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the relationship between place of birth and place of residence in 1996.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons age 5+ who were born in South Africa [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Nativity and Birthplace Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_BPLUSL: Place of birth and place of usual residence

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

<svar v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</svar></p>

<p><svar a="ZA01A415 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483" v="ZA01A415 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09a. Place of birth (If yes to P-09)
<div class="i1">_ In which province was (the person) born?
1 = Western Cape
2 = Eastern Cape
3 = Northern Cape
4 = Free State
5 = KwaZulu-Natal
6 = North West
7 = Gauteng
8 = Mpumalanga
9 = Northern Province
Go to

P-10</div>
</svar></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A482" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A480 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">Usually live
<div class="i1">P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</div>
<div class="i2">Dot the appropriate box.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes go to P-12</div>
<div class="i1">P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of</div>
<div class="i2">enumeration, dot the S box.
[] S
If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only.
__ Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-space</div>
</svar>

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	NIU (not in universe)
1	Birth province same as enumeration province, usual residence same as enumeration place and province
2	Birth province same as enumeration province, usual residence different place within enumeration province
3	Birth province same as enumeration province, usual residence different province
4	Birth province same as enumeration province, foreign usual residence
5	Birth province different from enumeration province, usual residence same as enumeration place and province
6	Birth province different from enumeration province, usual residence different place within enumeration province
7	Birth province different from enumeration province, usual residence different province
8	Birth province different from enumeration province, foreign usual residence
9	Unknown

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="ZA01A416 ZA01A417" v="ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A477 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A483">P-09b "In which country was (the person) born?"

Write the name of the country in the boxes provided. Use the name the country is presently known by. Do not add names of cities or provinces.

Remember to use capital letters for the answers to 9a and 9b, and not to leave spaces between words.

Some people are reluctant to tell you where they were born. If necessary, you can stress that the information is only used for statistical purposes and will never be released to the police or other government departments in an identifiable form, only as numerical totals.
</svar></p>

<p><sva a="all" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A480 ZA01A482">Question P-11 and 11a -- Usually live

This question also has two parts i.e. P-11 and P-11a. The first part asks if the person usually lives in this household. People who answer "Yes" can move straight on to Question 12. People who say "No" must answer the second part of the question, P-11a.

P-11 "Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?"

If "Yes" skip P-11a and go to P-12, if "No" ask Question P-11a.

P-11a "Where does (the person) usually live?"

The purpose of this question is to identify visitors and exclude them from data about total household income, or data about the number of people who live in a particular place.

If the person does not usually live in this dwelling but lives in the same sub-place, dot the S box (S = Same).

[P. 43]

If the person usually lives in a different place, write the name of the main place and the name of the sub-place in the spaces provided, e.g. Pretoria, Arcadia; or Kutama, Tshikwarane. One place name is not sufficient for coding purposes.

<div class="i1">Main place and sub-place
This is the first question that brings in the concepts of main place and sub-place. So far we have only needed province or country. Now we have to write sufficient information to pinpoint local places.

A main place is a city, town, township, tribal authority or administrative area.

A sub-place is a suburb, section of a township, smallholding, village, subvillage, ward or informal settlement.

On the front of the questionnaire for sub-place we wrote the most local name used by the household. For this question, and other questions asking for main place and sub-place, we must be a little more careful, as some local names can occur more than once within a main place.

For more details, see Appendix 6, which also give examples within the new metros.</div>

There are also two boxes for the abbreviation of the province, as some place names occur in more than one province. Use the following two-letter abbreviations: EC, FS, GP, KN, MP, NC, NP, NW, WC.

National Bureau: Write the main place in the main place row and the sub-place in the sub-place row. Do not continue writing the main place in the sub-place row if the name is too long. Just write as many letters as will fit, as we did

for religion.

If the person usually lives abroad, ask for the name of the country and write it in the space provided. Write the name of the country, not of the city or the province.
</svar>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicatesable indicates the relationship between person's place of birth and place of usual residence.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons born in South Africa [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QBRTHDAY: Flag for day of birth

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for day of birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QBRTHMO: Flag for month of birth

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for month of birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QBRTHYR: Flag for year of birth

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for year of birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QPERNUM: Flag for person number

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for person number.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_USLRES96: Place of usual residence and place of residence in 1996**Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat****Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 2 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

LITERAL QUESTION

`<sva v="ZA01A041 ZA01A401 ZA01A402 ZA01A403 ZA01A404 ZA01A405 ZA01A406 ZA01A407 ZA01A408 ZA01A409 ZA01A410 ZA01A411 ZA01A412 ZA01A413 ZA01A414 ZA01A415 ZA01A416 ZA01A417 ZA01A418 ZA01A419 ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A423 ZA01A424 ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A427 ZA01A428 ZA01A429 ZA01A430 ZA01A431 ZA01A432 ZA01A433 ZA01A434 ZA01A435 ZA01A436 ZA01A437 ZA01A438 ZA01A439 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A479 ZA01A480 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483 ZA01A485">Section A: Information for persons in the household -- ask of everyone
[Section A of this form, each question has 10 answer rows for writing individual answers for up to 10 individuals in the household. Only the first is shown here, which is exactly the same as the other nine.]
</sva></p>`

`<p><sva a="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A482" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A477 ZA01A478 ZA01A480 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">Usually live
<div class="i1">P-11. Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?</div>
<div class="i2">Dot the appropriate box.
[] Y = Yes
[] N = No
If yes go to P-12</div>
<div class="i1">P-11a. If no, where does (the person) usually live? If in the same place as the place of</div>
<div class="i2">enumeration, dot the S box.
[] S
If not the same place, write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country in the boxes below. Use capital letters only.
__ Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-space</div>
</sva></p>`

`<p><sva a="ZA01A425 ZA01A426" v="ZA01A425 ZA01A426 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">P-12a. From where moved (If no to P-12)
<div class="i1">Where did (the person) move from? If more than one move, give details of the last move. Write the province [P] [R], main place (city, town, tribal area, administrative area) and sub-place (suburb, ward, village, farm, informal settlement). If another country, write the name of the country. Use capital letters only.
__ Province
_____ Main Place
_____ Sub-place</div>
</sva>`

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
01	Usual residence within enumeration province, 1996 residence within enumeration province
02	Usual residence within enumeration province, 1996 residence not in enumeration province but within SA
03	Usual residence within enumeration province, foreign 1996 residence
04	Usual residence not in enumeration province but in SA, 1996 residence within enumeration province
05	Usual residence not in enumeration province but in SA, 1996 residence not in enumeration province but within SA
06	Usual residence not in enumeration province but in SA, foreign 1996 residence

07	Foreign usual residence, 1996 residence within enumeration province
08	Foreign usual residence, 1996 residence not in enumeration province but within SA
09	Foreign usual residence, foreign 1996 residence
98	Unknown
99	NIU (not in universe)

INTERVIEWER INSTRUCTIONS

<sva a="all" v="ZA01A420 ZA01A421 ZA01A422 ZA01A476 ZA01A480 ZA01A482">Question P-11 and 11a -- Usually live

This question also has two parts i.e. P-11 and P-11a. The first part asks if the person usually lives in this household. People who answer "Yes" can move straight on to Question 12. People who say "No" must answer the second part of the question, P-11a.

P-11 "Does (the person) usually live in this household for at least four nights a week?"

If "Yes" skip P-11a and go to P-12, if "No" ask Question P-11a.

P-11a "Where does (the person) usually live?"

The purpose of this question is to identify visitors and exclude them from data about total household income, or data about the number of people who live in a particular place.

If the person does not usually live in this dwelling but lives in the same sub-place, dot the S box (S = Same).

[P. 43]

If the person usually lives in a different place, write the name of the main place and the name of the sub-place in the spaces provided, e.g. Pretoria, Arcadia; or Kutama, Tshikwarane. One place name is not sufficient for coding purposes.

<div class="i1">Main place and sub-place
This is the first question that brings in the concepts of main place and sub-place. So far we have only needed province or country. Now we have to write sufficient information to pinpoint local places.

A main place is a city, town, township, tribal authority or administrative area.

A sub-place is a suburb, section of a township, smallholding, village, subvillage, ward or informal settlement.

On the front of the questionnaire for sub-place we wrote the most local name used by the household. For this question, and other questions asking for main place and sub-place, we must be a little more careful, as some local names can occur more than once within a main place.

For more details, see Appendix 6, which also give examples within the new metros.</div>

There are also two boxes for the abbreviation of the province, as some place names occur in more than one province. Use the following two-letter abbreviations: EC, FS, GP, KN, MP, NC, NP, NW, WC.

National Bureau: Write the main place in the main place row and the sub-place in the sub-place row. Do not continue writing the main place in the sub-place row if the name is too long. Just write as many letters as will fit, as we did for religion.

If the person usually lives abroad, ask for the name of the country and write it in the space provided. Write the name of the country, not of the city or the province.
</sva></p>

<p><sva a="ZA01A423 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A483" v="ZA01A423 ZA01A478 ZA01A481 ZA01A482 ZA01A483">P-12 "Five years ago (at the time of Census '96), was (the person) living in this place (i.e. this suburb, ward, township, village, farm, informal settlement)?"

If the answer is "Yes" dot the Y box, if "No" dot the N box. Dot the box marked B for people who were not alive at the time of the last census (B = born after October 1996).

[P. 44]

The main issue here is, what counts as a move? Again the question refers to a very small area -- the sub-place. If the person lived in the same dwelling 5 years ago the answer is "Yes". If the respondent has moved within the same "sub-place" from one house to another, the answer should also be "Yes" because we do not count short-distance residential moves for this question. If the person was living in a different sub-place from the one on the front of the 09 book, the answer is "No".

If "Yes" or born after October 96 skip P-12a and P-12b and go to Question P-13.

If "No" go to Questions P-12a and P-12b.
</sva></p>

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the relationship between place of usual residence and place of residence in 1996.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: Persons age 5+ [discrepancies: none]

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Migration: Global Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_WTPER: Person weight

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Continuous Decimal: 6 Width: 8 Range: - Format: Numeric

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the person's weight variable. The weight variable is the adjustment factor for undercount for persons multiplied by 10 to inflate the 10% sample to the relevant population.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Technical Person Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

Imputation and derivation

DERIVATION

This is a 8-digit numeric variable with 6 implied decimal places

ZA2001A_QAGE: Flag for age

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)

3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for age.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QBORNSAF: Flag for born in South Africa

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for born in South Africa.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QBPLPROV: Flag for province of birth

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for place of birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QLANG: Flag for language

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for language.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QMARST: Flag for marital status

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for marital status.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QRACE: Flag for race/ethnicity**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for population group.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QRELATE: Flag for relationship to head of household**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for relationship.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QRELIG: Flag for religion**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for religion.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QSEX: Flag for sex

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for gender.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QSPLOCO: Flag for person number of spouse**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for spouse person number.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QBPLCTRY: Flag for country of birth**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation

1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for country of birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QCITIZ: Flag for citizenship

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for country of citizenship.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QDSSIGHT: Flag for disability - sight**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for sight disability.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QMOVED: Flag for living in same place five years ago**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for previous residence.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QPRVPLAC: Flag for place of residence five years ago

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for main place of previous residence.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QPRVPROV: Flag for province five years ago

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for province of previous residence.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QUSLPLAC: Flag for usual residence main place**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for place of usual residence.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QUSLPROV: Flag for province of usual residence**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation

1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for province of usual residence.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QUSLRES: Flag for usually live here

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for usual residence.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QYRMOVED: Flag for year moved**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for year moved.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QDSCOMM: Flag for disability - communication**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for communication disability.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QDSEMOT: Flag for disability - emotional

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for emotional disability.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QDSHEAR: Flag for disability - hearing

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for hearing disability.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QDSMENT: Flag for disability - intellectual**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for intellectual disability.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QDSPHYS: Flag for disability - physical**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation

1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for physical disability.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QFATHLIV: Flag for father alive

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for father alive.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QFATHLOC: Flag for father's person number in household**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for father person number.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QMOTHLIV: Flag for mother alive**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for mother alive.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QMOTHLOC: Flag for mother's person number in household

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for mother person number.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

■ ZA2001A_QSCHOOL: Flag for present school attendance

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for present school attendance.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QEDATTAN: Flag for level of education**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for level of education.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QEDFIELD: Flag for field of education**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation

1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for field of education.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QEMPSTAT: Flag for employment status

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for work status.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QIND: Flag for industry**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for economic sector.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QOCC: Flag for occupation**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for occupation.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QSCHTYPE: Flag for type of educational institution

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for type of educational institution.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QWRKAVAI: Flag for availability

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for how soon the person could start if he/she were offered work (availability).

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QWRKREAS: Flag for reason why not working**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for reason why not working.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QWRKSEEK: Flag for taking active steps to find a job**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation

1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for active steps.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QWRKWEEK: Flag for any work in the seven days before 10 October

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for work in seven days before October 10.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QBORNFEM: Flag for female births**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for female children ever born.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QBORNMAL: Flag for male births**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for male children ever born.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QCHBORN: Flag for total births

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for total children ever born.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QCHSURV: Flag for total children still living

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for total children surviving.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QHRSWRK: Flag for hours worked during week**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for hours worked.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QSURVFEM: Flag for female children still living**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation

1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for female children surviving.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QSURVMAL: Flag for male children still living

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for male children surviving.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QWRKHERE: Flag for place of work same as sub-place where usually lives**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for place of work.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QWRKPLAC: Flag for main place of work**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for main place of work.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QWRKPROV: Flag for province of work

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for province of work.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QINCOME: Flag for income (annual)

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for income.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QLSTDAY: Flag for date of last birth - day**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for the last born child's day of birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QLSTLIV: Flag for last child still alive**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation

1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for the last born child's vital status.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QLSTMO: Flag for date of last birth - month

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for the last born child's month of birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QLSTSEX: Flag for sex of last child born**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for the last born child's gender.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QLSTYR: Flag for date of last birth - year**Data file:** ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat**Overview**

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for the last born child's year of birth.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

ZA2001A_QTRAVWRK: Flag for method of transportation to school or work

Data file: ZAF2001_PHC-P-H.dat

Overview

Type: Discrete Decimal: 0 Width: 1 Range: - Format: Numeric

Questions and instructions

CATEGORIES

Value	Category
0	No imputation
1	Logical imputation (from blank)
2	Logical imputation (non-blank)
3	Hot deck imputation (from blank)
4	Hot deck imputation (non-blank)

description

DEFINITION

This variable indicates the imputation flag for travel method.

UNIVERSE

South Africa 2001: All persons

concept

CONCEPT

var_concept.title	Vocabulary
Person Imputation Flags Variables -- PERSON	IPUMS

study_resources

questionnaires

Census 2001. Household Questionnaire

title Census 2001. Household Questionnaire
authors Statistics South Africa
date 2001-10-10
country South Africa
language English
publishers Statistics South Africa
filename enum_form_za2001.pdf

technical_documents

Census 2001. Enumerator's Manual

title Census 2001. Enumerator's Manual
authors Statistics South Africa
date 2001-10-10
country South Africa
language English
publishers Statistics South Africa
filename enum_instruct_za2001.pdf
